

# Bibliography

- [1] Adobe Systems Incorporated. Adobe Type 1 Font Format. Addison-Wesley, Reading, MA, USA, 1990. ISBN 0-201-57044-0.

The “black book” contains the specifications for Adobe’s Type 1 font format and describes how to create a Type 1 font program. The book explains the specifics of the Type 1 syntax (a subset of PostScript), including information on the structure of font programs, ways to specify computer outlines, and the contents of the various font dictionaries. It also covers encryption, subroutines, and hints. <http://partners.adobe.com/asn/developer/pdfs/tn/T1Format.pdf>
- [2] Adobe Systems Incorporated. “PostScript document structuring conventions specification (version 3.0)”. Technical Note 5001, 1992.

This technical note defines a standard set of document structuring conventions (DSC), which will help ensure that a PostScript document is device independent. DSC allows PostScript language programs to communicate their document structure and printing requirements to document managers in a way that does not affect the PostScript language page description. [http://partners.adobe.com/asn/developer/pdfs/tn/5001.DSC\\_Spec.pdf](http://partners.adobe.com/asn/developer/pdfs/tn/5001.DSC_Spec.pdf)
- [3] Adobe Systems Incorporated. “Encapsulated PostScript file format specification (version 3.0)”. Technical Note 5002, 1992.

This technical note details the Encapsulated PostScript file (EPSF) format, a standard format for importing and exporting PostScript language files among applications in a variety of heterogeneous environments. The EPSF format is based on and conforms to the document structuring conventions (DSC) [2]. [http://partners.adobe.com/asn/developer/pdfs/tn/5002.EPSF\\_Spec.pdf](http://partners.adobe.com/asn/developer/pdfs/tn/5002.EPSF_Spec.pdf)
- [4] Adobe Systems Incorporated. PostScript Language Reference. Addison-Wesley, Reading, MA, USA, 3rd edition, 1999. ISBN 0-201-37922-8.

The “red book” can be considered the definitive resource for all PostScript programmers. It contains the complete description of the PostScript language, including the latest Level 3 operators. <http://www.adobe.com/products/postscript/pdfs/PLRM.pdf>

- [5] Adobe Systems Incorporated. PDF Reference, version 1.4. Addison-Wesley, Boston, MA, USA, 3rd edition, 2002. ISBN 0-201-75839-3.  
The specification of Adobe's Portable Document Format (PDF). The book introduces and explains all aspects of the PDF format, including its architecture and imaging model (allowing transparency and opacity for text, images, and graphics), the command syntax, the graphics operators, fonts and rendering, and the relation between PostScript and PDF. [http://partners.adobe.com/asn/acrobat/docs/File\\_Format\\_Specifications/PDFReference.pdf](http://partners.adobe.com/asn/acrobat/docs/File_Format_Specifications/PDFReference.pdf)
- [6] American Mathematical Society, Providence, Rhode Island. Instructions for Preparation of Papers and Monographs:  $\mathcal{A}\mathcal{M}\mathcal{S}\text{-}\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}\mathcal{T}\mathcal{E}\mathcal{X}$ , 1999.  
This document contains instructions for authors preparing articles and books, using  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}\mathcal{T}\mathcal{E}\mathcal{X}$ , for publication with the American Mathematical Society (AMS) to match its publication style specifications: journals (amsart), proceedings volumes (amsproc), and monographs (amsbook).  
<ftp://ftp.ams.org/pub/author-info/documentation/amslatex/instr-1.pdf>
- [7] American Mathematical Society, Providence, Rhode Island. Using the amsthm Package (Version 2.07), 2000.  
The amsthm package provides an enhanced version of  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}\mathcal{T}\mathcal{E}\mathcal{X}$ 's `\newtheorem` command for defining theorem-like environments, recognizing `\theoremstyle` specifications and providing a `proof` environment. <ftp://ftp.ams.org/pub/tex/doc/amscls/amsthdoc.pdf>
- [8] American Mathematical Society, Providence, Rhode Island. User's Guide for the amsmath Package (Version 2.0), 2002.  
The amsmath package, developed by the American Mathematical Society, provides many additional features for mathematical typesetting. <http://www.ams.org/tex/amslatex.html>
- [9] American Mathematical Society, Providence, Rhode Island. User's Guide to AMSFonts Version 2.2d, 2002.  
This document describes AMSFonts, the American Mathematical Society's collection of fonts of symbols and several alphabets. <http://www.ams.org/tex/amsfonts.html>
- [10] J. André and Ph. Louarn. "Notes en bas de pages : comment les faire en  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}\mathcal{T}\mathcal{E}\mathcal{X}$ ?" *Cahiers GUTenberg*, 12:57-70, 1991.  
Several special cases of using footnotes with  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}\mathcal{T}\mathcal{E}\mathcal{X}$  are discussed—for example, how to generate a footnote referring to information inside a `tabular` or `minipage` environment, and how to reference the same footnote more than once.  
<http://www.gutenberg.eu.org/pub/GUTenberg/publicationsPDF/12-louarn.pdf>
- [11] Michael Barr. "A new diagram package", 2001.  
A rewrite of Michael Barr's original diagram package to act as a front end to Rose's `xypic` (see [57, Chapter 5]). It offers a general arrow-drawing function; various common diagram shapes, such as squares, triangles, cubes, and  $3 \times 3$  diagrams; small 2-arrows that can be placed anywhere in a diagram; and access to all of `xypic`'s features. On CTAN at: [macros/generic/diagrams/barr](http://www.ctan.org/macros/generic/diagrams/barr)
- [12] Claudio Beccari and Apostolos Syropoulos. "New Greek fonts and the greek option of the babel package". *TUGboat*, 19(4):419-425, 1998.  
Describes a new complete set of Greek fonts and their use in connection with the `babel` `greek` extension. <http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb19-4/tb61becc.pdf>
- [13] Nelson Beebe. "Bibliography prettyprinting and syntax checking". *TUGboat*, 14(4):395-419, 1993.  
This article describes three software tools for  $\mathcal{B}\mathcal{I}\mathcal{B}\mathcal{T}\mathcal{E}\mathcal{X}$  support: a pretty-printer, syntax checker, and lexical analyzer for  $\mathcal{B}\mathcal{I}\mathcal{B}\mathcal{T}\mathcal{E}\mathcal{X}$  files; collectively called `bibclean`.  
<http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb14-4/tb41beebe.pdf>

- [14] Barbara Beeton. “Mathematical symbols and Cyrillic fonts ready for distribution”. *TUGboat*, 6(2):59–63, 1985.  
The announcement of the first general release by the American Mathematical Society of the Euler series fonts. <http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb06-2/tb11beet.pdf>
- [15] Frank G. Bennett, Jr. “CAMEL: kicking over the bibliographic traces in BibTeX”. *TUGboat*, 17(1):22–28, 1996.  
The camel package provides a simple, logical citation interface for L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X that allows the bibliographic style of a document to be easily changed without major editing.  
<http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb17-1/tb50benn.pdf>
- [16] Frank G. Bennett, Jr. “User’s guide to the camel citator”, 1997.  
The documentation for version 1 of the camel package.  
On CTAN at: [macros/latex/contrib/camel](http://www.ctan.org/macros/latex/contrib/camel)
- [17] A. Berdnikov, O. Lapko, M. Kolodin, A. Janishevsky, and A. Burykin. “Cyrillic encodings for L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X 2<sub>ε</sub> multi-language documents”. *TUGboat*, 19(4):403–416, 1998.  
A description of four encodings designed to support Cyrillic writing systems for the multi-language mode of L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X 2<sub>ε</sub>. The “raw” X2 encoding is a Cyrillic glyph container that allows one to insert into L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X 2<sub>ε</sub> documents text fragments written in any of the languages using a modern Cyrillic writing scheme. The T2A, T2B, and T2C encodings are genuine L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X 2<sub>ε</sub> encodings that may be used in an multi-language setting together with other language encodings.  
<http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb19-4/tb61berd.pdf>
- [18] Karl Berry. “Filenames for fonts”. *TUGboat*, 11(4):517–520, 1990.  
This article describes the consistent, rational scheme for font file names that was used for at least the next 15 years. Each name consists of up to eight characters (specifying the foundry, typeface name, weight, variant, expansion characteristics, and design size) that identify each font file in a unique way. <http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb11-4/tb30berry.pdf>
- [19] Karl Berry. “Fontname: Filenames for T<sub>E</sub>X fonts”, 2003.  
The on-line documentation of the latest version of “Fontname”, a scheme for T<sub>E</sub>X font file names; it explains some legal issues relating to fonts in a number of countries.  
<http://www.tug.org/fontname/html/index.html>
- [20] Javier Bezos. “The accents package”, 2000.  
Miscellaneous tools for mathematical accents: to create faked accents from non-accent symbols, to group accents, and to place accents below glyphs.  
On CTAN at: [macros/latex/contrib/bezos](http://www.ctan.org/macros/latex/contrib/bezos)
- [21] The *Bluebook*: A Uniform System of Citation. The Harvard Law Review Association, Cambridge, MA, 17th edition, 2000.  
The *Bluebook* contains three major parts: part 1 details general standards of citation and style to be used in legal writing; part 2 presents specific rules of citation for cases, statutes, books, periodicals, foreign materials, and international materials; and part 3 consists of a series of tables showing, among other things, which authority to cite and how to abbreviate properly.  
Can be ordered at: <http://www.legalbluebook.com>
- [22] Francis Borceux. “De la construction de diagrammes”. *Cahiers GUTenberg*, 5:41–48, 1990.  
The diagram macros typeset diagrams consisting of arrows of different types that join at corners that can contain mathematical expressions. The macros calculate automatically the length and position of each element. The user can specify a scaling factor for each diagram.  
<http://www.gutenberg.eu.org/pub/GUTenberg/publicationsPDF/5-borceux.pdf>

- [23] Francis Borceux. “Diagram 3”, 1993.  
Commutative diagram package that uses  $\LaTeX$  picture mode.  
[On CTAN at: macros/generic/diagrams/borceux](http://www.ctan.org/macros/generic/diagrams/borceux)
- [24] Thierry Bouche. “Diversity in math fonts”. *TUGboat*, 19(2):120–134, 1998.  
Issues raised when modifying  $\LaTeX$  fonts within math environments are examined. An attempt is made to suggest effective means of accessing a larger variety of font options, while avoiding typographic nonsense. <http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb19-2/tb59bouc.pdf>
- [25] Johannes Braams. “Babel, a multilingual style-option system for use with  $\LaTeX$ 's standard document styles”. *TUGboat*, 12(2):291–301, 1991.  
The babel package was originally a collection of document-style options to support different languages. An update was published in *TUGboat*, 14(1):60–62, April 1993.  
<http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb12-2/tb32braa.pdf>  
<http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb14-1/tb38braa.pdf>
- [26] Neil Bradley. *The XML Companion*. Addison-Wesley, Boston, MA, USA, 3rd edition, 2002. ISBN 0-201-77059-8.  
This book provides a description of XML features without assuming knowledge of HTML or SGML, covering also related standards such as Xpath, XML Schema, SAX, DOM, XSLT, Xlink, and Xpointer.
- [27] Peter Breitenlohner et al. “The e $\TeX$  manual (version 2)”, 1998.  
The current manual for the e $\TeX$  system, which extends the capabilities of  $\TeX$  while retaining compatibility.  
[On CTAN at: systems/e-tex/v2/doc/etex\\_man.pdf](http://www.ctan.org/systems/e-tex/v2/doc/etex_man.pdf)
- [28] Robert Bringhurst. *The elements of typographic style*. Hartley & Marks Publishers, Point Roberts, WA, USA, and Vancouver, BC, Canada, 2nd edition, 1996. ISBN 0-88179-133-4 (hardcover), 0-88179-132-6 (paperback).  
A very well-written book on typography with a focus on the proper use of typefaces.
- [29] Judith Butcher. *Copy-editing: The Cambridge handbook for editors, authors and publishers*. Cambridge University Press, New York, 3rd edition, 1992. ISBN 0-521-40074-0.  
A reference guide for all those involved in the process of preparing typescripts and illustrations for printing and publication. The book covers all aspects of the editorial process, from the basics of how to mark a typescript for the designer and the typesetter, through the ground rules of house style and consistency, to how to read and correct proofs.
- [30] David Carlisle. “A  $\LaTeX$  tour, Part 1: The basic distribution”. *TUGboat*, 17(1):67–73, 1996.  
A “guided tour” around the files in the basic  $\LaTeX$  distribution. File names and paths relate to the file hierarchy of the CTAN archives.  
<http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb17-1/tb50carl.pdf>
- [31] David Carlisle. “A  $\LaTeX$  tour, Part 2: The tools and graphics distributions”. *TUGboat*, 17(3):321–326, 1996.  
A “guided tour” around the “tools” and “graphics” packages. Note that *The Manual* [104] assumes that at least the graphics distribution is available with standard  $\LaTeX$ .  
<http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb17-3/tb52carl.pdf>
- [32] David Carlisle. “A  $\LaTeX$  tour, Part 3: mfnfss, psnfss and babel”. *TUGboat*, 18(1):48–55, 1997.  
A “guided tour” through three more distributions that are part of the standard  $\LaTeX$  system. The mfnfss distribution provides  $\LaTeX$  support for some popular METAFONT-produced fonts

that do not otherwise have any  $\text{\LaTeX}$  interface. The `psnfss` distribution consists of  $\text{\LaTeX}$  packages giving access to PostScript fonts. The `babel` distribution provides  $\text{\LaTeX}$  with multilingual capabilities.  
<http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb18-1/tb54carl.pdf>

- [33] David Carlisle. “OpenMath, MathML, and XSL”. *SIGSAM Bulletin (ACM Special Interest Group on Symbolic and Algebraic Manipulation)*, 34(2):6–11, 2000.  
 Discussion of XML markup for mathematics—in particular, OpenMath and MathML—and the use of XSLT to transform between these languages.  
 Restricted to ACM members; <http://www.acm.org/sigsam/bulletin/issues/issue132.html>
- [34] David Carlisle. “XMLTEX: A non validating (and not 100% conforming) namespace aware XML parser implemented in  $\text{\TeX}$ ”. *TUGboat*, 21(3):193–199, 2000.  
 XMLTEX is an XML parser and typesetter implemented in  $\text{\TeX}$ , which by default uses the  $\text{\LaTeX}$  kernel to provide typesetting functionality.  
<http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb21-3/tb68carl.pdf>
- [35] David Carlisle, Patrick Ion, Robert Miner, and Nico Poppelier, editors. *Mathematical Markup Language (MathML) Version 2.0*. W3C, 2nd edition, 2003.  
 MathML is an XML vocabulary for mathematics, designed for use in browsers and as a communication language between computer algebra systems.  
<http://www.w3.org/TR/MathML2>
- [36] David Carlisle, Chris Rowley, and Frank Mittelbach. “The  $\text{\LaTeX}3$  Programming Language—a proposed system for  $\text{\TeX}$  macro programming”. *TUGboat*, 18(4):303–308, 1997.  
 Some proposals for a radically new syntax and software tools.  
<http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb18-4/tb57rowl.pdf>
- [37] Pehong Chen and Michael A. Harrison. “Index preparation and processing”. *Software—Practice and Experience*, 19(9):897–915, 1988.  
 A description of the `makeindex` system.
- [38] The Chicago Manual of Style. University of Chicago Press, Chicago, IL, USA, 15th edition, 2003. ISBN 0-226-10403-6.  
 The standard U.S. publishing style reference for authors and editors.
- [39] Adrian F. Clark. “Practical halftoning with  $\text{\TeX}$ ”. *TUGboat*, 12(1):157–165, 1991.  
 Reviews practical problems encountered when using  $\text{\TeX}$  for typesetting half-tone pictures and compares other techniques to include graphics material. Advantages and disadvantages of the various approaches are described and some attempts at producing color separations are discussed.  
<http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb12-1/tb31clark.pdf>
- [40] Matthias Clasen and Ulrik Vieth. “Towards a new math font encoding for  $(\text{\LaTeX})\text{\TeX}$ ”. *Cahiers GUTenberg*, 28–29:94–121, 1998.  
 A prototype implementation of 8-bit math font encodings for  $\text{\LaTeX}$ .  
<http://www.gutenberg.eu.org/pub/GUTenberg/publicationsPDF/28-29-clasen.pdf>
- [41] Carl Dair. *Design with Type*. University of Toronto Press, Toronto, Ontario, Canada, 1967. ISBN 0-8020-1426-7 (hardcover), 0-8020-6519-8 (paperback).  
 A good survey of traditional typography with many useful rules of thumb.

- [42] Michael Downes. “Breaking equations”. *TUGboat*, 18(3):182–194, 1997.  
 T<sub>E</sub>X is not very good at displaying equations that must be broken into more than one line. The `breqn` package eliminates many of the most significant problems by supporting automatic line breaking of displayed equations.  
<http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb18-3/tb56down.pdf>
- [43] Michael Downes. “The `amsrefs` L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X package and the `amsxport` B<sub>B</sub>T<sub>E</sub>X style”. *TUGboat*, 21(3):201–209, 2000.  
 Bibliography entries using the `amsrefs` format provide a rich internal structure and high-level markup close to that traditionally found in B<sub>B</sub>T<sub>E</sub>X database files. On top of that, using `amsrefs` markup lets you specify the bibliography style completely in a L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X document class file.  
<http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb21-3/tb68down.pdf>
- [44] Dudenredaktion, editor. Duden, Rechtschreibung der deutschen Sprache. Dudenverlag, Mannheim, 21st edition, 1996. ISBN 3-411-04011-4.  
 The standard reference for the correct spelling of all words of contemporary German and for hyphenation rules, with examples and explanations for difficult cases, and a comparison of the old and new orthographic rules.
- [45] Victor Eijkhout. T<sub>E</sub>X by Topic, A T<sub>E</sub>Xnician’s Reference. Addison-Wesley, Reading, MA, USA, 1991. ISBN 0-201-56882-9. Out of print. Available free of charge from the author in PDF format.  
 A systematic reference manual for the experienced T<sub>E</sub>X user. The book offers a comprehensive treatment of every aspect of T<sub>E</sub>X, with detailed explanations of the mechanisms underlying T<sub>E</sub>X’s working, as well as numerous examples of T<sub>E</sub>X programming techniques.  
<http://www.eijkhout.net/tbt>
- [46] Robin Fairbairns. “UK list of T<sub>E</sub>X frequently asked questions on the Web”, 2003.  
 This list of Frequently Asked Questions on T<sub>E</sub>X was originated by the Committee of the U.K. T<sub>E</sub>X Users’ Group; it has well over 300 entries and is regularly updated and expanded.  
<http://www.tex.ac.uk/faq>
- [47] Laurence Finston. “Spindex—Indexing with special characters”. *TUGboat*, 18(4):255–273, 1997.  
 Common Lisp indexing program and supporting T<sub>E</sub>X macros for indexes that include non-Latin characters.  
<http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb18-4/tb57fins.pdf>
- [48] Shinsaku Fujita and Nobuya Tanaka. “X<sup>2</sup>M<sub>T</sub>E<sub>X</sub> (Version 2.00) as implementation of the X<sup>2</sup>M notation and the X<sup>2</sup>M markup language”. *TUGboat*, 21(1):7–14, 2000.  
 A description of version 2 of the X<sup>2</sup>M<sub>T</sub>E<sub>X</sub> system, which can be regarded as a linear notation system expressed in T<sub>E</sub>X macros that corresponds to the IUPAC (International Union of Pure and Applied Chemistry) nomenclature. It provides a convenient method for drawing complicated structural formulas.  
<http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb21-1/tb66fuji.pdf>
- [49] Shinsaku Fujita and Nobuya Tanaka. “Size reduction of chemical structural formulas in X<sup>2</sup>M<sub>T</sub>E<sub>X</sub> (Version 3.00)”. *TUGboat*, 22(4):285–289, 2001.  
 Further improvements to the X<sup>2</sup>M<sub>T</sub>E<sub>X</sub> system, in particular in the area of size reduction of structural formulas.  
<http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb22-4/tb72fuji.pdf>
- [50] Rei Fukui. “TIPA: A system for processing phonetic symbols in L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X”. *TUGboat*, 17(2):102–114, 1996.  
 TIPA is a system for processing symbols of the International Phonetic Alphabet with L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X. It introduces a new encoding for phonetic symbols (T3), which includes all the symbols and diacritics found in the recent versions of IPA as well as some non-IPA symbols. It has full support

for  $\text{\LaTeX}2_{\epsilon}$  and offers an easy input method in the IPA environment.

<http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb17-2/tb51rei.pdf>

- [51] Bernard Gaulle. “Comment peut-on personnaliser l’extension french de  $\text{\LaTeX}$ ?” *Cahiers GUTenberg*, 28-29:143–157, 1998.  
Describes how to personalize the french package.  
<http://www.gutenberg.eu.org/pub/GUTenberg/publicationsPDF/28-29-gaulle.pdf>
- [52] Maarten Gelderman. “A short introduction to font characteristics”. *TUGboat*, 20(2):96–104, 1999.  
This paper provides a description of the main aspects used to describe a font, its basic characteristics, elementary numerical dimensions to access properties of a typeface design, and the notion of “contrast”.  
<http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb20-2/tb63geld.pdf>
- [53] Charles F. Goldfarb. *The SGML Handbook*. Oxford University Press, London, Oxford, New York, 1990. ISBN 0-19-853737-9.  
The full text of the ISO SGML standard [68] copiously annotated by its author, and several tutorials.
- [54] Norbert Golluch. *Kleinweich Büro auf Schlabberscheiben*. Eichborn, Frankfurt, 1999.  
Technisches Deutsch für Angefangen.
- [55] Michel Goossens, Frank Mittelbach, and Alexander Samarin. *The  $\text{\LaTeX}$  Companion. Tools and Techniques for Computer Typesetting*. Addison-Wesley, Reading, MA, USA, 1994. ISBN 0-201-54199-8.  
The first edition of this book.
- [56] Michel Goossens and Sebastian Rahtz. *The  $\text{\LaTeX}$  Web Companion: Integrating  $\text{\TeX}$ , HTML, and XML. Tools and Techniques for Computer Typesetting*. Addison-Wesley Longman, Reading, MA, USA, 1999. ISBN 0-201-43311-7.  
With Eitan M. Gurari, Ross Moore, and Robert S. Sutor.  
This book teaches (scientific) authors how to publish on the web or other hypertext presentation systems, building on their experience with  $\text{\LaTeX}$  and taking into account their specific needs in fields such as mathematics, non-European languages, and algorithmic graphics. The book explains how to make full use of the Adobe Acrobat format from  $\text{\LaTeX}$ , convert legacy documents to HTML or XML, make use of math in web applications, use  $\text{\LaTeX}$  as a tool in preparing web pages, read and write simple XML/SGML, and produce high-quality printed pages from web-hosted XML or HTML pages using  $\text{\TeX}$  or PDF.
- [57] Michel Goossens, Sebastian Rahtz, and Frank Mittelbach. *The  $\text{\LaTeX}$  Graphics Companion: Illustrating Documents with  $\text{\TeX}$  and PostScript*. Tools and Techniques for Computer Typesetting. Addison-Wesley, Reading, MA, USA, 1997. ISBN 0-201-85469-4.  
The book shows how to incorporate graphic files into a  $\text{\LaTeX}$  document, program technical diagrams using several different languages, produce color pictures, achieve special effects with fragments of embedded PostScript, and make high-quality music scores and game diagrams. It also contains detailed descriptions of important packages such as *xypic*, *pstricks*, and *MetaPost*, the standard  $\text{\LaTeX}$  color and graphics packages, PostScript fonts and how to use them in  $\text{\LaTeX}$ , and the *dvips* and *ghostscript* programs.
- [58] Michel Goossens and Vesa Sivunen. “ $\text{\LaTeX}$ , SVG, Fonts”. *TUGboat*, 22(4):269–279, 2001.  
A short overview of SVG and its advantages for portable graphics content, conversion of PostScript glyph outlines to SVG outlines, and the use of SVG glyphs in  $\text{\TeX}$  documents.  
<http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb22-4/tb72goos.pdf>

- [59] Ronald L. Graham, Donald E. Knuth, and Oren Patashnik. *Concrete Mathematics*. Addison-Wesley, Reading, MA, USA, 2nd edition, 1994. ISBN 0-201-55802-5.  
A mathematics textbook prepared with  $\TeX$  using the Concrete Roman typeface; see also [92].
- [60] George Grätzer. *Math into  $\LaTeX$* . Birkhäuser and Springer-Verlag, Cambridge, MA, USA; Berlin, Germany/Basel, Switzerland, and Berlin, Germany/Heidelberg, Germany/London, UK/ etc., 3rd edition, 2000. ISBN 0-8176-4131-9, 3-7643-4131-9.  
Provides a general introduction to  $\LaTeX$  as used to prepare mathematical books and articles. Covers AMS document classes and packages in addition to the basic  $\LaTeX$  offerings.
- [61] George D. Greenwade. “The Comprehensive  $\TeX$  Archive Network (CTAN)”. *TUGboat*, 14(3):342–351, 1993.  
An outline of the conception, development, and early use of the CTAN archive, which makes all  $\TeX$ -related files available on the network.  
<http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb14-3/tb40green.pdf>
- [62] Yannis Haralambous. “Typesetting old German: Fraktur, Schwabacher, Gotisch and initials”. *TUGboat*, 12(1):129–138, 1991.  
Demonstrates the use of `METAFONT` to recreate faithful copies of old-style typefaces and explains the rules for typesetting using these types, with examples.  
<http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb12-1/tb31hara.pdf>
- [63] Horace Hart. *Hart’s Rules; For Compositors and Readers at the University Press, Oxford*. Oxford University Press, London, Oxford, New York, 39th edition, 1991. ISBN 0-19-212983-X.  
A widely used U.K. reference for authors and editors. With the *Oxford Dictionary for Writers and Editors* it presents the canonical house style of the Oxford University Press. See also [143].
- [64] Alan Hoenig.  *$\TeX$  Unbound:  $\LaTeX$  and  $\TeX$  Strategies for Fonts, Graphics, & More*. Oxford University Press, London, Oxford, New York, 1998. ISBN 0-19-509686-X (paperback), 0-19-509685-1 (hardcover).  
The first part of this book provides a brief but comprehensive overview of  $\TeX$ ,  $\LaTeX$ , `METAFONT`, and `MetaPost`, with particular emphasis on how everything fits together, how the production cycle works, and what kinds of files are involved. The second part is devoted to details of fonts and their use in  $\TeX$ . Of particular interest are 30 pages of examples showing how various combinations of well-known text typefaces might be used together with the few choices of math fonts currently available. The final part of the book discusses graphics applications—in particular,  $\TeX$ -friendly methods such as `METAFONT` and `MetaPost`, the `pstricks` package, `PICTEX`, and `MFPic`.
- [65] Berthold K. P. Horn. “The European Modern fonts”. *TUGboat*, 19(1):62–63, 1998.  
The European Modern (EM) fonts are Type 1 fonts based on Computer Modern (CM) that have ready-made accented and composite characters, thus enabling  $\TeX$  hyphenation when using languages that use such characters.  
<http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb19-1/tb58horn.pdf>
- [66] Jean-Michel Hufflein. “Typographie: les conventions, la tradition, les goûts, . . . , et  $\LaTeX$ ”. *Cahiers GUTenberg*, 35–36:169–214, 2000.  
This article shows that learning typographic rules—even considering those for French and English together—is not all that difficult. It also teaches the basics of using the  $\LaTeX$  packages `french` (for French only) and `babel` (allowing a homogeneous treatment of most other languages).



Finally, the author shows how to build a new multilingual document class and bibliography style.  
<http://www.gutenberg.eu.org/pub/GUTenberg/publicationsPDF/35-hufflen.pdf>

- [67] “ISO/IEC 8859-1:1998 to ISO/IEC 8859-16:2001, Information technology—8-bit single-byte coded graphic character sets, Parts 1 to 16”. International Standard ISO/IEC 8859, ISO Geneva, 1998–2001.  
 A description of various 8-bit alphabetic character sets. Parts 1–4, 9, 10, and 13–16 correspond to 10 character sets needed to encode different groups of languages using the Latin alphabet, while part 5 corresponds to Cyrillic, part 6 to Arabic, part 7 to Greek, part 8 to Hebrew, and part 11 to Thai.
- [68] “ISO 8879:1986, Information Processing—Text and Office Systems—Standard Generalised Markup Language (SGML)”. International Standard ISO 8879, ISO Geneva, 1986.  
 The—not always easy to read—ISO standard describing the SGML language in full technical detail. An addendum was published in 1988 and two corrigenda in 1996 and 1999. See [53] for an annotated description.
- [69] “ISO/IEC 10646-1:2000, Information technology—Universal Multiple-Octet Coded Character Set (UCS)—Part 1: Architecture and Basic Multilingual Plane”. International Standard ISO 10646-1 (Edition 2), ISO Geneva, 2000.  
 This standard specifies the architecture of the Universal Multiple-Octet Coded Character Set (UCS). This 32-bit character encoding standard is for all practical purposes identical to the Unicode standard; see [165]. The layout of the Basic Multilingual Plane (plane 0 or BMP) is described in detail. An amendment in 2002 added mathematical symbols and other characters.
- [70] “ISO/IEC 10646-2:2001, Information technology—Universal Multiple-Octet Coded Character Set (UCS)—Part 2: Supplementary Planes”. International Standard ISO 10646-2, ISO Geneva, 2001.  
 Complementing [69], which describes plane 0 (BMP) of the UCS, the present standard details the layout of the supplementary planes; see also [165].
- [71] “ISO/IEC 14651:2001, Information technology—International string ordering and comparison—Method for comparing character strings and description of the common template tailorable ordering”. International Standard ISO/IEC 14651:2001, ISO Geneva, 2001.
- [72] Alan Jeffrey. “PostScript font support in  $\text{\LaTeX} 2_{\epsilon}$ ”. *TUGboat*, 15(3):263–268, 1994.  
 Describes the original psnffs distribution for using PostScript fonts with  $\text{\LaTeX}$ .  
<http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb15-3/tb44jeff.pdf>
- [73] Alan Jeffrey. “Tight setting with  $\text{\TeX}$ ”. *TUGboat*, 16(1):78–80, 1995.  
 Describes some experiments with setting text matter in  $\text{\TeX}$  using Adobe Times, a very tightly spaced text font.  
<http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb16-1/tb46jeff.pdf>
- [74] Alan Jeffrey and Rowland McDonnell. “fontinst: Font installation software for  $\text{\TeX}$ ”, 1998.  
 This utility package supports the creation of complex virtual fonts in any encoding for use with  $\text{\LaTeX}$ , particularly from collections of PostScript fonts.  
 On CTAN at: [fonts/utilities/fontinst/doc/manual](http://ctan.org/fonts/utilities/fontinst/doc/manual)
- [75] Alan Jeffrey, Sebastian Rahtz, Ulrik Vieth, and Lars Hellström. “The fontinst utility”, 2003.  
 Technical description of the fontinst utility.  
 On CTAN at: [fonts/utilities/fontinst/source/fisource.dvi](http://ctan.org/fonts/utilities/fontinst/source/fisource.dvi)

- [76] Roger Kehr. “xindy—A flexible indexing system”. *Cahiers GUTenberg*, 28–29:223–230, 1998.  
A new index processor, xindy, is described. It allows for sorting of index entries at a fine granularity in a multi-language environment, offers new mechanisms for processing structured location references besides page numbers and Roman numerals, and has provisions for complex markup schemes.  
<http://www.gutenberg.eu.org/pub/GUTenberg/publicationsPDF/28-29-kehr.pdf>
- [77] Brian W. Kernighan. “pic—A graphics language for typesetting”. Computing Science Technical Report 116, AT&T Bell Laboratories, 1991.  
The user manual for the pic language, which is intended for drawing simple figures on a typesetter. The basic objects of the language are boxes, circles, ellipses, lines, arrows, spline curves, and text. These may be placed at any position, specified either in an absolute way or with respect to previous objects.  
<http://cm.bell-labs.com/cm/cs/cstr/116.ps.gz>
- [78] Jörg Knappen. “Release 1.2 of the dc-fonts: Improvements to the European letters and first release of text companion symbols”. *TUGboat*, 16(4):381–387, 1995.  
Description of the DC fonts, which were precursors of the EC fonts, which themselves are the default fonts for the T1 encoding of L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X.  
<http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb16-4/tb49knap.pdf>
- [79] Jörg Knappen. “The dc fonts 1.3: Move towards stability and completeness”. *TUGboat*, 17(2):99–101, 1996.  
A follow-up article to [78]. It explains the progress made in version 1.3 in the areas of stability and completeness.  
<http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb17-2/tb51knap.pdf>
- [80] Donald E. Knuth. *T<sub>E</sub>X and METAFONT—New Directions in Typesetting*. Digital Press, 12 Crosby Drive, Bedford, MA 01730, USA, 1979. ISBN 0-932376-02-9.  
Contains an article on “Mathematical Typography”, describing the author’s motivation for starting to work on T<sub>E</sub>X and the early history of computer typesetting. Describes early (now obsolete) versions of T<sub>E</sub>X and METAFONT.
- [81] Donald E. Knuth. “Literate programming”. Report STAN-CS-83-981, Stanford University, Department of Computer Science, Stanford, CA, USA, 1983.  
A collection of papers on styles of programming and documentation.  
<http://www.literateprogramming.com/farticles.html>.
- [82] Donald E. Knuth. *The T<sub>E</sub>Xbook*, volume A of *Computers and Typesetting*. Addison-Wesley, Reading, MA, USA, 1986. ISBN 0-201-13447-0.  
The definitive user’s guide and complete reference manual for T<sub>E</sub>X.
- [83] Donald E. Knuth. *T<sub>E</sub>X: The Program*, volume B of *Computers and Typesetting*. Addison-Wesley, Reading, MA, USA, 1986. ISBN 0-201-13437-3.  
The complete source code for the T<sub>E</sub>X program, typeset with several indices.
- [84] Donald E. Knuth. *The METAFONTbook*, volume C of *Computers and Typesetting*. Addison-Wesley, Reading, MA, USA, 1986. ISBN 0-201-13445-4 (hardcover), 0-201-13444-6 (paperback).  
The user’s guide and reference manual for METAFONT, the companion program to T<sub>E</sub>X for designing fonts.

- [85] Donald E. Knuth. METAFONT: The Program, volume D of *Computers and Typesetting*. Addison-Wesley, Reading, MA, USA, 1986. ISBN 0-201-13438-1.  
The complete source code listing of the METAFONT program.
- [86] Donald E. Knuth. Computer Modern Typefaces, volume E of *Computers and Typesetting*. Addison-Wesley, Reading, MA, USA, 1986. ISBN 0-201-13446-2.  
More than 500 Greek and Roman letterforms, together with punctuation marks, numerals, and many mathematical symbols, are graphically depicted. The METAFONT code to generate each glyph is given and it is explained how, by changing the parameters in the METAFONT code, all characters in the Computer Modern family of typefaces can be obtained.
- [87] Donald E. Knuth. 3:16 Bible texts illuminated. A-R Editions, Inc., Madison, Wisconsin, 1990. ISBN 0-89579-252-4.  
Analysis of Chapter 3 Verse 16 of each book of the Bible. Contains wonderful calligraphy.
- [88] Donald E. Knuth. The Art of Computer Programming, vols 1-3. Addison-Wesley, Reading, MA, USA, 1998.  
A major work on algorithms and data structures for efficient programming.
- [89] Donald E. Knuth. Digital Typography. CSLI Publications, Stanford, CA, USA, 1999. ISBN 1-57586-011-2 (cloth), 1-57586-010-4 (paperback).  
A collection of Knuth's writings on  $\TeX$  and typography.
- [90] Donald E. Knuth. "Mathematical typography". In Knuth [89], pp. 19-65.  
Based on a lecture he gave in 1978, Knuth makes the point that mathematics books and journals do not look as now beautiful as they did in the past. As this is mainly due to the fact that high-quality typesetting has become too expensive, he proposes to use mathematics itself to solve the problem. As a first step he sees the development of a method to unambiguously mark up the math elements in a document so that they can be easily handled by machines. The second step is to use mathematics to design the shapes of letters and symbols. The article goes into the details of these two approaches.
- [91] Donald E. Knuth. "Virtual fonts: More fun for grand wizards". In Knuth [89], pp. 247-262. Originally published in *TUGboat* 11(1):13-23, 1990.  
An explanation of what virtual fonts are and why they are needed, plus technical details.  
On CTAN at: [info/virtual-fonts.knuth](http://info.virtual-fonts.knuth)  
<http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb11-1/tb27knut.pdf>
- [92] Donald E. Knuth. "Typesetting concrete mathematics". In Knuth [89], pp. 367-378. Originally published in *TUGboat* 10(1):31-36, 1989.  
Knuth explains how he prepared the textbook *Concrete Mathematics*. He states that he wanted to make that book both mathematically and typographically "interesting", since it would be the first major use of Herman Zapf's new typeface, AMS Euler. The font parameters were tuned up to make the text look as good as that produced by the best handwriting of a mathematician. Other design decisions for the book are also described.  
<http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb10-1/tb26knut.pdf>
- [93] Donald E. Knuth. "Fonts for digital halftones". In Knuth [89], pp. 415-448. Originally published in *TUGboat* 8(2):135-160, 1987.  
This article discusses some experiments in which METAFONT was used to create fonts to generate half-tones on laser printers. The methods also proved useful in several other applications, while their design involved a number of interesting issues.  
<http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb08-2/tb18knut.pdf>

- [94] Donald E. Knuth. “Computers and typesetting”. In Knuth [89], pp. 555–562. Originally published in *TUGboat* 7(2):95–98, 1986.  
Remarks presented by Knuth at the Computer Museum, Boston, Massachusetts, on 21 May 1986, at the “coming-out” party to celebrate the completion of  $\TeX$ .  
<http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb07-2/tb14knut.pdf>
- [95] Donald E. Knuth. “The new versions of  $\TeX$  and METAFONT”. In Knuth [89], pp. 563–570. Originally published in *TUGboat* 10(3):325–328, 1989.  
Knuth explains how he was convinced at the TUG Meeting at Stanford in 1989 to make one further set of changes to  $\TeX$  and METAFONT to extend these programs to support 8-bit character sets. He goes on to describe the various changes he introduced to implement this feature, as well as a few other improvements.  
<http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb10-3/tb25knut.pdf>
- [96] Donald E. Knuth. “The future of  $\TeX$  and METAFONT”. In Knuth [89], pp. 571–572. Originally published in *TUGboat* 11(4):489, 1990.  
In this article Knuth announces that his work on  $\TeX$ , METAFONT, and Computer Modern has “come to an end” and that he will make further changes only to correct extremely serious bugs.  
<http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb11-4/tb30knut.pdf>
- [97] Donald E. Knuth and Pierre MacKay. “Mixing right-to-left texts with left-to-right texts”. In Knuth [89], pp. 157–176. Originally published in *TUGboat* 8(1):14–25, 1987.  
 $\TeX$  was initially designed to produce documents with material flowing left-to-right and top-to-bottom. This paper clarifies the issues involved in mixed-direction document production and discusses changes to  $\TeX$  that can extend it to become a bidirectional formatting system.  
<http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb08-1/tb17knutmix.pdf>
- [98] Donald E. Knuth and Michael F. Plass. “Breaking paragraphs into lines”. In Knuth [89], pp. 67–155.  
This article, originally published in 1981, addresses the problem of dividing the text of a paragraph into lines of approximately equal length. The basic algorithm considers the paragraph as a whole and introduces the (now well-known  $\TeX$ ) concepts of “boxes”, “glue”, and “penalties” to find optimal breakpoints for the lines. The paper describes the dynamic programming technique used to implement the algorithm.
- [99] Donald E. Knuth and Hermann Zapf. “AMS Euler—A new typeface for mathematics”. In Knuth [89], pp. 339–366.  
The two authors explain, in this article originally published in 1989, how a collaboration between scientists and artists is helping to bring beauty to the pages of mathematical journals and textbooks.
- [100] Markus Kohm and Jens-Uwe Morawski. *KOMA-Script: eine Sammlung von Klassen und Paketen für  $\LaTeX 2_{\epsilon}$* . DANTE, Heidelberg, 2003. ISBN 3-936427-45-3.  
KOMA-Script is a bundle of  $\LaTeX$  classes and packages that can be used as replacements for the standard  $\LaTeX$  classes offering extended functionalities. German and English manuals are provided as part of the distribution.  
On CTAN at: [macros/latex/contrib/koma-script/scrguide.pdf](http://www.ctan.org/macros/latex/contrib/koma-script/scrguide.pdf)
- [101] Helmut Kopka and Patrick Daly. *Guide to  $\LaTeX$ . Tools and Techniques for Computer Typesetting*. Addison-Wesley, Boston, MA, USA, 4th edition, 2004. ISBN 0-201-17385-6.  
An introductory guide to  $\LaTeX$  with a different pedagogical style than L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X’s *LaTeX Manual* [104].

- [102] Klaus Lagally. “Arab $\TeX$ —Typesetting Arabic with vowels and ligatures”. In “Proceedings of the 7th European  $\TeX$  Conference, Prague”, pp. 153–172. CsTUG, Prague, 1992. ISBN 80-210-0480-0.  
A macro package, compatible with plain  $\TeX$  and  $\LaTeX$ , for typesetting Arabic with both partial and full vocalization.
- [103] Leslie Lamport. “*MakeIndex*, An Index Processor For  $\LaTeX$ ”. Technical report, Electronic Document in *MakeIndex* distribution, 1987.  
This document explains the syntax that can be used inside  $\LaTeX$ 's `\index` command when using *MakeIndex* to generate your index. It also gives a list of the possible error messages.  
On CTAN at: [indexing/makeindex/doc/makeindex.dvi](http://www.ctan.org/indexing/makeindex/doc/makeindex.dvi)
- [104] Leslie Lamport.  *$\LaTeX$ : A Document Preparation System: User's Guide and Reference Manual*. Addison-Wesley, Reading, MA, USA, 2nd edition, 1994. ISBN 0-201-52983-1. Reprinted with corrections in 1996.  
The ultimate reference for basic user-level  $\LaTeX$  by the creator of  $\LaTeX$  2.09. It complements the material presented in this book.
- [105] Olga Lapko and Irina Makhovaya. “The style `russianb` for Babel: Problems and solutions”. *TUGboat*, 16(4):364–372, 1995.  
This paper describes the language option `russianb`, which includes specific commands to rusefy captions and alphabetic counters and to allow for Russian mathematical operators. Some problems are mentioned that may occur when using this option (i.e., with different encodings).  
<http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb16-4/tb49olga.pdf>
- [106]  $\LaTeX$ 3 Project Team. “ $\LaTeX$  bug database”.  
The bug reporting and tracking service run by the  $\LaTeX$ 3 team as part of the  $\LaTeX$ 2 $\epsilon$  maintenance activity.  
<http://www.latex-project.org/cgi-bin/1txbugs2html>
- [107]  $\LaTeX$ 3 Project Team. “ $\LaTeX$  news”.  
An issue of  *$\LaTeX$  News* is released with each  $\LaTeX$ 2 $\epsilon$  release, highlighting changes since the last release.  
<http://www.latex-project.org>
- [108]  $\LaTeX$ 3 Project Team. “Default docstrip headers”. *TUGboat*, 19(2):137–138, 1998.  
This document describes the format of the header that `docstrip` normally adds to generated package files. This header is suitable for copyright information or distribution conditions.  
<http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb19-2/tb591tdocstrip.pdf>
- [109]  $\LaTeX$ 3 Project Team. “ $\LaTeX$ 2 $\epsilon$  font selection”, 2000.  
A description of font selection in standard  $\LaTeX$  intended for package writers who are already familiar with  $\TeX$  fonts and  $\LaTeX$ .  
<http://www.latex-project.org>
- [110]  $\LaTeX$ 3 Project Team. “Configuration options for  $\LaTeX$ 2 $\epsilon$ ”, 2001.  
How to configure a  $\LaTeX$  installation using the set of standard configuration files.  
<http://www.latex-project.org>
- [111]  $\LaTeX$ 3 Project Team. “The  $\LaTeX$  project public license (version 1.3)”, 2003.  
An Open Source License used by the core  $\LaTeX$ 2 $\epsilon$  distribution and many contributed packages.  
<http://www.latex-project.org>
- [112] John Lavagnino and Dominik Wujastyk. “An overview of EDMAC: A plain  $\TeX$  format for critical editions”. *TUGboat*, 11(4):623–643, 1990.  
EDMAC is for typesetting of “critical editions” of texts such as the *Oxford Classical Texts*, *Shakespeare*, and other series. It supports marginal line numbering and multiple series of footnotes and endnotes keyed to line numbers.  
<http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb11-4/tb30lava.pdf>

- [113] Werner Lemberg. “The CJK package: Multilingual support beyond Babel”. *TUGboat*, 18(3):214–224, 1997.  
A description of the CJK (Chinese/Japanese/Korean) package for  $\LaTeX$  and its interface to mule (multilingual emacs). <http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb18-3/cjkintro600.pdf>
- [114] Silvio Levy. “Using Greek fonts with  $\TeX$ ”. *TUGboat*, 9(1):20–24, 1988.  
The author tries to demonstrate that typesetting Greek in  $\TeX$  with the gr family of fonts can be as easy as typesetting English text and leads to equally good results. The article is meant as a tutorial but some technical details are given for those who will have acquired greater familiarity with the font. <http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb09-1/tb20levy.pdf>
- [115] Franklin Mark Liang. Word Hy-phen-a-tion by Com-pu-ter. Ph.D. thesis, Stanford University, Stanford, CA 94305, 1983. Also available as Stanford University, Department of Computer Science Report No. STAN-CS-83-977. A detailed description of the word hyphenation algorithm used by  $\TeX$ .
- [116] Ruari McLean. The Thames and Hudson Manual of Typography. Thames and Hudson, London, UK, 1980. ISBN 0-500-68022-1.  
A broad introduction to traditional commercial typography.
- [117] Frank Mittelbach. “E- $\TeX$ : Guidelines for future  $\TeX$ ”. *TUGboat*, 11(3):337–345, 1990.  
The output of  $\TeX$  is compared with that of hand-typeset documents. It is shown that many important concepts of high-quality typesetting are not supported and that further research to design a “successor” typesetting system to  $\TeX$  should be undertaken. <http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb11-3/tb29mitt.pdf>
- [118] Frank Mittelbach. “Comments on “Filenames for Fonts” (*TUGboat* 11#4)”. *TUGboat*, 13(1):51–53, 1992.  
Some problems with K. Berry’s naming scheme are discussed, especially from the point of view of defining certain font characteristics independently and the use of the scheme with NFSS. <http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb13-1/tb34mittfont.pdf>
- [119] Frank Mittelbach. “A regression test suite for  $\LaTeX 2_{\epsilon}$ ”. *TUGboat*, 18(4):309–311, 1997.  
Description of the concepts and implementation of the test suite used to test for unexpected side effects after changes to the  $\LaTeX$  kernel. One of the most valuable maintenance tools for keeping  $\LaTeX 2_{\epsilon}$  stable. <http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb18-4/tb57mitt.pdf>
- [120] Frank Mittelbach. “Language Information in Structured Documents: Markup and rendering—Concepts and problems”. In “International Symposium on Multilingual Information Processing”, pp. 93–104. Tsukuba, Japan, 1997. Invited paper. Republished in *TUGboat* 18(3):199–205, 1997.  
This paper discusses the structure and processing of multilingual documents, both at a general level and in relation to a proposed extension to standard  $\LaTeX$ . <http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb18-3/tb56lang.pdf>
- [121] Frank Mittelbach. “Formatting documents with floats: A new algorithm for  $\LaTeX 2_{\epsilon}$ ”. *TUGboat*, 21(3):278–290, 2000.  
Descriptions of features and concepts of a new output routine for  $\LaTeX$  that can handle spanning floats in multicolumn page design. <http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb21-3/tb68mittel.pdf>
- [122] Frank Mittelbach. “The trace package”. *TUGboat*, 22(1/2):93–99, 2001.  
A description of the trace package for controlling debugging messages from  $\LaTeX$  packages. <http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb22-1-2/tb70mitt.pdf>

- [123] Frank Mittelbach, David Carlisle, and Chris Rowley. “New interfaces for  $\LaTeX$  class design, Parts I and II”. *TUGboat*, 20(3):214–216, 1999.  
Some proposals for the first-ever interface to setting up and coding  $\LaTeX$  classes.  
<http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb20-3/tb64carl.pdf>
- [124] Frank Mittelbach, David Carlisle, Chris Rowley, et al. “Experimental  $\LaTeX$  code for class design”.  
At the  $\TeX$  Users Group conference in Vancouver the  $\LaTeX$  project team gave a talk on models for user-level interfaces and designer-level interfaces in  $\LaTeX$ 3 [123]. Most of these ideas have been implemented in prototype implementations (e.g., template design, front matter handling, output routine, galley and paragraph formatting). The source code is documented and contains further explanations and examples; see also [121].  
Slides: <http://www.latex-project.org/papers/tug99pdf>  
Code: <http://www.latex-project.org/code/experimental>
- [125] Frank Mittelbach, Denys Duchier, Johannes Braams, Marcin Woliński, and Mark Wooding. “The docstrip program”, 2003. Distributed as part of the base  $\LaTeX$  distribution.  
Describes the implementation of the docstrip program.  
On CTAN at: [macros/latex/base/docstrip.dtx](http://www.ctan.org/macros/latex/base/docstrip.dtx)
- [126] Frank Mittelbach and Chris Rowley. “ $\LaTeX$  2.09  $\leftrightarrow$   $\LaTeX$ 3”. *TUGboat*, 13(1):96–101, 1992.  
A brief sketch of the  $\LaTeX$ 3 Project, retracing its history and describing the structure of the system. An update appeared in *TUGboat*, 13(3):390–391, October 1992. A call for volunteers to help in the development of  $\LaTeX$ 3 and a list of the various tasks appeared in *TUGboat*, 13(4):510–515, December 1992. The article also describes how you can obtain the current task list as well as various  $\LaTeX$ 3 working group documents via e-mail or FTP and explains how you can subscribe to the  $\LaTeX$ 3 discussion list.  
<http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb13-1/tb34mitt13.pdf>
- [127] Frank Mittelbach and Chris Rowley. “The pursuit of quality: How can automated typesetting achieve the highest standards of craft typography?” In C. Vanoirbeek and G. Coray, editors, “EP92—Proceedings of Electronic Publishing, '92, International Conference on Electronic Publishing, Document Manipulation, and Typography, Swiss Federal Institute of Technology, Lausanne, Switzerland, April 7–10, 1992”, pp. 261–273. Cambridge University Press, New York, 1992. ISBN 0-521-43277-4.
- [128] Frank Mittelbach and Rainer Schöpf. “A new font selection scheme for  $\TeX$  macro packages—the basic macros”. *TUGboat*, 10(2):222–238, 1989.  
A description of the basic macros used to implement the first version of  $\LaTeX$ 's New Font Selection Scheme.  
<http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb10-2/tb24mitt.pdf>
- [129] Frank Mittelbach and Rainer Schöpf. “With  $\LaTeX$  into the nineties”. *TUGboat*, 10(4):681–690, 1989.  
This article proposes a reimplementaion of  $\LaTeX$  that preserves the essential features of the current interface while taking into account the increasing needs of the various user communities. It also formulates some ideas for further developments. It was instrumental in the move from  $\LaTeX$  2.09 to  $\LaTeX$  2 $\epsilon$ . <http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb10-4/tb26mitt.pdf>
- [130] Frank Mittelbach and Rainer Schöpf. “Reprint: The new font family selection — User interface to standard  $\LaTeX$ ”. *TUGboat*, 11(2):297–305, 1990.  
A complete description of the user interface of the first version of  $\LaTeX$ 's New Font Selection Scheme.  
<http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb11-2/tb28mitt.pdf>

- [131] Frank Mittelbach and Rainer Schöpf. “Towards L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X 3.0”. *TUGboat*, 12(1):74–79, 1991.  
The objectives of the L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X3 project are described. The authors examine enhancements to L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X’s user and style file interfaces that are necessary to keep pace with modern developments, such as SGML. They also review some internal concepts that need revision.  
<http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb12-1/tb31mitt.pdf>
- [132] Gerd Neugebauer. “BIBTOOL: A tool to manipulate B<sub>B</sub>T<sub>E</sub>X files”, 2002.  
Describes the bibtool program for pretty-printing, sorting and merging of B<sub>B</sub>T<sub>E</sub>X databases, generation of uniform reference keys, and selecting of references used in a publication.  
On CTAN at: [biblio/bibtex/utills/bibtool/bibtool.dvi](http://ctan.org/tex-archive/biblio/bibtex/utills/bibtool/bibtool.dvi)
- [133] O. Nicole, J. André, and B. Gaulle. “Notes en bas de pages : commentaires”. *Cahiers GUTenberg*, 15:46–32, 1993.  
Comments, clarifications, and additions to [10].  
<http://www.gutenberg.eu.org/pub/GUTenberg/publicationsPDF/15-nicole.pdf>
- [134] Scott Pakin. “The comprehensive L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X symbol list”, 2003.  
This document lists more than 2800 symbols and the corresponding L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X commands that produce them. Some of these symbols are guaranteed to be available in every L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X 2<sub>ε</sub> system; others require fonts and packages that may not accompany a given distribution and that therefore need to be installed. All of the fonts and packages described in the document are freely available from the CTAN archives.  
On CTAN at: [info/symbols/comprehensive/](http://ctan.org/tex-archive/info/symbols/comprehensive/)
- [135] Oren Patashnik. “B<sub>B</sub>T<sub>E</sub>Xing”, 1988.  
Together with Appendix B of *The Manual* [104], this describes the user interface to B<sub>B</sub>T<sub>E</sub>X with useful hints for controlling its behavior.  
On CTAN at: [biblio/bibtex/contrib/doc/btxdoc.pdf](http://ctan.org/tex-archive/biblio/bibtex/contrib/doc/btxdoc.pdf)
- [136] Oren Patashnik. “Designing B<sub>B</sub>T<sub>E</sub>X styles”, 1988.  
A detailed description for B<sub>B</sub>T<sub>E</sub>X style designers of the postfix stack language used inside B<sub>B</sub>T<sub>E</sub>X style files. After a general description of the language, all commands and built-in functions are reviewed. Finally, B<sub>B</sub>T<sub>E</sub>X name formatting is explained in detail.  
On CTAN at: [biblio/bibtex/contrib/doc/btxhak.pdf](http://ctan.org/tex-archive/biblio/bibtex/contrib/doc/btxhak.pdf)
- [137] John Plaice and Yannis Haralambous. “The latest developments in Ω”. *TUGboat*, 17(2):181–183, 1996.  
The article describes ΩTimes and ΩHelvetica, public-domain virtual Times- and Helvetica-like fonts based on real PostScript fonts, called “Glyph Containers”, which will contain all necessary characters for typesetting with high T<sub>E</sub>X quality in all languages and systems using the Latin, Greek, Cyrillic, Arabic, Hebrew, and Tinagh alphabets and their derivatives. Other alphabets, such as Coptic, Armenian, and Georgian, will follow, as well as mathematical symbols, dingbats, and other character collections. Ultimately, the Ω font set will contain glyphs for the complete Unicode character set, plus some specific glyphs needed for high-quality typography.  
<http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb17-2/tb51omeg.pdf>
- [138] John Plaice, Yannis Haralambous, and Chris Rowley. “A multidimensional approach to typesetting”. *TUGboat*. To appear.  
Outline of an approach to micro-typesetting that substantially improves on that of T<sub>E</sub>X and Ω2.0.  
[http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/...](http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/)
- [139] Sunil Podar. “Enhancements to the picture environment of L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X”. Technical Report 86-17, Department of Computer Science, S.U.N.Y., 1986. Version 1.2: July 14, 1986.  
This document describes some new commands for the picture environment of L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X, especially higher-level commands that enhance its graphic capabilities by providing a friendlier and more powerful user interface. This lets you create more sophisticated pictures with less effort than in basic L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X.



- [140] Rama Porrat. “Developments in Hebrew T<sub>E</sub>X”. In “Proceedings of the 7th European T<sub>E</sub>X Conference, Prague”, pp. 135–147. CsTUG, Prague, 1992. ISBN 80-210-0480-0.  
Discussion of available software and macro packages that support typesetting in two directions, and of associated Hebrew fonts.
- [141] Bernd Raichle, Rolf Niepraschk, and Thomas Hafner. “DE-TeX-FAQ—Fragen und Antworten über T<sub>E</sub>X, L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X und DANTE e.V.”, 2003.  
Frequently Asked Questions with answers about T<sub>E</sub>X and the German T<sub>E</sub>X users’ Group DANTE e.V. (in German language). <http://www.dante.de/faq/de-tex-faq>
- [142] Brian Reid. Scribe Document Production System User Manual. Unilogic Ltd, 1984.  
The manual for the system that inspired certain aspects of L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X.
- [143] Robert M Ritter, editor. The Oxford Style Manual. Oxford University Press, London, Oxford, New York, 2003. ISBN 0-198-60564-1.  
Reference work incorporating an update to *Hart’s Rules* [63], and the *Oxford Dictionary for Writers and Editors*.
- [144] Tomas G. Rokicki. “A proposed standard for specials”. *TUGboat*, 16(4):395–401, 1995.  
A draft standard for the contents of T<sub>E</sub>X \special commands.  
<http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb16-4/tb49roki.pdf>
- [145] Tomas G. Rokicki. “Dvips: A DVI-to-PostScript Translator, Version 5.66a”, 1997.  
The user guide for dvips and its accompanying programs and packages such as afm2tfm.  
[On CTAN at: dviware/dvips/dvips\\_man.pdf](http://www.ctan.org/dviware/dvips/dvips_man.pdf)
- [146] Emmanuel Donin de Rosière. From stack removing in stack-based languages to BibT<sub>E</sub>X++. Master’s thesis, ENSTBr, 2003.  
A description of BibT<sub>E</sub>X++, a bibliography section creator for L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X a possible successor of B<sub>B</sub>T<sub>E</sub>X. The program can compile B<sub>B</sub>T<sub>E</sub>X .bst style files into Java code.  
[http://www.lit.enstb.org/~keryell/elevés/ENSTBr/2002-2003/DEA/Donin\\_de\\_Rosiere](http://www.lit.enstb.org/~keryell/elevés/ENSTBr/2002-2003/DEA/Donin_de_Rosiere)
- [147] Chris Rowley. “Models and languages for formatted documents”. *TUGboat*, 20(3):189–195, 1999.  
Explores many ideas around the nature of document formatting and how these can be modeled and implemented. <http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb20-3/tb64rowl.pdf>
- [148] Chris Rowley. “The L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X legacy: 2.09 and all that”. In ACM, editor, “Proceedings of the Twentieth Annual ACM Symposium on Principles of Distributed Computing 2001, Newport, Rhode Island, United States”, pp. 17–25. ACM Press, New York, NY, USA, 2001. ISBN 1-58113-383-9.  
Part of a celebration for Leslie Lamport’s sixtieth birthday; a very particular account of the technical history and philosophy of T<sub>E</sub>X and L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X.
- [149] Chris A. Rowley and Frank Mittelbach. “Application-independent representation of multilingual text”. In Unicode Consortium, editor, “Europe, Software + the Internet: Going Global with Unicode: Tenth International

- Unicode Conference, March 10–12, 1997, Mainz, Germany”, The Unicode Consortium, San Jose, CA, 1997.  
Explores the nature of text representation in computer files and the needs of a wide range of text-processing software. <http://www.latex-project.org/papers/unicode5.pdf>
- [150] Richard Rubinstein. *Digital Typography—An Introduction to Type and Composition for Computer System Design*. Addison-Wesley, Reading, MA, USA, 1988. ISBN 0-201-17633-5. Reprinted with corrections.  
This book describes a technological approach to typography. It shows how computers can be used to design, create, and position the graphical elements used to present documents on a computer.
- [151] Joachim Schrod. “International  $\LaTeX$  is ready to use”. *TUGboat*, 11(1):87–90, 1990.  
Announces some of the early standards for globalization work on  $\LaTeX$  Joachim Schrod. <http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb11-1/tb27schrod.pdf>
- [152] Joachim Schrod. “An international version of *MakeIndex*”. *Cahiers GUTenberg*, 10–11:81–90, 1991.  
The *MakeIndex* index processor is only really usable for English texts; non-English texts, especially those using non-Latin alphabets, such as Russian, Arabic, or Chinese, prove problematic. In this case the tagging of index entries is often tedious and error prone. In particular, if markup is used within the index key, an explicit sort key must be specified. This article presents a new version of *MakeIndex*, which uses less memory so that it can be used for the creation of very large indices. It allows the automatic creation of sort keys from index keys by user-specified mappings, and supports documents in non-Latin alphabets.  
<http://www.gutenberg.eu.org/pub/GUTenberg/publicationsPDF/10-schrod.pdf>
- [153] Joachim Schrod. “The components of  $\TeX$ ”. *MAPS*, 8:81–86, 1992.  
 $\TeX$  needs a great number of supplementary components (files and programs) whose meanings and interactions often are unknown; the structure of a complete  $\TeX$  setup is explained. [http://www.ntg.nl/maps/pdf/8\\_18.pdf](http://www.ntg.nl/maps/pdf/8_18.pdf)
- [154] Paul Stiff. “The end of the line: A survey of unjustified typography”. *Information Design Journal*, 8(2):125–152, 1996.  
A good overview about the typographical problems that need to be resolved when producing high-quality unjustified copy.
- [155] Anders Svensson. “Typesetting diagrams with *kuvio.tex*”, 1996.  
Manual for *kuvio* system for typesetting diagrams; it uses PostScript code in `\specials`.  
On CTAN at: [macros/generic/diagrams/kuvio](http://www.ctan.org/macros/generic/diagrams/kuvio)
- [156] Ellen Swanson. *Mathematics into Type*. American Mathematical Society, Providence, Rhode Island, updated edition, 1999. ISBN 0-8218-1961-5.  
Updated by Arlene O’Sean and Antoinette Schleyer.  
Originally written as a manual to standardize copyediting procedures, the second edition is also intended for use by publishers and authors as a guide in preparing mathematics copy for the printer.
- [157] The *TUGboat* Team. “ $\TeX$  live CD 5 and the  $\TeX$  Catalogue”. *TUGboat*, 21(1):16–90, 2000.  
The  $\TeX$  live CD is a ready-to-run  $\TeX$  system for the most popular operating systems; it works with all major  $\TeX$ -related programs and contains a complete collection of fonts, macros, and other items with support for many languages. This article describes the  $\TeX$  live CD 5 distribution with cross-references to Graham Williams’  $\TeX$  catalogue.  
<http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb21-1/tb66cd.pdf>  
Current version: <http://www.tug.org/texlive>

- [158] Hàn Thế Thành. “Improving  $\TeX$ ’s typeset layout”. *TUGboat*, 19(3):284–288, 1998.  
This attempt to improve  $\TeX$ ’s typeset layout is based on the adjustment of interword spacing after the paragraphs have been broken into lines. Instead of changing only the interword spacing to justify text lines, fonts on the line are also slightly expanded to minimize excessive stretching of the interword spaces. This font expansion is implemented using horizontal scaling in PDF. By using such expansion conservatively, and by employing appropriate settings for  $\TeX$ ’s line-breaking and spacing parameters, this method can improve the appearance of  $\TeX$ ’s typeset layout. <http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb19-3/tb60than.pdf>
- [159] Hàn Thế Thành. “Micro-typographic extensions to the  $\TeX$  typesetting system”. *TUGboat*, 21(4):317–434, 2000.  
Doctoral dissertation at the Faculty of Informatics, Masaryk University, Brno, Czech Republic, October 2000. <http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb21-4/tb69than.pdf>
- [160] Hàn Thế Thành. “Margin kerning and font expansion with pdf $\TeX$ ”. *TUGboat*, 22(3):146–148, 2001.  
“Margin kerning” adjusts the positions of the primary and final glyphs in a line of text to make the margins “look straight”. “Font expansion” uses a slightly wider or narrower variant of a font to make interword spacing more even. These techniques are explained with the help of examples. For a detailed explanation of the concepts, see [159]. This feature was used in the preparation of this book. <http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb22-3/tb72than.pdf>
- [161] Hàn Thế Thành and Sebastian Rahtz. “The pdf $\TeX$  user manual”. *TUGboat*, 18(4):249–254, 1997.  
User manual for the pdf $\TeX$  system, which extends  $\TeX$  to generate PDF directly. <http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb18-4/tb57than.pdf>
- [162] Harold Thimbleby. “‘See also’ indexing with Makeindex”. *TUGboat*, 12(2):290–290, 1991.  
Describes how to produce “see also” entries with *MakeIndex* appearing after any page numbers for that entry. Also check [163]. <http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb12-2/tb32thim.pdf>
- [163] Harold Thimbleby. “Erratum: ‘See also’ indexing with Makeindex, *TUGboat* 12, no. 2, p. 290”. *TUGboat*, 13(1):95–95, 1992.  
Erratum to [162]. <http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb13-1/tb34thim.pdf>
- [164] TUG Working Group on a  $\TeX$  Directory Structure. “A directory structure for  $\TeX$  files (Version 0.999)”. *TUGboat*, 16(4):401–413, 1995.  
Describes the commonly used standard  $\TeX$  Directory Structure (TDS) for implementation-independent  $\TeX$  system files. <http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb16-4/tb49tds.pdf>  
Current version: <http://www.tug.org/tds>
- [165] The Unicode Consortium. The Unicode Standard, Version 4.0. Addison-Wesley, Boston, MA, USA, 2003. ISBN 0-321-18578-1.  
The reference guide of the Unicode Standard, a universal character-encoding scheme that defines a consistent way of encoding multilingual text. Unicode is the default encoding of HTML and XML. The book explains the principles of operation and contains images of the glyphs for all characters presently defined in Unicode.  
Available for restricted use from: <http://www.unicode.org/versions/Unicode4.0.0>
- [166] Gabriel Valiente Feruglio. “Typesetting commutative diagrams”. *TUGboat*, 15(4):466–484, 1994.  
Surveys the available support for typesetting commutative diagrams. <http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb15-4/tb45vali.pdf>

- [167] Gabriel Valiente Feruglio. “Modern Catalan typographical conventions”. *TUGboat*, 16(3):329–338, 1995.  
 Many languages, such as German, English, and French, have a traditional typography. However, despite the existence of a well-established tradition in scientific writing in Catalan, there are not yet any standards encompassing typographical conventions in this area. This paper proposes typographical rules that reflect the spirit of ancient Catalan scientific writings while conforming to modern typographical conventions. Some of these typographical rules are incorporated in Catalan extensions to  $\TeX$  and  $\LaTeX$ . The proposal also hopes to contribute to the development of standard rules for scientific writing in Catalan.  
<http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb16-3/tb48vali.pdf>
- [168] Michael Vulis. “ $\text{V}\TeX$  enhancements to the  $\TeX$  language”. *TUGboat*, 11(3):429–434, 1990.  
 Description of the commercial  $\text{V}\TeX$  system, which supports a scalable font format.  
<http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/>  
 More recent information available from <http://www.micropress-inc.com/enfeat.htm>
- [169] Graham Williams. “Graham Williams’  $\TeX$  Catalogue”. *TUGboat*, 21(1):17–90, 2000.  
 This catalogue lists more than 1500  $\TeX$ ,  $\LaTeX$ , and related packages and tools and is linked directly to the items on CTAN.  
<http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb21-1/tb66catal.pdf>  
 Latest version on CTAN at: [help/Catalogue/catalogue.html](http://help/Catalogue/catalogue.html)
- [170] Hugh Williamson. *Methods of Book Design*. Yale University Press, New Haven, London, 3rd edition, 1983.  
 A classic work that has become a basic tool for the practicing book designer. It deals with such matters as the preparation of copy, the selection and arrangement of type, the designer’s part in book illustration and jacket design, and the economics of book production. The book also explains the materials and techniques of book production and their effect on the design of books.
- [171] Peter Wilson. *ledmac—A presumptuous attempt to port EDMAC and TABMAC to  $\LaTeX$* , 2003.  
 EDMAC and TABMAC are a set of plain  $\TeX$  macros for typesetting critical editions in the traditional way. The *ledmac* package implements the facilities of these macros in  $\LaTeX$ —in particular, marginal line numbering and multiple series of footnotes and endnotes keyed to line numbers. As a new feature the package provides for index entries keyed to both page and line numbers. Multiple series of the familiar numbered footnotes are also available.  
 On CTAN at: [macros/latex/contrib/ledmac/ledmac.pdf](http://www.ctan.org/macros/latex/contrib/ledmac/ledmac.pdf)
- [172] Reinhard Wonneberger and Frank Mittelbach. “ $\text{B}\TeX$  reconsidered”. *TUGboat*, 12(1):111–124, 1991.  
 A discussion of  $\text{B}\TeX$  and several proposals for its enhancement.  
<http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb12-1/tb31wonn.pdf>
- [173] Hermann Zapf. “My collaboration with Don Knuth and my font design work”. *TUGboat*, 22(1/2):26–30, 2001.  
 Zapf’s story of collaboration with Don Knuth and some thoughts on typography.  
<http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb22-1-2/tb70zapf.pdf>
- [174] Justin Ziegler. “Technical report on math font encoding (version 2)”. Technical report,  $\LaTeX$ 3 project, 1994.  
 The ground work for a set of 8-bit math encodings for  $\TeX$ .  
 On CTAN at: [info/1tx3pub/13d007.\\*](http://www.ctan.org/info/1tx3pub/13d007.*)

# Index of Commands and Concepts

This title somewhat hides the fact that everything except the author names is in this one long index. To make it easier to use, the entries are distinguished by their “type” and this is often indicated by one of the the following “type words” at the beginning of the main entry or a sub-entry:

attribute, `BIBTEX` built-in function, `BIBTEX` command, `BIBTEX` entry type, `BIBTEX` field, `BIBTEX` style, boolean, counter, document class, env., env. variable, file, file extension, folio style, font, font encoding, function, key, key/option, key value, keyword, length, option, package, page style, program, rigid length, or syntax.

The absence of an explicit “type word” means that the “type” is either a `LATEX` “command” or simply a “concept”.

Use `by`, or in connection with, a particular package is indicated by adding the package name (in parentheses) to an entry or sub-entry. There is one “virtual” package name, `tlc`, which indicates commands introduced only for illustrative purposes in this book.

When there are several page numbers listed, **bold** face indicates a page containing important information about an entry, such as a definition or basic usage. A **blue** page number indicates that use of the command or concept is demonstrated in an example on that page.

When looking for the position of an entry in the index, you need to realize that, when they come at the start of a command or file extension, both of the characters `\` and `.` are ignored. All symbols come before all letters and everything that starts with the `@` character will appear immediately before `A`.

## Symbols

- ! syntax, 280, 528
  - (array), 244, 246, 247
  - (babel), shorthand character, 554
  - (docstrip), 819
  - (makeindex), 651, 653, 658, 659, 660
- \!, 508
  - (tipa), 406
- " syntax, 345
  - ( $\LaTeX$ ), 761, 769
  - (babel), shorthand character, 551, 552, 553, 574, 657, 662
  - (makeindex), 652, 653, 660
- \", 453, 455, 662
  - (yfonts), 394, 395, 396
- "" syntax (babel), 553
- "' syntax (babel), 552
- "- syntax (babel), 553
- "< syntax (babel), 553
- "= syntax (babel), 553
- "> syntax (babel), 553
- "*letter* syntax
  - (babel), 548, 552, 553, 567, 591
  - (yfonts), 395
- "*8-bit letter* syntax (babel), 567
- "~ syntax (babel), 553
- "` syntax (babel), 552
- "| syntax (babel), 553
- ' syntax, 345
  - ( $\LaTeX$ ), 769
  - (babel), shorthand character, 556, 563, 574
- \', 241, 242, 456, 567
  - (inputenc), 445
  - (tipa), 406
- '*letter* syntax (babel), 555, 556
- ( syntax, 498, 537
  - ( $\LaTeX$ ), 769
  - (delarray), 489
  - (makeindex), 660
- \(, 502
  - error using, 895
  - (ifthen), 877
  - (soul), 89
- ) syntax, 498, 537
  - ( $\LaTeX$ ), 769
  - (delarray), 489
  - (makeindex), 660
- \), 502
  - error using, 895
  - (ifthen), 877
  - (soul), 89
- \* (asterisk) error messages, 894
- \* syntax, 243, 530
  - (array), 250
  - (calc), 197, 250, 871, 872, 873, 876
- \* syntax (*cont.*)
  - (docstrip), 819, 820
  - (hhline), 266, 267
- \\*
  - (doc), 822
  - (tipa), 406
- \* (*letter*) syntax (yfonts), 395
- + syntax, 530
  - (calc), 131, 148–150, 197, 201, 227, 250, 850, 861, 866, 871
  - (docstrip), 820
- \+, error using, 912
- , syntax, 536
  - ( $\LaTeX$ ), 761, 769
  - (tlc), 275
- \,, 114, 126, 507, 508, 525, 691
  - in math, 472, 474, 486, 487, 492, 493, 496
- (hyphen)
  - nonbreaking, 83, 93
- syntax, 83, 530
  - (calc), 250, 867, 869, 870, 871, 872, 873
  - (docstrip), 820
  - (hhline), 266, 267
- \-, 241, 247, 249, 940
  - error using, 912
  - (soul), 88
  - (ulem), 87
- syntax, 83
- syntax, 83, 345
- . syntax, 498, 528
  - (babel), shorthand character, 558
  - (tlc), 275
- \., 456, 567
  - ... (ellipsis)
    - mathematical symbol, 496, 497
    - spacing, 81–83
  - .pybrc.conf file (pybliographic), 784
  - / syntax, 498, 528
    - (calc), 250, 871, 873
    - (docstrip), 819, 820
- \/, 340, 341, 342
  - (soul), 89
- : syntax, 535
  - (arydshln), 267, 268
  - (babel), shorthand character, 554
  - (hhline), 266, 267
- \:, 507, 508, 525
  - (tipa), 406
- :: syntax
  - (arydshln), 268
  - (hhline), 267
  - (yfonts), 395
- ; syntax, 536
  - (arydshln), 268
  - (babel), shorthand character, 554, 591

- \;, 507, 508, 525
  - (tipa), 406
- < syntax, 532
  - (array), 244, 246, 248
  - (babel), shorthand character, 557, 574
  - (ifthen), 873, 875, 876
- \<
  - error using, 895, 912
  - (soul), 90
  - << syntax (babel), 557, 590
  - = syntax, 532
    - (BibTeX), 761, 769
    - (babel), shorthand character, 557, 581
    - (hline), 266, 267
    - (ifthen), 873, 875
  - \=, 241, 456
    - error using, 910
    - (inputenc), 445
    - (tipa), 406
  - =⟨letter⟩ syntax (babel), 557
  - > syntax, 532
    - (array), 244, 245-250, 264
    - (babel), shorthand character, 557, 574
    - (colortbl), 265
    - (ifthen), 875, 876
    - (tabularx), 251, 252
- \>, 241
  - error using, 912
  - (soul), 89, 90
  - >> syntax (babel), 557, 590
  - ? font encoding, 453
  - ? syntax, 528
    - (babel), shorthand character, 554
  - (QED) symbol, 143, 144
  - [ syntax, 498, 537
- \[, 469, 481, 503
  - error using, 895
  - spacing problems before, 481
  - (amsmath), 469
- # syntax, 149
  - in TeX error message, 905, 907, 914
  - (BibTeX), 769, 770, 771
  - (bibtool), 781
  - (hline), 266, 267
- \#, 501, 524, 528
  - ## syntax, 149, 833
  - % syntax (BibTeX), 769
- \%, 528
  - %<...> syntax (docstrip), 819, 820
  - %<<...> syntax (docstrip), 833
  - %% syntax (docstrip), 833
  - & syntax, 242
    - error using, 898, 904, 911
    - (amsmath), 470, 473, 475-478, 486, 487
    - error using, 898
  - & syntax (cont.)
    - (docstrip), 819
- \&, 528
  - error using, 904
  - \$ syntax, 246, 502
- \\$, 456, 527
  - \_ syntax
    - error using, 905
    - (index), 681
- \\_, 457, 528
- \\, 104, 242, 264, 489, 860
  - error using, 911
  - in tabbing, 241, 242
  - in headings, 23, 31
  - problem in tabular, 104
  - (amscd), 488, 489
  - (amsmath), 470, 471, 472-479, 480, 482-488, 492, 493
  - (array), 244, 246, 247
  - (booktabs), 271
  - (delarray), 489
  - (fancyhdr), 225
  - (longtable), 261
  - (soul), 90
  - (supertabular), 256, 257
  - (tabularx), 252
- \\\*, 261
  - (amsmath), 470, 479, 481
  - (longtable), 261
- \⟨language⟩hyphenmins (babel), 579, 586
- ⟨num⟩headlines option (typearea), 205
- \{, 463, 475, 483, 498, 501, 525, 537
  - { syntax
    - (BibTeX), 761, 766-768, 769
    - (makeindex), 660
  - { } syntax, 80, 473, 474, 487, 507
  - (xspace), 81
- \}, 463, 475, 483, 498, 501, 525, 537
  - } syntax
    - (BibTeX), 761, 766-768, 769
    - (makeindex), 660
- \^, 457
  - (tipa), 406
- ^ syntax
  - (babel), shorthand character, 556
  - (index), 681
- ^⟨letter⟩ syntax (babel), 556
- ^| syntax (babel), 556
- ~ (tilde)
  - multilingual aspects, 554
  - nonbreaking space, 550
- \~, 463
  - (tipa), 406

- ~ syntax, [554](#), [943](#)
  - (babel), shorthand character, [574](#)
  - (hline), [266](#), [267](#)
- syntax (babel), [554](#)
- syntax (babel), [554](#)
- syntax (babel), [554](#)
- ~(letter) syntax (babel), [554](#)
- € (euro symbol), [407-412](#)
- \\_u, [80](#)
- \], [469](#), [503](#)
  - error using, [895](#)
  - (amsmath), [469](#)
- ] syntax, [498](#), [537](#)
- \', [241](#), [457](#)
  - (inputenc), [445](#)
  - (textcomp), [365](#)
  - (tipa), [406](#)
- ˆ syntax
  - (babel), shorthand character, [555](#), [574](#)
  - (dvips), [626](#)
- ˆ (letter) syntax (babel), [555](#)
- \|, [498](#), [528](#)
  - (tipa), [406](#)
- | syntax, [243](#), [498](#), [528](#)
  - (array), [244](#), [245-247](#), [249](#), [268](#)
  - (babel), shorthand character, [574](#)
  - (booktabs), [269](#)
  - (docstrip), [819](#)
  - (hline), [266](#), [267](#)
  - (ltxdoc), [834](#)
  - (makeindex), [652](#), [658](#), [660](#)
  - (tabs), [269](#)
  - (tabularx), [251](#), [252](#)
  - (tabulary), [253](#), [254](#)
- | ( syntax (makeindex), [651](#), [652](#), [658](#), [659](#)
- |) syntax (makeindex), [651](#), [652](#), [658](#), [659](#)
- |see syntax (makeindex), [651](#), [653](#)
- || syntax, [243](#)
  - (booktabs), [269](#)
  - (hline), [267](#)
- 10pt option, [198](#), [881](#)
  - (amsmath), [479](#)
- 11pt option, [16](#), [144](#), [198](#), [343](#)
- 12pt option, [198](#)
- 1 syntax (paralist), [133](#), [135](#), [137](#)
- 8859-8 option (inputenc), [578](#)
- 88591lat.csf file (bibtex8), [759](#)
- 8r.enc file, [388](#), [420](#)
- @
  - ~ syntax, [243](#), [246](#), [272](#), [528](#)
    - error using, [905](#)
    - in command names, [18](#), [843](#)
    - (BibTeX), [761](#), [762](#), [764](#)
    - (makeindex), [652](#), [653](#), [658](#), [660](#)
  - \@, [80](#), [696](#)
    - error using, [914](#)
  - @(( syntax (amscd), [488](#)
  - @)) syntax (amscd), [488](#)
  - @. syntax (amscd), [489](#)
  - @<<< syntax (amscd), [488](#)
  - @= syntax (amscd), [488](#), [489](#)
  - @>>> syntax (amscd), [488](#), [489](#)
  - @{ } syntax, [225](#), [247](#), [248](#), [270](#), [272](#)
  - @AAA syntax (amscd), [488](#)
  - \@addtoreset, [14](#), [25](#), [112](#), [217](#), [485](#), [851](#), [852](#), [854](#)
  - \@beginparpenalty, [146](#)
  - \@biblabel, [692](#), [693](#)
    - (natbib), [693](#)
  - \@cite, [692](#)
  - \@dotsep, [51](#)
  - \@dottedtocline, [50](#), [51](#), [52](#), [54](#)
  - \@endparpenalty, [146](#)
  - \@evenfoot, [223](#)
  - \@evenhead, [223](#)
    - @firstcolumn boolean, [875](#)
  - \@float, [308](#)
  - \@gobble, [885](#)
  - \@idxitem, [679](#), [680](#)
    - (doc), [823](#)
  - \@ifpackagelater, [888](#)
  - \@ifpackageloaded, [888](#)
  - \@ifpackagewith, [888](#)
  - \@include, [20](#)
    - @inlabel boolean, [875](#)
  - \@itempenalty, [146](#)
  - \@listi, [144](#)
  - \@listii, [144](#)
  - \@listiii, [144](#)
  - \@makecaption, [307](#), [308](#)
  - \@makefigcaption (tlc), [308](#)
  - \@makefnmark, [113](#)
  - \@makefntext, [113](#), [114](#)
  - \@makeschapterhead, [679](#)
  - \@makewincaption (picinpar), [109](#)
  - \@mkboth, [222](#)
    - @newlist boolean, [875](#)
    - @noskipsec boolean, [875](#)
  - \@oddfoot, [223](#), [892](#)
  - \@oddhead, [223](#)
  - \@pnumwidth rigid length, [51](#), [52](#), [62](#)
  - \@preamble BibTeX command, [771](#), [808](#), [847](#)
    - (bibextract), [777](#)
  - \@ptsize, [198](#), [199](#)
  - \@removefromreset (remreset), [851](#), [852](#)
  - \@secntformat, [26](#), [27](#)
  - \@secpenalty, [42](#), [937](#)
  - \@startsection, [27](#), [28](#), [29-31](#), [32](#), [287](#), [859](#)
    - error using, [914](#)
    - with float barrier, [288](#)



- `\@starttoc`, 54, 55
    - (notoccite), 698
  - `@string` BibTeX command, 769, 770
    - (BibTeXMng), 789
    - (bibextract), 777
    - (bibtool), 781
  - `\@tabacckludge`, 445, 452
  - `\@tempboxa`, 307, 308
  - `@tempswa` boolean, 692, 875
  - `\@thefnmark`, 113, 114
  - `\@tocrmarg`, 51
  - `\@topcaptionfalse` (supertabular), 257
  - `@twocolumn` boolean, 680, 875
  - `@twoside` boolean, 199, 875
  - `@VVV` syntax (amscd), 488, 489
  - `@|` syntax (amscd), 488
- A**
- A syntax (paralist), 133, 135, 137
  - a syntax (paralist), 132, 133, 137
    - problems with, 133
  - `\a'`, 241
  - a0 option (crop), 213
  - a0paper key/option (geometry), 206
  - a0paper option, 196
    - (typearea), 204
  - a1 option (crop), 213
  - a1paper key/option (geometry), 206
  - a2 option (crop), 213
  - a2paper key/option (geometry), 206
  - a3 option (crop), 213
  - a3paper key/option (geometry), 206
  - a4 option (crop), 213
  - a4 package, 199, 202
  - a4dutch package, 202
  - a4paper key/option (geometry), 206
  - a4paper option, 16, 195, 880
    - (typearea), 204
  - a4wide package, 202
  - a5 option (crop), 213, 214
  - a5 package, 202
  - a5comb package, 202
  - a5paper key/option (geometry), 206
  - a5paper option, 195
    - (typearea), 204, 205
  - a6 option (crop), 213
  - a6paper key/option (geometry), 206, 209, 211
  - a6paper option (typearea), 204
  - `\a=`, 241
  - `\a'`, 241
  - abbreviations
    - in bibliographies, 769–771
    - of environments, 468
  - abbrv BibTeX style, 692, 693, 767, 791, 792, 794, 806
    - (bibtopic), 753, 754
    - abbrvnat BibTeX style (natbib), 685, 707, 710, 715, 791
  - `\above`, 494
    - above option (placeins), 289
  - `\abovecaptionskip` length, 307, 308, 312
  - `\abovedisplaysshortskip` length, 480, 481
  - `\abovedisplayskip` length, 479, 480
  - `\aboverulesep` rigid length (booktabs), 270
    - aboveskip key/option (caption), 311, 312, 318, 319
  - `\abovetopsep` rigid length (booktabs), 270
  - `\abovewithdelims`, 494
  - `\abs` (tlc), 500, 501
  - abstract BibTeX field, 762, 791
    - (BibTeXMng), 789
    - (printbib), 776
  - abstract BibTeX style, 791
  - abstract env., 34
  - `\abstractname`, 34
    - (babel), 547
  - acadian option (babel), 543
  - `\accent`, 330, 337, 353, 430, 452, 590
  - accented characters
    - OT1 encoding, 337
    - in command and environment names, 842
    - input encoding, 357, 358, 359–361
    - multilingual documents, 552
  - `\accentedsymbol` (amsxtra), 467
  - accents
    - as superscripts, 467, 495
    - dottier, 494, 495
    - in bibliography database, 768, 769
    - in tables, 241, 242
    - math symbols, 529
  - accents package, 494, 965
  - `\accentset` (accents), 494, 495
  - `\Acite` (babel), 564
  - `\acite` (babel), 564
  - acm BibTeX style, 791
  - `\acro` (tlc), 341
  - Acrobat Distiller program, 643
  - Acrobat Reader program, 78, 642
  - `\active@char`(*char*) (babel), 590
  - activeacute option (babel), 554, 556, 581
  - activegrave option (babel), 555, 581
  - actual keyword (makeindex), 660, 662
  - `\actualchar` (doc), 822
  - `\acute`, 529
  - acute accent ('), shorthand character, 556
  - Ada key value (listings), 170–172
  - `\add` (tlc), 488
    - add.period\$ BibTeX built-in function, 808, 810
  - `\addcontentsline`, 33, 46, 47, 48, 49, 52, 54, 680
    - problems with `\include`, 49
    - (titleref), 77
  - `\adddialect` (babel), 584, 585
  - `\addlanguage`, 584

- `\addlinespace` (booktabs), 271, 272
- `\addpenalty`, 43, 859, 860
  - output produced from, 937
- address BibTeX field, 690, 717, 763, 765, 772, 779
- `\AddThinSpaceBeforeFootnotes` (babel), 565, 566
- `\AddTo` (jurabib), 723, 727, 733, 734, 735
- `\addto` (babel), 74, 589, 734
- `\addtocontents`, 46, 48, 49, 59
  - problems with `\include`, 49
- `\addtocounter`, 24, 852
  - error using, 906, 907
  - (calc), 871
    - error using, 895
- `\addtolength`, 855, 872
  - error using, 907
  - (calc), 871, 872
    - error using, 895
- `\addvspace`, 33, 48, 59, 61, 63, 64, 858, 859, 860
  - error using, 909, 910
  - output produced from, 937
  - adjust option (cite), 695
- `\ADLdrawingmode` (arydshln), 268
- `\advance`, 871
- `\AE`, 345, 457
- `\ae`, 458
  - (tipa), 406
- ae package, 356
- affiliation BibTeX field (BibTeXMng), 789
- afm2tfm program, 979
- afrikaans option (babel), 543, 585
- `\afterpage` (afterpage), 289, 295
- afterpage package, 289
- aftersave key (fancyvrb), 166, 167
- agsm BibTeX style
  - (harvard), 700, 791, 792
  - (natbib), 703-706, 708
- agu BibTeX style
  - (bibentry), 711
  - (natbib), 705, 706
- `\Ahead` (tlc), 45
- `\aleph`, 527
- alg package, 168
- algorithmic package, 168
- `\aliasshorthand` (babel), 548
- align env. (amsmath), 469, 470, 475, 476, 477, 483, 485
  - adjusting with `\minalignsep`, 477
  - error using, 895, 904
  - interrupted, 479
- align\* env. (amsmath), 469, 493, 497
- aligned env. (amsmath), 469, 477, 478, 479, 486, 898
  - adjusting with `\minalignsep`, 479
  - error using, 895, 897
- alignment
  - document headings, 37
- alignment (*cont.*)
  - equations
    - groups with alignment, 475
    - groups without alignment, 474, 475
    - multiple alignments, 475, 476, 477
    - multiple lines, no alignment, 471, 472
    - multiple lines, with alignment, 473, 474
    - on multiple lines, no alignment, 471, 472
    - on multiple lines, with alignment, 473, 474
    - tag placement, 469
  - mathematical typesetting, 505, 506, 507
  - tables
    - decimal data, 272, 274, 275, 276
    - horizontal, 261
    - vertical, 246, 273, 274
  - tables of contents, 60, 61, 62
- all key value
  - (fancyvrb), 158
  - (jurabib), 720, 721, 722, 723, 724, 734, 735
- `\allcaps` (tlc), 91, 92
- `\allinethickness`
  - (eepicemu), 611
  - (eepic), 609
- `\allletters` (tlc), 387
- `\allowdisplaybreaks` (amsmath), 468, 481
- `\allowhyphens` (babel), 590, 591
  - allowmove option (url), 94
- allreversed key value (jurabib), 723, 738
- alltt env. (alltt), 152
- alltt package, 152
- Almost European fonts, 356
- almostfull option (textcomp), 364
- Alph folio style, 216
- `\Alph`, 25, 33, 129, 130, 133, 852, 853
  - error using, 897
  - (babel), 559, 560
- `\alph`, 130, 133, 852, 853
  - error using, 897
  - (babel), 559, 560
  - (perpage), 121
- alph folio style, 216
- `\alpha`, 392, 490, 501, 527
  - alpha BibTeX style, 791, 792, 795, 806, 807, 810
  - key construction, 764, 768
  - (biblist), 775
- alphabet identifiers, 348, 349-351
- alphabetical document headings, 25
- `\Alphfinal` (babel), 560
  - alpine option (ifsym), 405
- `\AlsoImplementation` (doc), 817, 820, 836
- `\alsoname` (babel), 547
- altDescription env. (tlc), 149, 850
- `\AltMacroFont` (doc), 823
- alwaysadjust option (paralist), 135, 136

- `\amalg`, 530
  - (`mathptmx`), unavailable with, 377
- american option (`babel`), 543
- American Mathematical Society (AMS), 467, 468
- AMS (American Mathematical Society), 467, 468
- `amsalpha`  $\text{\LaTeX}$  style, 791
- `amsart` document class, 467, 701, 964
- `amsbook` document class, 467, 701, 964
- `amscd` package, 467, 488, 489
- `amsfonts` package, 383, 385, 386, 467, 509
  - providing `latexsym` symbols, 464
- $\mathcal{AMS}\text{-}\text{\LaTeX}$ 
  - accents as superscripts, 467
  - commutative diagrams, generating, 467
  - cross-reference numbers, 467
  - document classes, 467
  - documentation, 467
  - environment abbreviations, 468
  - fonts, 467, 468
  - fragile commands, 468
  - package options, 466
  - proof environment, 143, 144
  - sub-packages, 466, 467
  - text fragments, typesetting, 467
  - theorem-like structures, 138–144, 467
- `amsmath` package, 83, 138, 465–488, 489, 490–508, 524, 535, 964
  - error using, 889
  - vs. standard  $\text{\LaTeX}$ , 470, 471
- `amsmath.dtx` file (`amsmath`), 471, 484
- `amsopn` package, 466
- `amsplain`  $\text{\LaTeX}$  style, 791
- `amsproc` document class, 467, 964
- `amsrefs` package, 968
- `amssymb` package, 383, 385, 386, 392, 467, 509, 511, 524–537
  - providing `latexsym` symbols, 464
- `amssymb.sty` file (`amssymb`), 529
- $\mathcal{MS}\text{-}\text{\TeX}$ , 465, 466
- `amstext` package, 467
- `amsthm` package, 138–144, 467, 964
- `amsxport` package, 968
- `amsxtra` package, 467, 495
- `\anchor` (`dingbat`), 401
- `\and` (`ifthen`), 877
  - and key value (`jurabib`), 718
  - and keyword ( $\text{\LaTeX}$ ), 767
- `\andname` (`jurabib`), 736
- `andothers` keyword ( $\text{\LaTeX}$ ), 768
- `\angle` (`amssymb`), 528
- `angle` key (`graphicx`), 619, 622, 623
  - error using, 898
- `angle` option (`natbib`), 706
- `annotate`  $\text{\LaTeX}$  field, 810, 811
- `annotate`  $\text{\LaTeX}$  style, 791, 810, 811
  - annotating bibliographies, 721, 740, 741, 742
  - annotation  $\text{\LaTeX}$  style, 791, 810
  - `annotatorfirstsep` key/option (`jurabib`), 717, 723, 724
  - `annotatorformat` key/option (`jurabib`), 717, 733
  - `annotate`  $\text{\LaTeX}$  field, 765, 791, 810
    - (`custom-bib`), 802
    - (`jurabib`), 740, 742
  - `annotate`  $\text{\LaTeX}$  style, 765
  - `annotate` key/option (`jurabib`), 740, 741, 742
  - `ansinew` option (`inputenc`), 360, 669
- `\answer` (`tlc`), 828
- `ante` key (`lettrine`), 101
- `any` keyword (`makeindex`), 657
- `apa`  $\text{\LaTeX}$  style, 791
- `\Apageref` (`babel`), 563
- `\apageref` (`babel`), 563
- `apalike`  $\text{\LaTeX}$  style (`apalike`), 791, 792
- `apalike` package, 692, 791
- `apalike2`  $\text{\LaTeX}$  style (`apalike`), 791
- `\Appendix` (`tlc`), 32, 33
- `\appendix`, 22, 32
  - (`tlc`), 33
- `\appendixname`, 33, 34, 38
  - (`babel`), 547
- `applemac` option (`inputenc`), 360
- `\approx`, 532
- `\approxseq` (`amssymb`), 532
- `apy` key (`jurabib`), 718
- `\arabic`, 25, 26, 130, 133, 417, 849, 851, 852, 853, 854
- `arabic folio` style, 216
- Arabic language, 591
- Arabic numbers, document headings, 25
- `\arc`
  - (`curves`), 611
  - (`eepicemu`), 611
  - (`eepic`), 610
- `\arccos`, 500
- `\arcctg` (`babel`), 564
- `\arch` (`babel`), 564
  - arcs, drawing, 610
- `\arcsin`, 500
- `\arctan`, 500
- `\arctg` (`babel`), 564
- `\Aref` (`babel`), 563
- `\aref` (`babel`), 563
- `\arg`, 500
- `arg_close` keyword (`makeindex`), 660
- `arg_open` keyword (`makeindex`), 660
- arguments, *see also* keys
  - optional, 845, 850
  - restrictions, 845, 846, 894
  - typed text in, 165, 166, 167, 168
  - unavailable, 848
- arithmetic calculations (`calc`), 871, 872
- `ark10.mf` file (`dingbat`), 400

- Armenian language, 592
- array env., 104, **240**, **242**, 243, 247, 277, 470, 485–487, **489**, 490, 863
  - error using, 901, 904, 905
  - style parameters, 243
  - (array), 246–248, 273, 274
  - (delarray), **489**
  - (tabs), 269
- array package, **243–251**, **280–282**, 489
  - combined with arydshn, 267
  - combined with booktabs, 270
  - combined with color, 264
  - combined with supertabular, 256
  - incompatible with tabs, 269
- \arraybackslash
  - (array), **247**, **249**
  - (tabularx), **251**, 252
- \arraycolsep rigid length, 243, 247
  - (amsmath), 487
- \arraylinesep rigid length (tabs), 269
- \arrayrulecolor (colortbl), **265**
- \arrayrulewidth rigid length, **243**, **250**, **266**, **267**
  - (hline), 267
- arrays, delimiters surrounding, **489**
- \arraystretch, **243**, 244, **267**, **268**, 269
- arrow extensions, math symbols, **535**
- \arrowlength (pspicture), 640, **641**
- \Arrownot (stmaryrd), 535
- \arrownot (stmaryrd), **533**, 535
- arrows env. (t1c), **181**
- arrows, math symbols
  - decorated, **490**
  - extensions, **535**
  - negated, **534**
  - standard, **534**
- \Arrowvert, 498, 528
- \arrowvert, 498, 528
- art11.clo file, 16
- article L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X entry type, **690**, **763**, **770**
  - (jurabib), 719
- article document class, **6**, 13, 115, 120, 147, 195, **223**, 467, 679, 774
  - footnote numbering, 112
  - heading commands, 22, 23, 25, 51
  - replacement for, 236, 237
- arydshn package, 267, 268
- \Asbuk (babel), 559
- \asbuk (babel), 559
  - ascii option (inputenc), **360**, 925
- \Ask (docstrip), **827**, **828**
- \askforoverwritefalse (docstrip), 828
- \askforoverwritetrue (docstrip), 828
- askinclude package, 19
- \askonceonly (docstrip), 828
- \AskOptions (optional), 21
- asparadesc env. (paralist), **136**, 138
- asparaenum env. (paralist), **133**
- asparaitem env. (paralist), 135
- \ast, **495**, **530**
- asterisk (\*) error messages, 894
- astron L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X style, 791
- asymmetric key/option (geometry), 208, **209**
- asymmetrical page layout, 208, 209
- \asympt, 532
- \AtBeginDelayedFloats (endfloat), 290
- \AtBeginDocument, 422, **835**, **836**, **879**, **883**, 884
- \AtBeginFigures (endfloat), 290
- \AtBeginTables (endfloat), 290
- \AtEndDocument, 216, **836**, **879**, **883**
- \AtEndOfClass, **879**, **883**, **886**, 887
- \AtEndOfPackage, 879, 883
- \AtForty (marvosym), **401**
- \athnum
  - (athnum), **562**
  - (babel), 562
- \atop, 494
- \atopwithdelims, 494
- australian option (babel), 543
- austrian option (babel), 543, 546, 734
- \author, warning using, 925
- author L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X field, **690**, 732, **763–765**, **766–769**, **772**
  - (jurabib), **717**, 718
- author index, generating, 681
- author-date citations, 698–711, *see also* citation systems
  - author information missing, **708**
  - author list only with first citation, **704**, **705**
  - author-number, switching to, 714
  - authors on single line, 706
  - customizing, bibliography, **707**
  - customizing, citations, **705**, **706**
  - definition, 684
  - electronic publications, 710
  - forcing, 708, **709**
  - full citations in running text, 710, **711**
  - history of, **699–983**
  - indexing citations automatically, 709
  - multiple citations, 703, **704**
  - number-only, switching to, 714
  - short-title format, combining, 732, **733**
  - styles supported, 710
  - year information missing, 708
- author-number citations, 712, *see also* citation systems
  - compressing citations, **714**
  - customizing citations, **715**
  - definition, 685
  - description, 712
  - sort order, **714**
- authordate1 L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X style (authordate1-4), 700, **791**
- authordate1-4 package, 700, **791**
- authordate2 L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X style (authordate1-4), **700**, **791**

- authordate3 BibTeX style (authordate1-4), 700, 791
  - authordate4 BibTeX style (authordate1-4), 700, 791
  - authorformat key/option (jurabib), 718, 719, 720, 724, 729, 730, 732, 733, 735–737, 738
  - authors, bibliographies
    - gender, 734, 735, 742
    - information field, 743
    - information missing, 708
    - list on single line, 706
    - list only with first citation, 704, 705
    - list separator, 736, 738
  - authoryear option (natbib), 708, 709, 714
  - auto key value (fancyvrb), 159, 164
  - auto-completion, page layout, 206, 207, 208, 209, 210, 211
  - autodotlist env. (pifont), 380
  - automatic indexing, disabling
    - doc package, 817
    - ltxdoc class, 836
  - .aux file extension, 7, 8, 18, 19, 130, 687–689, 691, 745, 746, 793
    - (BibTeX), 758, 793
    - (aux2bib), 775
    - (bib2html), 776
    - (bibtopic), 754
    - (chapterbib), 747
    - (citetags), 778
    - (footmisc), 116
    - (index), 681
    - (longtable), 259
    - (mparhack), 127
    - (multibib), 756
    - (perpage), 121
  - aux2bib program, 775, 787
  - auxiliary files, 7, 8
  - avant package, 371, 373
  - Avant Garde Gothic font, 374
  - awk program, 775, 778
  - \Az (babel), 563
  - \az (babel), 563
- B**
- \b, 452, 458
  - b syntax
    - (array), 244, 245
    - (delarray), 489
    - (hline), 266, 267
  - b0 option (crop), 213
  - b0paper key/option (geometry), 206
  - b1 option (crop), 213
  - b1paper key/option (geometry), 206
  - b2 option (crop), 213
  - b2paper key/option (geometry), 206
  - b3 option (crop), 213
  - b3paper key/option (geometry), 206
  - b4 option (crop), 213
  - b4paper key/option (geometry), 206
  - b5 option (crop), 213
  - b5paper key/option (geometry), 206
  - b5paper option, 195
    - (typearea), 204
  - b6 option (crop), 213
  - b6paper key/option (geometry), 206
  - b6paper option (typearea), 204
  - ba package, 521
  - babel package, 539, 541, 542–591, 701, 733, 749, 915
    - description, 542
    - error using, 889, 903, 906, 911, 914, 915
    - hyphenation in multiple languages, 580, 581
    - language definition files
      - adding definitions to, 589
      - copyright information, 582
      - definition, 579
      - documentation driver, 583
      - documentation initialization, 583
      - hyphenation patterns, adjusting, 586
      - language identification, 582
      - languages and dialects, defining, 584, 585
      - license information, 582
      - punctuation, special cases, 591
      - release information, 583
      - shorthands, 589–591
      - structure, 582–591
      - translating language-dependent strings, 586
    - language options, 543
    - language-dependent strings, 547, 549–551, 579, 586
    - package file, 581
    - user interface, 543–578
    - warning using, 931
  - babel package, language options
    - encoding languages and fonts, 567, 577
      - OT1, 566
      - T1, 566
      - T2A, 571
      - T2B, 573
      - T2C, 573
    - language-specific commands, 558–564
    - layout considerations, 564–566
    - shorthands, 550–558
    - translations, 550, 551
  - babel.def file (babel), 579
  - babel.sty file (babel), 581
  - back reference information, bibliographies, 742
  - \backepsilon (amssymb), 535
  - background fill, 157, 158
  - \backmatter, 22
  - \backprime (amssymb), 528
    - backref option (hyperref), 78
  - \backsim (amssymb), 532
  - \backsimeq (amssymb), 532
  - \backslashash, 498, 528

- backward compatibility, 463, 464
- badness rating, line breaks, 859
- bahasa option (babel), 543
- balancing columns, [187](#)
- balancingshow option (multicol), 188
- `\alpha` (tlc), 512
- bang package, 592
- `\bar`, 529
  - (bar), [612](#), [613](#)
- bar package, 612
- bar charts, 612, [613](#)
- barenv env. (bar), [612](#), [613](#)
- `\baro` (stmaryrd), 530
- `\barwedge` (amssymb), 530
- `\BaseDirectory` (docstrip), [831](#), [832](#), 914
- baseline key (fancyvrb), [164](#)
- `\baselineskip` length, [106](#), [107](#), [108](#), [197](#), [198](#), 234, [857](#), [866](#), 936, [937](#), 938
  - adjusting the leading, 373
  - (ccfonts), 384
  - (geometry), 207
  - (typearea), 204
  - (yfonts), 395
- `\baselinestretch`, 107, 108
  - (setspace), 107
- `\baselinestretch` key (fancyvrb), [159](#)
- basicstyle key (listings), 170
- Baskerville font in math and text, [520](#)
- basque option (babel), 543
- `\batchinput` (docstrip), 829
- `\batchmode`, 944
- bb key (graphicx), [618](#), 619, 620, [621](#)
- `\Bbbk` (amssymb), 527
- bbding package, 403
- .bbl file extension, [8](#), 688, 689, 745, 746, 793
  - (BibTeXMng), 789
  - (BibTeX), 746, 771, 793, 806, 808, 809
  - (bibentry), 711
  - (chapterbib), 749
  - (jurabib), 726
- `\bbl@activate` (babel), [589](#), [590](#)
- `\bbl@activate<char>` (babel), 590
- `\bbl@allowhyphens` (babel), 590
- `\bbl@deactivate` (babel), [589](#), [590](#)
- `\bbl@declare@ttribute` (babel), [585](#)
- bbllx key (graphicx), 619
- bbllly key (graphicx), 619
- bblopts.cfg file (babel), 581
- bbs BibTeX style, 791
- `\bbslash` (stmaryrd), 530
- bburx key (graphicx), 619
- bbury key (graphicx), 619
- Bcenter env. (fancybox), [599](#), [600](#)
- `\bcline` (tlc), [265](#)
- BCOR<val> option (typearea), 205
- Bdescription env. (fancybox), 600
- `\because` (amssymb), 535
- `\begin`, error using, 895, 896, 899
- `\beginngroup`, 504, 896, 898, 917, 921
  - error using, 899, 906
- below option (placeins), 58, [289](#)
- `\belowbottomsep` rigid length (booktabs), 270
- `\belowcaptionskip` length, [307](#), [308](#), 312
- `\belowdisplayskip` length, [480](#)
- `\belowdisplayskip` length, [479](#), [480](#)
- `\belowrulesep` rigid length (booktabs), 270
- belowskip key/option (caption), 312
- Benumerate env. (fancybox), 600
- Beqnarray env. (fancybox), [600](#)
- Beqnarray\* env. (fancybox), 600
- `\beta`, 527
  - (fourier), [392](#), [393](#)
- `\beth` (amssymb), 527
- beton package, [384](#), 397
- `\between` (amssymb), 535
- Bézier curves, *see* epic package; eepic package
- `\bf`, [328](#), [347](#)
  - used in math, 349, 464
  - (custom-bib), 803
- bf key value
  - (caption), [301](#), [306](#), [310](#), [311](#), [313](#), [324](#)
  - (subfig), [316](#)
- bf option (titlesec), [37](#)
- `\bfdefault`, [346](#), [347](#), [438](#)
- bftemize env. (tlc), [345](#)
- Bflushleft env. (fancybox), [599](#), [600](#)
- Bflushright env. (fancybox), [599](#), [600](#)
- `\bfseries`, [340](#), [343](#), [344](#), [345](#), [346](#), [347](#), [848](#)
  - used in math, 348, 350
  - (ulem), replaced by `\uwave`, 87
- bfseries env., [338](#)
- `\bga` (tlc), [468](#)
- `\bgroup`, 921
- `\bhline` (tlc), [265](#)
- .bib file extension, [8](#), 688, 689
  - (BibTeX), 762, 764, 766, 769, 770, 773, 776, 806, 809
  - `\cite` in, [773](#)
  - (aux2bib), 775
  - (bibextract), 778
  - (bibtool), 782
  - string expansion, [781](#)
  - (bibulus), 760
  - (citefind), 778
  - (makebib), 776
  - (multibib), 755
  - bib.html file (bib2html), 776
  - bib2html program, [776](#), [783](#)
  - `\bibAnnotePath` (jurabib), [741](#)
  - `\bibansep` (jurabib), [738](#)
  - `\bibapifont` (jurabib), [737](#)

- `\bibatsep` (jurabib), [738](#)
- `\bibauthormultiple` (jurabib), [740](#)
- `\bibbdsep` (jurabib), [738](#)
- `\bibbfsasep` (jurabib), [738](#)
- `\bibbfsesep` (jurabib), [738](#)
- `\bibbstasep` (jurabib), [738](#)
- `\bibbstesep` (jurabib), [738](#)
- `\bibbtasep` (jurabib), [738](#)
- `\bibbtasesep` (jurabib), [738](#)
- `\bibbtfont` (jurabib), [737](#)
  - bibclean program, [777](#), [778](#), [789](#), [964](#)
- `\bibcolumnsep` (jurabib), [739](#)
- `\bibdata`, [689](#)
  - (chapterbib), [747](#)
- `\bibeansp` (jurabib), [738](#)
- `\bibbefnfont` (jurabib), [737](#)
- `\bibbelnfont` (jurabib), [737](#)
- `\bibentry` (bibentry), [711](#)
  - bibentry key value (jurabib), [738](#)
  - bibentry package, [710](#), [711](#)
  - bibextract program, [777](#), [778](#)
- `\bibfnfont` (jurabib), [737](#)
- `\bibfont` (natbib), [707](#), [715](#)
  - bibformat key/option (jurabib), [735](#), [738](#), [739](#), [740](#), [797](#)
- `\bibgerman` (jurabib), [734](#)
- `\bibhang` rigid length (natbib), [707](#), [715](#)
  - problem using, [715](#)
- `\bibidemPfname` (jurabib), [735](#)
- `\bibidemPfname` (jurabib), [735](#)
- `\bibidemPmname` (jurabib), [735](#)
- `\bibidemPmname` (jurabib), [735](#)
- `\bibidemPnname` (jurabib), [735](#)
- `\bibidemPnname` (jurabib), [735](#)
- `\bibidemPnname` (jurabib), [735](#)
- `\bibidemPnname` (jurabib), [735](#)
- `\bibidemSfname` (jurabib), [735](#)
- `\bibidemSfname` (jurabib), [735](#)
- `\bibidemSmname` (jurabib), [735](#), [740](#)
- `\bibidemSmname` (jurabib), [735](#)
- `\bibidemSname` (jurabib), [735](#)
- `\bibidemSname` (jurabib), [735](#)
- `\bibindent` rigid length, [693](#)
- `\bibitem`, [686](#), [687](#), [691](#), [693](#), [698](#), [699](#), [745](#), [918](#)
  - error using, [894](#)
  - warning using, [928](#)
  - (BIBTEX), [764](#), [806](#)
  - (bibentry), [711](#)
  - (chicago), [699](#)
  - (harvard), [700](#)
  - (jurabib), [699](#), [716](#), [742](#)
  - (natbib), [701](#), [702](#), [709](#), [714](#)
  - (showkeys), [68](#)
- `\bibjtfont` (jurabib), [737](#)
- `\bibjtsep` (jurabib), [738](#)
  - BibKeeper program, [789](#)
  - bibkey program, [775](#)
  - biblabel option (cite), [697](#)
- `\bibleftcolumn` (jurabib), [739](#)
- `\bibleftcolumnadjust` (jurabib), [739](#)
  - biblikecite key/option (jurabib), [737](#)
  - bibliographies, *see also* BIBTEX; citations; database format, bibliographies; database management tools, bibliographies
    - BIBTEX variants, [758](#)–[761](#)
    - annotating, [721](#), [740](#), [741](#), [742](#)
    - author-date citations, [707](#)
    - authors
      - gender, [734](#), [735](#), [742](#)
      - information field, [743](#)
      - information missing, [708](#)
      - list on single line, [706](#)
      - list only with first citation, [704](#), [705](#)
      - list separator, [736](#), [738](#)
      - name, formatting, [798](#)–[983](#)
    - back reference information, [742](#)
    - citation input file, creating, [687](#)–[689](#)
    - citations
      - author-date, [707](#)
      - footnotes, [726](#), [727](#), [728](#)
      - in captions, [697](#)
      - in headings, [697](#)
      - indexing automatically, [709](#), [720](#), [721](#)
    - citations, sort order
      - author-number citation system, [714](#)
      - number-only citation systems, [693](#), [694](#), [695](#), [714](#)
      - short-title citation system, [743](#)
    - collections, [742](#)
    - color, [695](#)
    - column layout, [739](#)
    - compressing citations, [714](#)
    - configuration files, external, [741](#)
    - cross-references, [732](#)
    - customizing
      - author-date citation system, [707](#)
      - short-title citation system, [736](#), [737](#), [738](#), [739](#)–[741](#)
    - Cyrillic alphabet, [573](#)
    - database format, [761](#)–[773](#)
    - database management tools, [774](#)–[789](#)
    - description, [757](#), [758](#)
    - dissertation year, [742](#)
    - DOI, [710](#)
    - edition information, [742](#)
    - editor information, [742](#)
    - EID, [710](#)
    - electronic publications, [710](#)
    - endnote citations, [726](#), [727](#), [728](#)
    - fonts, [736](#), [737](#)
    - footnote citations, [726](#), [727](#), [728](#)
    - founder information, [742](#)
    - gender information, [734](#), [735](#), [742](#)
    - in tables of contents, [48](#)

bibliographies (*cont.*)

- indentation, 738, [739](#)
- input file, creating, 687–689
- Internet resources, 773, 774
- ISBN, 710
- ISSN, 710
- keywords, associating with database entries, 689
- last update field, 743
- law support, 743, [744](#), 745
- line breaks, 694
- multi-language support, 733, [734](#), 735
- multiple
  - bibtopic package, 753, [754](#), [755](#)
  - bibunits package, 749, [750–752](#), 753
  - by arbitrary unit, 749, [750–752](#), 753
  - by chapter, 747, [748](#), [749](#)
  - by topic, separate citation commands, 755, [756](#)
  - by topic, separate database files, 753, [754](#), [755](#)
  - chapterbib package, 747, [748](#), [749](#)
  - citation systems, 745–756
  - description, 745, 746
  - multibib package, 755, [756](#)
  - package comparisons, 746
  - per included file, 747, [748](#), [749](#)
- online resources, 773, 774
- page boundaries, ignoring, 729
- page total field, 743
- parentheses
  - number-only citation systems, [695](#)
  - short-title citation system, 735
- pre-notes, [721](#)
- programs
  - `BIBTeX++`, 760
  - `BIBTeX8`, 759
  - 8-bit version, 759
  - `bibulus`, 760
  - Java version, 760
  - `MBIBTeX`, 761
  - multilingual version, 761
  - perl version, 760
  - XML aware, 760
- punctuation
  - number-only citation systems, 694, [696](#), [697](#)
  - short-title citation system, [738](#)
- short-title citations, 736, [737](#), 738, [739–741](#)
- sort order
  - author-number citation system, [714](#)
  - number-only citation systems, [693](#), [694](#), 695, 714
  - short-title citation system, 743
- style files
  - citation scheme, selecting, 800, 801
  - creating, 798–804
  - description, 790
  - editing, 805–812
  - extensions supported, determining, 802, 803

bibliographies (*cont.*)

- fields, adding new, 810, 811
- formatting, specifying, 803, 804
- initializing the system, 799, 800
- list of, 791–793
- modifying, 805–812
- multi-language support, adding, 811, 812
- style language, 805–812
- style language
  - blanks, 805
  - built-in functions, 805, 807, 808
  - case changes, disabling, 809, 810
  - commands, 805, 807, 808
  - comment character, 761
  - entry variables, 805
  - field variables, 805
  - fields, adding new, 810, 811
  - global variables, 805
  - multi-language support, adding, 811, 812
  - process flow, 806–809
  - sort order, 806
  - style files, 805–812
  - variables, types of, 805
- titles
  - formats, [719](#), [720](#)
  - information field, 743
  - mapping short to full, 721, [722](#), [723](#)
- translated works, 742, 743
- URLs, 710, 742, 743
- volume title, 743
- year information missing, 708
- `\bibliography`, [685](#), [688](#), 689, [692](#), [693](#), 745, 770, [778](#)
  - as used in the examples, 691
  - (bibentry), 711
  - (biblist), 774, [775](#)
  - (bibtopic), 753
  - (bibunits), 750, [751](#)
  - (chapterbib), 747, [748](#), 749
  - (jurabib), [723](#), [726](#)
  - (multibib), [756](#)
  - (natbib), 709
- bibliography database files, 8
- bibliography input file, creating (`BIBTeX`), 687–689
- bibliography keywords, associating with database entries, 689
- bibliography style files, 8
- `\bibliography*` (bibunits), [751](#), [752](#)
- `\bibliography<type>` (multibib), 755
- `\bibliographylatex` (tlc), [756](#)
- `\bibliographystyle`, [688](#), 745, [778](#), 793
  - (biblist), 774, [775](#)
  - (bibtopic), [755](#)
  - (bibunits), 750, [751](#)
  - (chapterbib), 747, [748](#)
  - (jurabib), [717–721](#), [723–741](#)



- `\bibliographystyle` (*cont.*)
  - (multibib), [756](#)
  - (natbib), 705, 714
- `\bibliographystyle*` (bibunits), 751, [752](#)
- `\bibliographystyle`(*type*) (multibib), 756
- `\bibliographystylelatex` (tlc), [756](#)
- `\bibliographyunit` (bibunits), 751, [752](#)
  - biblist package, 774, 775
- `\biblfont` (jurabib), [737](#)
- `\bibname`, 34, 748, 749
  - (babel), 547, [585](#)
  - (chapterbib), [749](#)
- `\bibnotcited` (jurabib), [723](#)
- `\bibnumfmt` (natbib), [715](#)
- `\bibpreamble` (natbib), [707](#), 715
- `\bibpunct` (natbib), [706](#), 714
- `\bibrightcolumn` (jurabib), [739](#)
- `\bibrightcolumnadjust` (jurabib), [739](#)
- `\bibs`(*language*) (jurabib), 733
- `\bibsall` (jurabib), 733, 734
- `\bibsection` (natbib), [707](#), 715
- `\bibsenglish` (jurabib), [734](#), [735](#)
- `\bibsep` length (natbib), [707](#), [715](#)
- `\bibsgerman` (jurabib), 734
- `\bibstyle`, [689](#)
  - (chapterbib), 747
- `\bibstyle@`(*style*) (natbib), [706](#)
  - LaTeX program, 761–773, 790–812
    - Cyrillic alphabet, 573
    - multilingual documents, 573
  - LaTeX++ program, 760
  - bibtex8 program, 759
  - BibTeXMng program, 789
- `\bibtfont` (jurabib), [737](#)
  - bibtool program, xxvi, [778–783](#), 787, 789, 978
  - bibtopic package, 746, 753–755
    - compatibility matrix, 746
- `\bibtotalpagesname` (jurabib), 743
  - bibulus program, 760
  - bibulus.dtd file (bibulus), 760
  - bibunit env. (bibunits), [750](#), [751](#), [752](#)
    - compatibility matrix, 746
    - incompatible with bibtopic, 754
- `\Bicycle` (marvosym), [401](#)
- `\Big`, [489](#), [504](#)
  - error using, 905
- `\big`, 504
  - error using, 905
  - big option (titlesec), 37
  - big-g delimiters, [504](#)
- `\bigbox` (stmaryrd), 536
- `\bigcap`, 536
- `\bigcirc`, 531
- `\bigcup`, [475](#), 536
- `\bigcurlyvee` (stmaryrd), 536
- `\bigcurlywedge` (stmaryrd), 536
  - bigfoot package, 117, 122
- `\Bigg`, 504
  - error using, 905
- `\bigg`, 504
  - error using, 905
- `\Biggl`, [483](#), [504](#), [511](#)
  - error using, 905
- `\biggl`, [472](#), [474](#), [504](#), [510](#), [511](#)
  - error using, 905
- `\Biggm`, 504
  - error using, 905
- `\biggm`, 504
  - error using, 905
- `\Biggr`, [483](#), [504](#), [511](#)
  - error using, 905
- `\biggr`, [472](#), [474](#), [504](#), [510](#), [511](#)
  - error using, 905
- `\biginterleave` (stmaryrd), 536
- `\Bigl`, [504](#), [511](#), [526](#)
  - error using, 905
- `\bigl`, [504](#), [511](#)
  - error using, 905
- `\Bigm`, 504
  - error using, 905
- `\bigm`, 504
  - error using, 905
- `\bignplus` (stmaryrd), 536
- `\bigodot`, 536
- `\bigoplus`, 491, 536
- `\bigotimes`, 491, 536
- `\bigparallel` (stmaryrd), 536
- `\Bigr`, [504](#), [511](#), [526](#)
  - error using, 905
- `\bigr`, [504](#), [511](#)
  - error using, 905
- `\bigskip`, 857
- `\bigskipamount` length, 261, [857](#)
- `\bigsqcap` (stmaryrd), 536
- `\bigsqcup`, 536
- `\bigstar` (amssymb), 528
- `\bigstrutjot` rigid length (multirow), 273
- `\bigtriangledown`, 530, 536
  - (stmaryrd), 536
- `\bigtriangleup`, 530, 536
  - (stmaryrd), 536
- `\biguplus`, 536
- `\bigvee`, 536
- `\bigwedge`, 536
- `\binampersand` (stmaryrd), 537
  - binary operator symbols, 529
  - bind option (tlc), 886, 887
  - binding, and the inner margin, 207
  - bindingoffset key/option (geometry), [207](#), [209](#)

- `\bindnasrepma` (stmaryrd), 537
- `\binom` (amsmath), 390, 391, 493, 494
- `Bitemize` env. (fancybox), 600
- Bitstream Charter font, 374
  - in math and text, 520
- Bjarne option (fncychap), 34
- `bk11.clo` file, 16
- Blackboard Bold alphabet, 378, 509, 519
- `\blacklozenge` (amssymb), 528
- `\blacksquare` (amssymb), 528
- `\blacktriangle` (amssymb), 528
- `\blacktriangledown` (amssymb), 528
- `\blacktriangleleft` (amssymb), 533
- `\blacktriangleright` (amssymb), 533
- BLANK PAGE on generated pages, 236
- blanks
  - bibliography styles, 805
  - displaying, 160, 161
  - indexes, 650, 655, 666, 669
- .blg file extension, 8
  - ( $\LaTeX$ ), 688
- block key (titlesec), 38, 39, 40, 41, 43, 44
- `\bluefbox` (tlc), 617
- `\bm` (bm), 352, 377, 378, 504, 510, 511, 512, 513
- bm package, 510–513
  - error using, 912
  - problems with fourier, 393
  - problems with mathptmx, 377
- `bmargin` key/option (geometry), 208
- `Bmatrix` env. (amsmath), 486
- `bmatrix` env. (amsmath), 486
- `\bmdefine` (bm), 510, 511, 512
- `\bmod`, 492, 493
- `\bneg` (tlc), 528
- body key/option (geometry), 211
- body area, 207
- body font, 338, 339
- bold fonts
  - description, 334
  - in formulas, 510–512, 513
- `\boldmath`, 352, 511
  - (bm), 513
  - (fourier), 393
  - (mathpazo), 378
  - (mathptmx), 377
- `boldsans` option (ccfonts), 384, 515
- `\boldsymbol` (amsmath), 510
- book  $\LaTeX$  entry type, 690, 717, 763, 772
  - (jurabib), 743
- book document class, 6, 13, 22, 115, 120, 195, 216, 223, 467, 679
  - footnote numbering, 112
  - heading commands, 22, 23, 51
  - replacement for, 236, 237
- `booklet`  $\LaTeX$  entry type, 763
  - bookman package, 205, 371
  - Bookman font, 374
  - books, *see* documents
  - booktabs package, 269–272
  - `booktitle`  $\LaTeX$  field, 690, 737, 742, 763, 765, 772
  - `booktitleaddon`  $\LaTeX$  field (jurabib), 742
- `\boolean` (ifthen), 199, 680, 692, 875, 886
- borders, *see* boxes; frames
- `\born` (tlc), 367
- `\bot`, 528
- `\botfigrule`, 285
- `\bothIfFirst` (caption), 313
- `\bothIfSecond` (caption), 313, 314
- `\botmark`, 218, 221
- `\botrule` (booktabs), 270
  - bottom key value
    - (caption), 312
    - (subfig), 317, 318
  - bottom key/option (geometry), 208
  - bottom option (footmisc), 120
- `\bottomfraction`, 284, 286, 287
  - bottomline key value (fancyvrb), 158, 159
  - bottom number counter, 284
- `\bottomrule` (booktabs), 270, 272
- `\bottomtitlespace` (titlesec), 40
- `\bottoncaption` (supertabular), 257
  - bounding box comments, 615
- `\bowtie`, 535
- `\Box` (latexsym), 464
- `\boxast` (stmaryrd), 530
- `\boxbar` (stmaryrd), 530
- `\boxbox` (stmaryrd), 530
- `\boxbslash` (stmaryrd), 530
- `\boxcircle` (stmaryrd), 530
- `\boxdot` (amssymb), 530
- `\boxed` (amsmath), 491
  - boxed key
    - (float), 292, 293, 294, 309, 311
    - (rotfloat), 298
  - boxedminipage env.
    - (boxedminipage), 595, 869
    - (tlc), 870
  - boxedminipage package, 595
- `\boxempty` (stmaryrd), 530
- boxes, *see also* frames; lines (graphic)
  - color, troubleshooting, 870
  - description, 860
  - displaying contents, 943
  - double border, 597
  - LR boxes, 860–862
  - manipulating, 868–870
  - math symbols, 530
  - named, creating, 868, 869, 870
  - ornamental, 596–600
  - oval, 596

- boxes (*cont.*)
    - paragraph boxes, 860, **862**, **863–866**
    - rounded corners, [596](#), [597](#)
    - rule boxes, 860, **866–868**
    - troubleshooting, 943
    - types of, 860
    - with frames, [595](#)
    - with shadows, [595–597](#)
  - boxing
    - formulas, [491](#), [600](#)
    - lists; paragraphs, [600](#)
    - numbers in document headings, [26](#)
    - small caps, [563](#)
    - typed text, [164](#)
  - `\boxlength` (picins), [305](#)
  - `\boxminus` (amssymb), 530
  - `\boxplus` (amssymb), 530
  - `\boxslash` (stmaryrd), 530
  - `\boxtimes` (amssymb), 530
  - boxwidth key (fancyvrb), [164](#)
  - `\bpi` (tlc), 512
  - braces, omitting, 844
  - braces.rsc file (bibtool), 780
  - `\bracevert`, 498, 528
  - brazil option (babel), 543
  - brazilian option (babel), 543
  - breakall option (truncate), 233
  - breakautoindent key (listings), 173
  - breakindent key (listings), [173](#)
  - breaklines key (listings), [173](#)
  - breaks
    - before document headings, 42
    - column
      - indexes, 680
      - manually produced, 188, [189](#)
    - line
      - badness rating, 859
      - bibliographies, 694
      - code listings, 172, [173](#)
      - computer code, 172, [173](#)
      - document headings, 31
      - in citations, 694
      - in tables, [247](#)
      - in URL, 93
      - number-only citations, 694
      - second-last line, [849](#), 850
      - tables, 247
    - page, *see also* space parameters
      - badness rating, 859
      - equations, 479–481
      - indexes, 680
      - multipage tables, 257
      - page layout, 234, 235
      - troubleshooting, 935–939
  - breaks (*cont.*)
    - paragraph algorithm
      - adjusting, 849, 850
      - second-last line, [849](#), 850
      - tracing, 940–943
    - paragraph, troubleshooting, 939–943
    - part
      - creating with ltxdoc class, 835
      - creating with doc package, 816
      - printing, 816, 835
    - breakwords option (truncate), 233
    - breqn package, 470, 968
    - breton option (babel), 543
  - `\breve`, 529
    - british option (babel), 543, [550](#)
  - `\bs` (tlc), [654](#)
  - `\bsc` (babel), [563](#)
  - `\bslash` (doc), 821
  - .bst file extension, 8
    - (`\BibTeX`), 688, 689, 979
    - (custom-bib), 798, 799, 802, 804
    - (natbib), 708
  - btauxfile counter (bibtopic), 754
  - `\btPrintAll` (bibtopic), 753
  - `\btPrintCited` (bibtopic), 753, [754](#), [755](#)
  - `\btPrintNotCited` (bibtopic), 753
  - btSect env. (bibtopic), 753, [754](#), [755](#)
  - btUnit env. (bibtopic), 754
  - btxbst.doc file (`\BibTeX`), **806**, 809
  - bu(*num*).aux file (bibunits), 750
  - buffer size errors, 917
  - built-in functions, bibliographies, 805, 807, 808
  - bulgarian option (babel), 543, [550](#), [558](#), 568
  - `\bullet`, 531, [549](#)
  - `\Bumpeq` (amssymb), 532
  - `\bumpeq` (amssymb), 532
  - bundle env. (ecltree), [612](#)
  - `\BUseVerbatim` (fancyvrb), 167
  - BVerbatim env. (fancyvrb), [164](#)
  - `\BVerbatim*` (fancyvrb), 164
  - `\BVerbatimInput` (fancyvrb), [163](#), 164
  - `\BVerbatimInput*` (fancyvrb), 164
  - bychapter folio style (chappg), [217](#)
  - `\bye` (nfssfont.tex), [369](#)
- ## C
- C key value (listings), [170](#), [171](#)
  - C syntax
    - (fancyhdr), 225, [226–228](#)
    - (tabulary), [253](#), [254](#)
    - (tlc), [248](#)
  - `\c`, 452, 458
    - c syntax, [243](#), [244](#), [245](#)
      - (array), 249, 250
      - (tabulary), 254

- c5paper option (typearea), 204
- calc package, 871, 872
  - combined with geometry, 210
  - error using, 889, 895
  - loaded by jurabib, 739
- calculations, 871, 872
- calwidth option (titlesec), 41, 42
- call.type\$ B<sub>A</sub>T<sub>E</sub>X built-in function, 806, 808, 809
- \calQ (tlc), 501
- cam option (crop), 212, 213
- camel package, xxvi, 681, 743–745, 965
- camel.ist file (makeindex), 745
- canadian option (babel), 543
- canadien option (babel), 543
- \Cancer (marvosym), 401
- \Cap (amssymb), 530
- \cap, 530
- capital letters
  - at start of paragraph, *see* drop caps
  - document headings, 25
  - drop caps, 99, 100, 101
  - small caps
    - description, 334
    - French names, 563
    - in headings, 341
- \capitalacute (textcomp), 363, 458
- \capitalbreve (textcomp), 89, 363
- \capitalcaron (textcomp), 363, 458
- \capitalcedilla (textcomp), 363
- \capitalcircumflex (textcomp), 363
- \capitaldieresis (textcomp), 363, 458
- \capitaldotaccent (textcomp), 363
- \capitalgrave (textcomp), 89, 363, 365, 458
- \capitalhungarumlaut (textcomp), 363
- capitalization rules, bibliographies, 786
- \capitalmacron (textcomp), 363, 458
- \capitalnewtie (textcomp), 363
- \capitalogonek (textcomp), 363, 458
- \capitalring (textcomp), 363, 458
- \capitaltie (textcomp), 363
- \capitaltilde (textcomp), 363, 458
- \caps (soul), 88, 89, 91, 92
- \capsdef (soul), 91, 92
- capsdefault option (soul), 92
- \capsreset (soul), 92
- \capssave (soul), 92
- \capsselect (soul), 92
- captcont package, 314
- \caption, 46, 47, 52, 296, 306, 307, 312, 746
  - cross-reference to, 67
  - error using, 307, 893, 897
  - justification in, 104
  - (caption), 262, 309–311, 313, 314, 315, 321
  - (float), 293, 294
  - (fltpage), 326
- \caption (cont.)
  - (longtable), 259, 262
  - (picins), 305
  - (rotating), 297
  - (sidecap), 324, 325
  - (subfig), 316, 321
  - (subfloat), 322
  - (supertabular), 262
  - (threeparttable), 278, 279
  - (titleref), 76
  - (wrapfig), 300, 301
- caption key (listings), 174
- caption package, xxvi, 295, 296, 308–315, 316, 323
  - combined with picins, 306
  - combined with sidecap, 323
- \caption\*
  - (caption), 315
  - (longtable), 262
  - (subfig), 321
- caption2 package, 308, 315
- CaptionAfterwards option (fltpage), 325
- CaptionBefore option (fltpage), 325
- \captionof (caption), 296
- captionpos key (listings), 174
- captions
  - bibliographic citations in, 697
  - floats, *see* floats, captions
  - multipage tables, 257, 262
  - typed text, 174
- \captions(language) (babel), 579, 587, 588
- \captionsetup
  - (caption), 312, 314
  - (subfig), 316, 317, 318, 319, 321
- captionskip key/option (subfig), 317, 318, 319, 321
- \captionssrussian (babel), 589
- caret (^), shorthand character, 556
- \carriagereturn (dingbat), 401
- case changes, disabling in bibliographies, 809, 810
- case sensitivity
  - bibliographies, 762
  - indexes, 650
- cases env. (amsmath), 484, 486, 506
  - error using, 904, 907
- catalan option (babel), 543, 550, 552, 555
- catalan.ldf file (babel), 581
- \catcode, 94, 344, 548, 574, 590
- \cb (tlc), 605
- \cbcolor (changebar), 191
- \cbdelete (changebar), 190, 191
- cbe B<sub>A</sub>T<sub>E</sub>X style, 791
- \cbend (changebar), 189, 190, 191
- \cbinput (chapterbib), 747
- \cbstart (changebar), 189, 190, 191
- cbunit env. (chapterbib), 747
- ccfonts package, 383–385, 399, 515

- `\ccname` (babel), 547
- CD env. (amscd), 467, [488](#), [489](#)
- `\cd` (tlc), [605](#), [606](#)
- CD-ROM, CTAN, 948, 949
- `\cdashline` (arydshln), 267
- `\cdot`, [275](#), [475](#), [478](#), [500](#), [531](#)
- `\cdots`, [487](#), [496](#), [536](#), [845](#), [846](#), [932](#)
- cell  $\text{\LaTeX}$  style (jmb), 791
- `\cellcolor` (colortbl), [265](#)
- Center env. (ragged2e), 105
- center env., [104](#), [146](#), [848](#)
  - (ragged2e), 105
- center option
  - (crop), [213](#)
  - (titlesec), [37](#)
- centerbody option (sidecap), 323
- `\centerdot` (amssymb), 531
- centered paragraphs, 104
- centerfirst key value (caption), [311](#)
- Centering key value (caption), 311
- `\Centering` (ragged2e), 105
- `\centering`, [104](#), [371](#), [861](#)
  - in headings, [31](#)
  - (array), in tables, [247](#), [249](#), [250](#)
  - (multirow), in tables, 274
  - (ragged2e), 105
- centering key value (caption), 311
- centering key/option (geometry), 208
- `\CenteringLeftskip` length (ragged2e), 106
- `\CenteringParfillskip` length (ragged2e), 106
- `\CenteringParindent` rigid length (ragged2e), 106
- `\CenteringRightskip` length (ragged2e), 106
- centerlast key value (caption), [301](#), [311](#)
- `\centerline`, [307](#)
- centertags option (amsmath), 473
- `\cf` (tlc), [488](#)
- .cfg file extension, [8](#), 430, 431, 829
  - (babel), 581, [588](#), 589, 590
  - (caption), 314
  - (color), 907
  - (docstrip), 830, [831](#), 832, 914
  - (endfloat), 291
  - (euro), 97
  - (graphics), 614, 907
  - (jurabib), 741
  - (ltxdoc), 835
  - (natbib), 706, 709
  - (paralist), 138
  - (subfig), 321
  - (textcomp), 367
  - (typearea), 203
- cfgguide.tex file, 430, 431
- `\cfoot` (fancyhdr), [221](#), [224](#), [225](#), [231](#), [232](#), [598](#)
- `\cfrac` (amsmath), [490](#)
- `\ch` (babel), 564
- Chaikin's curves, 610
- chams package, 521
- chancery package, 371
- change history, creating
  - doc package, 817
  - ltxdoc class, 836
- change.case\$  $\text{\LaTeX}$  built-in function, 808, [809](#), [810](#), [812](#)
- changebar env. (changebar), [189](#), [190](#), [191](#)
- changebar package, 189–191
- changebargrey counter (changebar), 190
- changebars, *see* revision bars
- `\changebarsep` rigid length (changebar), 190, [191](#)
- `\changebarwidth` rigid length (changebar), 190
- `\changes` (doc), 817, 823
- `\chapnumfont` (quotchap), 35
- chappg package, 216, 217
- `\chappgsep` (chappg), [217](#)
- `\chapter`, 22, 23, 24, 25, 32, 34, 218, 223, 229
  - adding space in .lof and .lot, 48
  - cross-reference to, 66
  - producing unwanted page number, 222, 230
- (bibunits), 751
- (chappg), 217
- (chapterbib), 748
- (fncychap), 34, [35](#)
- (minitoc), partial contents for, 56
- (quotchap), 35, [36](#)
- (titlesec), 38, 40, 44
- (titletoc), partial contents for, 64
- chapter  $\text{\LaTeX}$  field, 763, 765
- chapter counter, [24](#), [25](#), 219, [851](#)
  - numbered within parts, [25](#)
- chapter key value (jurabib), 724, 731
- `\chapter*`, 23, 222, [680](#), 707, 747
  - listed in TOC, [47](#)
- chapterbib package, 701, 707, 746, [747–749](#), 771
  - combined with babel, 749
  - compatibility matrix, 746
  - incompatible with bibtopic, 754
- `\chapterheadendvskip` (quotchap), 35
- `\chapterheadstartvskip` (quotchap), 35, [36](#)
- `\chaptermark`, [219](#), 222, 748
  - (fancyhdr), 229
- `\chaptername`, 34, 38, [219](#)
  - (babel), [545](#), [547](#)
- `\chapterpagestyle` (KOMA), 230
- `\chaptertitlename` (titlesec), 38
  - character sets, multilingual documents, 541
- `\CharacterTable` (doc), 820
- charter option (quotchap), 35
- charter package, 371
- Charter font, 374, [520](#)
- `\chead` (fancyhdr), [224](#), [225](#), [231](#), [232](#)
- `\check`, 529
  - check.rule function (bibtool), [781](#)

- `\CheckCommand`, 847, 883
- `\CheckCommand*`, 847
- `\CheckModules` (doc), 820
- `\Checksum` (doc), 820
- chemical diagrams, [613](#)
- `\chi`, 527
- chicago BibTeX style
  - (chicago), [684](#), [685](#), [699](#), 700
  - (natbib), [705](#), 706, [708](#), [796](#)
- chicago package, 692, [699](#), 700
- chicagoa BibTeX style (chicago), 700
- Chinese, 592
- chmath package, 521
- `chr.to.int$` BibTeX built-in function, 808
- `\chunk` (ecltree), [612](#)
- `\circ`, [483](#), [531](#), [631](#)
- `\circeq` (amssymb), 532
- `\circle`, [607](#), [608](#)
  - warning using, 926
  - (eepicemu), 611
  - (epic), [608](#), [609](#), 610
  - (epic), [608](#)
  - (pspicture), 639, [640](#), [641](#)
  - (texpicture), [640](#)
- `\circle*`, [607](#), [608](#)
  - (eepicemu), 611
  - (epic), [608](#), [609](#), 610
  - (epic), [608](#)
  - (pspicture), 639, [640](#)
  - (texpicture), [640](#)
- `\circlearrowleft` (amssymb), 534
- `\circlearrowright` (amssymb), 534
- `\circledast` (amssymb), 531
- `\circledcirc` (amssymb), 531
- `\circleddash` (amssymb), 531
- `\circledS` (amssymb), 527
- circles
  - drawing, 610
  - filling, 610, 611
  - math symbols, [531](#)
- Citation env. (tlc), 848, [849](#)
- `\citation`, [689](#), 745, 750, 781
  - (notoccite), 698
- citation systems
  - author-date, 698–711
    - author information missing, [708](#)
    - author list only with first citation, [704](#), [705](#)
    - author-number, switching to, 714
    - authors on single line, 706
    - customizing, bibliography, [707](#)
    - customizing, citations, [705](#), [706](#)
    - definition, 684
    - electronic publications, 710
    - forcing, 708, [709](#)
    - full citations in running text, 710, [711](#)
  - citation systems (*cont.*)
    - history of, [699–983](#)
    - indexing citations automatically, 709
    - multiple citations, 703, [704](#)
    - number-only, switching to, 714
    - short-title format, combining, 732, [733](#)
    - styles supported, 710
    - year information missing, 708
  - author-number, 712
    - compressing citations, [714](#)
    - customizing citations, [715](#)
    - definition, 685
    - description, 712
    - sort order, [714](#)
  - Harvard, 684, 689
  - number-only, 691–698
    - captions, 697
    - color, [695](#)
    - compressing citations, 714
    - customizing citations, [692](#), [693](#), 694, [695](#)
    - definition, 686
    - headings, 697
    - line breaks, 694
    - natbib package, 712–715
    - page ranges, disabling, 695
    - parentheses, [695](#)
    - punctuation, 694, [696](#), [697](#)
    - sort order, [693](#), [694](#), 695, 714
    - spaces, processing, 695
    - superscripts, [696](#), 697
    - unsorted citation style, 697
    - verbose mode, 696
  - short-title, 715–745
    - annotations, [721](#), 740, [741](#), 742
    - author gender, 734, [735](#), 742
    - author information field, 743
    - author list separator, [736](#), 738
    - author-date format, combining, 732, [733](#)
    - back reference information, 742
    - collections, 742
    - column layout, [739](#)
    - configuration files, external, 741
    - cross-references, [732](#)
    - customizing bibliography, 736, [737](#), 738, [739–741](#)
    - customizing citations, [735](#), [736](#)
    - definition, 684
    - description, 715, 716
    - dissertation year, 742
    - edition information, 742
    - editor information, 742
    - endnote citations, 726, 727, [728](#)
    - fonts, 736, 737
    - footnote citations, [726](#), [727](#), 728
    - founder information, 742

citation systems (*cont.*)

- full citations in running text, 723, [724–726](#)
- ibidem citations, [728–731](#), [740](#)
- indentation, 738, [739](#)
- indexing citations automatically, 720, 721
- last update field, 743
- law support, 743, [744](#), 745
- multi-language support, 733, [734](#), 735
- page boundaries, ignoring, 729
- page total field, 743
- parentheses, 735
- pre-notes, [721](#)
- punctuation, [738](#)
- sort order, 743
- style files, 742, 743
- superscripts, [735](#), 736, 743
- title format, [719](#), [720](#)
- title information field, 743
- title, mapping short to full, 721, [722](#), [723](#)
- translated works, 742
- translator information, 743
- URLs, 742, 743
- volume title, 743

\citationdata (camel), [744](#)citationreversed key value (jurabib), [723](#), [724](#), [732](#)citations, *see also* bibliographies

- bibliography input file, creating, 687–689
- bibliography keywords, associating with database entries, 689
- comparison of, 684–686
- default, 691
- description, 683, 684
- DOI, 710
- EID, 710
- exporting, 776
- full, in running text
  - author-date citation system, 710, [711](#)
  - short-title citation system, 723, [724–726](#)
- Hungarian documents, 564
- ISBN, 710
- ISSN, 710
- line breaks, 849, 850
- markup structure, 686, 687
- multiple authors, [685](#)
- multiple bibliographies, 745–756
- naming, 842
- numerical by first citation, 686
- page ranges, disabling, 695
- paragraph break algorithm, 849, 850
- parentheses, bibliographies
  - number-only citation systems, [695](#)
  - short-title citation system, 735
- process flow, 687–689
- punctuation, bibliographies
  - number-only citation systems, 694, [696](#), [697](#)

citations (*cont.*)

- short-title citation system, [738](#)
- sort order, bibliographies
  - author-number citation system, [714](#)
  - number-only citation systems, [693](#), [694](#), 695, 714
  - short-title citation system, 743
- spaces around/within, 695
- style files, short-title citation system, 742, 743
- styles, author-date citation system, 710
- superscripts
  - number-only citation systems, [696](#), 697
  - short-title citation system, [735](#), 736, 743
- system, selecting, 800, 801
- URL, 710

\citationstyle (camel), [744](#)\citationsubject (camel), [744](#), 745\cite, 687–689, [691](#), [692](#), [693](#), 698, 701, 745, 761, 762

- inside .bib, [773](#)
- restrictions on key, 842
- warning using, 920
- (B<sub>W</sub>T<sub>E</sub>X), 808
- (authordate1-4), [700](#)
- (biblist), 775
- (bibtopic), 753, [754](#), [755](#)
- (bibunits), [750](#), [751](#), [752](#)
- (chapterbib), [748](#), [749](#)
- (chicago), [699](#)
- (cite), [693–697](#)
  - problems using, [697](#)
- (harvard), [700](#)
- (jurabib), [716](#), [717–720](#), [721](#), [723–736](#)
- (multibib), 755, [756](#)
- (natbib), [685](#), 701, 703, [707](#), 712
- (showkeys), 68
- (textcase), 86
  - problems using, 85

cite package, xxvi, [693–697](#)

- compatibility matrix, 746
- incompatible with natbib, 701, 714

## \cite\*

- (bibunits), 751
- (harvard), [700](#)
- (jurabib), [719](#), 720
- (natbib), 751
- cite\$ B<sub>W</sub>T<sub>E</sub>X built-in function, 808, [810](#)

## \cite(type) (multibib), 755

\citeA (chicago), [699](#)\Citealp (natbib), [703](#)

## \citealp

- (jurabib), [732](#), [733](#)
- (natbib), [702](#)

\citealp\* (natbib), [702](#)\Citealt (natbib), [703](#)

- `\citealt`
  - (jurabib), 732
  - (natbib), [702](#), [713](#)
- `\citealt*` (natbib), [702](#), [713](#)
- `\citeasnoun` (harvard), [700](#)
- `\Citeauthor` (natbib), [703](#)
- `\citeauthor`
  - (jurabib), [732](#), [733](#)
  - (natbib), [702-704](#), [713](#)
- `\citeauthor*` (natbib), [702](#), [713](#)
- `\citeauthoryear` (chicago), [699](#)
- `\citedash` (cite), [694](#), 696
- `\citefield` (jurabib), [718](#), [719](#), [734](#)
- citefind program, 778
- `\citeform` (cite), [695](#), [696](#)
- citefull key/option (jurabib), [724](#), [726-728](#), 729, [731](#), [732](#)
- `\citefullfirstfortype` (jurabib), [724](#)
- citehack package, 573
- `\citeindexfalse` (natbib), 709
- `\citeindextrue` (natbib), 709
- `\citeindextype` (natbib), [709](#)
- `\citelatem` (tlc), [756](#)
- `\citeleft` (cite), [694](#), 695, [696](#), 697
- `\citemid` (cite), [694](#), 696
- `\CiteMoveChars` (cite), 696
- `\citeN` (chicago), [699](#)
- `\citen` (cite), [695](#)
- `\citenam` (harvard), [700](#)
- `\citenotitlefortype` (jurabib), [720](#)
- `\citeNP` (chicago), 699
- `\citenum` (cite), 695
- `\citenumfont` (natbib), [715](#)
- `\citeonline` (cite), 695
- `\Citep` (natbib), [703](#)
- `\citep`
  - (jurabib), [732](#), [733](#)
  - (natbib), [698](#), [701](#), [703-706](#), 708, 709, [712](#), [713](#), [714](#)
  - problems using, [704](#), [708](#), [713](#)
- `\citep*` (natbib), [702](#), [704](#), [705](#), 712
- `\citepalias` (natbib), [703](#)
- `\citepunct` (cite), [694](#), 696
- `\citeright` (cite), [694](#), 695, [696](#)
- CiteSeer, 774
- `\citestyle` (natbib), [705](#), [706](#), 715
- `\citeswithoutentry` (jurabib), [725](#), [726](#)
- `\Citet` (natbib), [703](#)
- `\citet`
  - (jurabib), [732](#), [733](#)
  - (natbib), [698](#), [701](#), [703-706](#), 708, 709, [711](#), [712](#), [713](#)
  - problems using, [704](#), [708](#), [709](#), [713](#)
- `\Citet*` (natbib), 703
- `\citet*` (natbib), [702](#), 703, [713](#)
- citetags program, 778
- `\citetalias` (natbib), 703
- `\citetext` (natbib), [702](#), 713
- `\citetitle` (jurabib), [719](#), 726, [735](#)
- `\citetitlefortype` (jurabib), [720](#)
- `\citetitleonly` (jurabib), [720](#)
- `\citeyear`
  - (chicago), [699](#)
  - (jurabib), 732
  - (natbib), [702](#), [713](#)
- `\citeyearNP` (chicago), [699](#)
- `\citeyearpar`
  - (jurabib), [732](#), [733](#)
  - (natbib), [702](#), [703](#), [713](#)
- ckj package, 592
- class files, 6
- class options, 16, *see also* options
- `\ClassError`, 885
- classes
  - commands, 847, 879, 883-888
  - file structure, 877-888
  - minimal requirements, 888
- `classes.dtx` file, 343
- `classes.ins` file, 829
- `\ClassInfo`, 885
- `\ClassWarning`, 885
- `\ClassWarningNoLine`, 885
- `\cleardoublepage`, [235](#)
  - (endfloat), 290
- `\clearpage`, 19, [234](#), [235](#), 263, 284, [289](#), 295, [679](#), [680](#)
  - (endfloat), 290
  - (lscape), 212
- `\clearpage` (nextpage), 236
- `\clearpage` (nextpage), [236](#)
- `\cline`, 243, [272](#), [273](#), [274](#), [276](#), [282](#)
  - (booktabs), 270, 271
  - (tabs), 269
- clip key (graphicx), 618, [619](#), 620, [621](#)
- .clo file extension, [6](#), [8](#), 16
- clock option (ifsym), [404](#)
- clocks, symbols, 403, [404](#), [405](#)
- `\closecurve` (curves), [612](#)
- closeFloats option (fltpage), 325
- clouds, symbols, 403, [404](#), [405](#)
- .cls file extension, [6](#), [8](#), 16
- `\clubpenalty`, [936](#), 939
- `\clubsuit`, 528
- CM Bright font, 385, [386](#)
  - in math and text, [522](#)
- CM-Super fonts, 354-356, 570-983
- cm-super-t1.enc file, 355
- cmbright package, 385, [386](#), 523
- `\cmd` (ltxdoc), 834
- `\cmdrulerule` (booktabs), 270, 271, [272](#)
- `\cmdrulerulekern` rigid length (booktabs), 271
- `\cmdrulerulesep` rigid length (booktabs), 271
- `\cmdrulerulewidth` rigid length (booktabs), 271



- code, *see* computer code
- `\CodelineFont` (doc), [417](#), [418](#)
- `\CodelineIndex` (doc), [817](#), [818](#), [820](#), [836](#)
- `CodelineNo` counter (doc), [417](#)
- `\CodelineNumbered` (doc), [820](#)
- codes key (fancyvrb), [162](#)
- `\Coffeecup` (marvosym), [401](#)
- Collection of Computer Science Bibliographies, [773](#)
- collections, bibliographic information, [742](#)
- collectmore counter (multicol), [186](#), [188](#), [189](#)
- `\colon`, [535](#), [536](#)
  - (amsmath), [501](#), [536](#)
- colon key value (caption), [310](#)
- colon option (natbib), [706](#)
- colon (:), shorthand character, [554](#)
- colonsep key value (jurabib), [716](#), [720](#), [741](#)
- color
  - background, [158](#)
  - bibliographies, [695](#)
  - error messages, bibliographies, [785](#)
  - frame rules, [158](#)
  - number-only citations, [695](#)
  - rules (graphic lines), [265](#)
  - table rules, [265](#)
  - tables, [264](#), [265](#)
  - troubleshooting, [870](#)
  - typed text
    - background, [158](#)
    - frame rules, [158](#)
    - text, [156](#), [157](#)
- `\color` (color), [99](#), [191](#), [264](#), [265](#)
  - error using, [912](#)
  - problems using, [870](#)
- color option
  - (changebar), [191](#)
  - (showkeys), [68](#)
- color package, [214](#), [969](#)
  - compatibility with other packages, [870](#)
  - error using, [889](#), [907](#), [912](#)
- `\colorbox` (color), [158](#)
- colorlinks option (hyperref), [78](#)
- colortbl package, [265](#), [266](#)
- column layout, bibliographies, [739](#)
- column specifiers, defining, [248](#), [249](#)
- columbadness counter (multicol), [186](#), [187](#)
- `\columnbreak` (multicol), [188](#), [189](#)
- `\columncolor` (colortbl), [265](#)
- columns, table
  - laying out, [240](#)–[243](#)
  - modifying style, [248](#), [249](#)
  - narrow, [246](#), [247](#)
  - one-off, [248](#), [249](#)
  - spacing, [247](#), [248](#)
- columns, text
  - balancing, [187](#)
  - breaks
    - indexes, [680](#)
    - manually produced, [188](#), [189](#)
  - collecting material, [187](#), [188](#)
  - floats, [189](#)
  - footnotes, [114](#), [115](#), [183](#), [189](#)
  - formatting, [186](#), [187](#)
  - multiple, [184](#)–[187](#), [188](#), [189](#)
  - parallel synchronization, [181](#), [182](#), [183](#), [184](#)
  - vertical spacing, [112](#)
- `\columnsep` rigid length, [194](#), [196](#), [679](#), [680](#), [871](#)
  - (multicol), [185](#), [186](#), [187](#)
  - (wrapfig), [300](#)
- columnsep key/option (geometry), [207](#)
- `\columnseprule` rigid length, [194](#), [196](#), [679](#), [680](#)
  - (multicol), [185](#), [186](#)
- `\columnwidth` rigid length, [112](#), [113](#), [194](#), [624](#)
  - (multicol), [186](#)
- `\Com` (tlc), [654](#)
- `\combinemarks` (tlc), [232](#)
- combining tables of contents, [52](#), [53](#), [54](#)
- comma key value (jurabib), [717](#)
- comma option (natbib), [706](#), [712](#)
- commabeforerest key/option (jurabib), [716](#), [741](#)
- command key (graphicx), [620](#)
- command line tools, bibliographies, [775](#)–[783](#), [786](#)
- commandchars key (fancyvrb), [152](#), [161](#), [167](#)
- commands, *see also* preamble
  - bibliography styles, [805](#), [807](#), [808](#)
  - classes, [847](#), [879](#), [883](#)–[888](#)
  - creating
    - defining new, [843](#), [844](#), [845](#)–[847](#)
    - naming, [842](#), [843](#)
    - nesting, [846](#)
    - portability, [842](#)
    - redefining, [844](#), [845](#), [847](#)
  - definitions, displaying, [932](#)–[934](#)
  - documentation, list of, [820](#)–[824](#)
  - execution, tracing, [945](#), [946](#)
  - fragile, [892](#)–[894](#)
  - ltxdoc class, [834](#)
  - packages, [847](#), [879](#), [883](#)–[885](#)
  - spacing after, [80](#), [81](#)
  - troubleshooting, [933](#), [945](#), [946](#)
- commasep key value (jurabib), [720](#)
- comment env. (verbatim), [153](#)
- comment characters
  - bibliographies, [761](#)
  - doc package, [814](#)
  - docstrip, [833](#)
- commentchar key (fancyvrb), [161](#)
- commented BibTeX entry type (jurabib), [735](#), [742](#), [743](#)
- commented key value (jurabib), [735](#)

- comments, stripping from code
  - arbitrary program languages, 833
  - comment characters, changing, 833
  - configuration files, creating, 830–833
  - description, 824, 825
  - installation support, adding, 830–833
  - invoking, 825
  - master scripts, creating, 829
  - messages, generating, 827, 828
  - postamble, creating, 829, 830
  - preamble, creating, 829, 830
  - result file, specifying, 826, 827
  - script commands, 826–830
  - security considerations, 832
  - source file, specifying, 826, 827
  - syntax, 826–830
    - TDS conforming installation, ensuring, 830–833
    - user messages, generating, 827, 828
    - verbatim delimiters, coding, 833
- `commentstyle` key (listings), [170](#), [171](#), [175](#)
- commutative diagrams, [467](#), [488](#), [489](#)
- compact option (titlesec), [37](#)
- `compactdesc` env. (paralist), [136](#), [138](#)
- `compactenum` env. (paralist), [132](#), [134](#), [135](#), [137](#)
- `compactitem` env. (paralist), [135](#), [136](#)
- `compare` key value (jurabib), [722](#)
- compile errors, *see* troubleshooting
- `\complement` (amssymb), [527](#)
- composed page numbers, indexes, [665](#)
- compound math symbols, [490–495](#)
- Comprehensive T<sub>E</sub>X Archive Network (CTAN), *see* CTAN
- `compress` key value (jurabib), [739](#), [740](#)
- `compress` option (cite), [695](#)
- compressing citations, [714](#)
- computer code, printing, [168](#), [169](#), [170](#), [175](#), *see also* typed text
  - as floats, [174](#)
  - captions, [174](#)
  - code fragments within normal text, [171](#)
  - formatting language keywords, [170](#), [171](#)
  - fragments within normal text, [171](#)
  - frames around listings, [173](#)
  - indentation, [172](#)
  - input encoding, [174](#), [175](#)
  - languages supported, [169](#)
  - line breaks, [172](#), [173](#)
  - numbering lines, [172](#)
  - rules around listings, [173](#)
  - stripping comments, *see* comments, stripping from code
- computer display, page layout, [206](#)
- Computer Modern (CM) font, [513](#)
  - L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X standard fonts, [353](#), [354](#), [355](#), [356](#), [357](#)
  - Cyrillic alphabet, [570](#)
  - old-style numerals, [381](#), [382](#), [383](#)
  - computer program style quoting, [153](#), [154](#), [155](#)
  - `\ComputerMouse` (marvosym), [401](#)
  - Concrete font, [383](#), [384](#), [385](#), [514](#)
    - in math and text, [514](#)
  - Concurrent Versions System (CVS), [836](#)
  - conditional code syntax, [819–824](#)
  - conditional formatting, [872](#), [873–877](#)
  - `config` key/option
    - (caption), [314](#)
    - (jurabib), [741](#)
    - (subfig), [321](#)
  - `config.ps` file (dvips), [637](#)
  - configuration files, *see also* `.cfg`
    - creating, [830–833](#), [835](#), [836](#)
    - external, bibliographies, [741](#)
  - `\cong`, [532](#), [893](#)
    - Conny option (fncychap), [34](#)
  - consistency, indexes, [666](#), [667](#)
  - `contents` BibT<sub>E</sub>X field (BibT<sub>E</sub>X Mng), [789](#)
  - `\contentsfinish` (titletoc), [58](#), [60](#), [61](#), [63](#), [64](#)
  - `\contentslabel` (titletoc), [60](#), [61](#), [64](#)
  - `\contentsline`, [49](#), [50](#), [51](#), [52](#)
    - (titletoc), [59](#), [61](#), [63](#)
  - `\contentsmargin` (titletoc), [60](#), [62](#), [63–65](#)
  - `\contentsname`, [34](#)
    - (babel), [547](#)
  - `\contentspage` (titletoc), [60](#), [61](#)
  - `\contentspush` (titletoc), [61](#)
  - `\contentsuse` (titletoc), [59](#)
  - continued fractions, math symbols, [490](#)
  - `\ContinuedFloat` (caption), [314](#), [315](#), [321](#)
  - continuous slope curves, [611](#), [612](#), [613](#)
  - control structures
    - arithmetic calculations, [871](#), [872](#)
    - conditional formatting, [872](#), [873–877](#)
    - convert program, [643](#)
  - `\coprod`, [491](#), [536](#)
    - (mathptmx), unavailable with, [377](#)
  - `\copyright`, [528](#)
    - (textcomp), [458](#)
  - `copyright` BibT<sub>E</sub>X field (BibT<sub>E</sub>X Mng), [789](#)
  - copyright information, language definition files, [582](#)
  - Cork (T1) font encoding, [337](#), *see also* T1 font encoding
  - `\cornersize` (fancybox), [596](#), [597](#)
  - `\cornersize*` (fancybox), [596](#)
  - `\cos`, [500](#), [506](#)
  - `\cosec` (babel), [564](#)
  - `\cosh`, [500](#)
  - `\cot`, [500](#)
  - `\coth`, [500](#)
  - counters
    - defining new, [851](#)
    - description, [851](#)
    - displaying, [852](#), [853](#), [854](#)
    - document headings, [27](#), [33](#)

- counters (*cont.*)
- footnotes, resetting per-page, 120, [121](#)
  - incrementing, [852](#)
  - list of, 851
  - modifying, [852](#)
  - naming, 842
  - setting, 851, 852
- countmax option (subfloat), 322
- courier key value (fancyvrb), 155, [167](#), [168](#)
- courier package, 370, 371
- Courier font, 374
- `\cov` (tlc), [488](#)
- cp1250 option (inputenc), 360
- cp1251 option (inputenc), 570
- cp1252 option (inputenc), [358](#), [360](#)
- cp1255 option (inputenc), 578
- cp1257 option (inputenc), 360
- cp437 option (inputenc), 359
- cp437de option (inputenc), 359
- cp850 option (inputenc), 359
- cp852 option (inputenc), 359
- cp855 option (inputenc), 570
- cp858 option (inputenc), 359
- cp862 option (inputenc), 578
- cp865 option (inputenc), 359
- cp866 option (inputenc), 570
- cp866av option (inputenc), 570
- cp866mav option (inputenc), 570
- cp866nav option (inputenc), 570
- cp866tat option (inputenc), 570
- `\cr`, 894, [898](#), 904
- `\crrc`, 904
- croatian option (babel), 543
- crop package, 212–214
- crop marks, 212, [213](#), [214](#)
- cropmarks option (tlc), 886, 887
- cross option (crop), [212](#), [214](#)
- cross-references, *see also* varioref package
- as active links, 78
  - bibliographies, [732](#), [772](#), [773](#)
  - current page, [215](#)
  - customizing, 72, [73](#), 74, 75, [76](#)
  - definition, 66
  - displaying reference keys, [68](#)
  - doc package, 817, 818
  - errors, 894
  - indexes
    - creating, 651
    - verifying, 667
  - label formats, 71, [72](#), [73–75](#)
  - line numbers, 178, [179](#)
  - non-numerical, 76, [77](#)
  - numbers, forcing to upright Roman font, 467
  - page numbers, [215](#)
  - restricted characters, 66
- cross-references (*cont.*)
- to a page number only, 69
  - to a range of objects, 70, [71](#)
  - to current page, 69
  - to external documents, 78
  - troubleshooting, 894
  - wrong references on floats, [67](#)
- crossref `\BTeX` field, [690](#), 732, [765](#), [772](#), 780, 807
- (biblist), 775
- crossref key/option (jurabib), [732](#)
- `\cs` (ltxdoc), 834
- `\csc`, 500
- (tlc), [501](#)
- .csf file extension (bibtex8), 759
- `\csname`, [26](#), [933](#), 934
- `\Csub` (tlc), [31](#)
- CTAN (Comprehensive `TEX` Archive Network)
- CD-ROM, 948, 949
  - contents, 948
  - ftp commands, 952–954
  - ftp servers, list of, 948
  - web access, 950
- `\ctg` (babel), 564
- `\cth` (babel), 564
- ctt option (inputenc), 571
- `\Cube` (ifsym), [405](#)
- culture, and typesetting, 542
- `\Cup` (amssymb), 530
- `\cup`, 530
- curly option (natbib), [706](#)
- `\curlyeqprec` (amssymb), 532
- `\curlyeqsucc` (amssymb), 532
- `\curlyvee` (amssymb), 530
- `\curlyveedownarrow` (stmaryrd), 534
- `\curlyveeuparrow` (stmaryrd), 534
- `\curlywedge` (amssymb), 530
- `\curlywedgedownarrow` (stmaryrd), 534
- `\curlywedgeuparrow` (stmaryrd), 534
- currencies
- € (euro symbol), [407–412](#)
  - symbols, [363](#), [412](#)
  - typesetting, [96–99](#)
- `\CurrentOption`, [879](#), [881](#), [886](#), [887](#)
- `\currentpage` (layouts), [200](#), [201](#), [203](#)
- `\currenttitle` (titleref), [77](#)
- `\Curve` (pspicture), [641](#)
- `\curve` (curves), 611, [612](#)
- `\curvearrowleft` (amssymb), 534
- `\curvearrowright` (amssymb), 534
- curves
- Bèzier, *see* epic package; eepic package
  - Chaikin's, 610
  - continuous slope, 611, [612](#), 613
- curves package, 611
- custom-bib package, xxvii, 772, 789, 791, [798–804](#)

- makebst program, 705
  - `\CustomVerbatimCommand` (`fancyvrb`), 165, [167](#)
  - `\CustomVerbatimEnvironment` (`fancyvrb`), [165](#)
  - CVS (Concurrent Versions System), 836
  - Cyr env. (`tlc`), 416, [417](#)
  - Cyrillic, 569–571, [572](#), 573, 574
  - `\cyrillicencoding` (`babel`), 567, 568
  - `\cyrillictext` (`babel`), 568, [589](#)
  - czech option (`babel`), 543
- D**
- D syntax (`dcolumn`), 274, [275](#), [276](#), [561](#), [563](#)
  - `\d`, 452, 458
  - d syntax (`tlc`), [275](#)
  - `\dag`, 530
    - (`textcomp`), 458
  - `\dagger`, 530
  - `\daleth` (`amssymb`), 527
  - danish option (`babel`), 543
  - DANTE FAQ, 947
  - dash (–), *see* hyphen
  - `\dasharrow` (`amssymb`), 534
  - `\dashbox` (`pspicture`), 640
  - dashed lines
    - `arydshin` package, 267, [268](#)
    - `\dashline` command, 602, [603](#)
  - `dashjoin` env.
    - (`epic`), 609
    - (`epic`), 604, [605](#), [606](#)
  - `\dashleftarrow` (`amssymb`), 534
  - `\dashlength` (`picins`), 304, [305](#)
  - `\dashline`
    - (`epic`), 609
    - (`epic`), 602, [603](#), 604
  - `\dashlinedash` rigid length (`arydshln`), [268](#)
  - `\dashlinegap` rigid length (`arydshln`), [268](#)
  - `\dashlinestretch` (`epic`), [603](#), 604
  - `\dashrightarrow` (`amssymb`), 534
  - `\dashv`, 535
  - data flow,  $\LaTeX$ , 9
  - database format, bibliographies
    - abbreviations, creating, 769, 770
    - abbreviations, defaults, 771
    - accents, 768, 769
    - case sensitivity, 762
    - comment character, 761
    - cross-references, 772, 773
    - data, defined, 761
    - entry types, 761–764
    - fields, 762–765
    - ignored fields, 762
    - keys
      - case sensitivity, 762
      - definition, 761
      - names, specifying, 766–768
  - database format, bibliographies (*cont.*)
    - optional fields, 762, 763
    - preamble, 771, 772
    - required fields, 762, 763
    - separator character, 761
    - sort order, 764
    - spaces, 761
    - special characters, 768, 769
    - strings, creating, 769, 770
    - strings, defaults, 771
    - titles, 768
  - database management tools, bibliographies
    - `aux2bib`, 775
    - `bib2html`, 776, [777](#)
    - `bibclean`, 777
    - `bibextract`, 777, 778
    - `bibkey`, 775
    - `biblist`, 774, [775](#)
    - `BibTexMng`, 789
    - `bibtool`, 778–783
    - `bibtools`, 775–783
    - capitalization rules, 786
    - citations, exporting, 776
    - `citefind`, 778
    - `citetags`, 778
    - command line tools, 775–783, 786
    - duplicate keys, removing, 780, 787
    - entries
      - editing, 784
      - extracting, 777, 778, 781, 782
      - searching by strings, 775, 777, 778
    - error messages, color, 785
    - graphical front end, 784–787
    - HTML files, creating, 776, [777](#), 789
    - Internet resources, 774
    - Java database manager, 787–789
    - `JBibtexManager`, 787–789
    - keys
      - adding to bibliography listing, [778](#)
      - extracting, 778
      - generating, 782, 783
      - removing duplicates, 780, 787
      - searching by strings, 775
    - lexical analyzer, 777
    - `looktex`, 775
    - `makebib`, 776
    - merging, 779, 780
    - normalizing, 780, 781, 786
    - online resources, 774
    - portable files, creating, 775
    - pretty-printing, 777, 779, 780
    - `printbib`, [776](#)
    - printing, 774, [775](#), [776](#), 777
    - `pybliographer`, 784–787
    - rewriting, 780, 781

- database management tools, bibliographies (*cont.*)
  - searching, 775, 777, 778, 784, [785](#), 787
  - showtags, 778
  - sorting, 779, 780
  - strings
    - searching all entries for, 775, 777, 778
    - searching keys for, 775
  - Windows database manager, 789
- `\date`, [838](#), 907
- `\date<language>` (babel), 579, 587
- dates, in multilingual documents, [558](#), [559](#)
- `\datesdmy` (babel), [559](#)
- `\datesymd` (babel), [559](#)
- `\DavidStar` (bbding), [403](#)
- `\DavidStarSolid` (bbding), [403](#)
- `\dbinom` (amsmath), [493](#)
- .dbj file extension (custom-bib), 799, 803, [804](#)
- dbk option (inputenc), 571
- `\dblfigrule`, 285
- `\dblfloatpagefraction`, 285
- `\dblfloatsep` length, 285
- `\dbltextfloatsep` length, 285
- `\dbltopfraction`, 285
- dbltopnumber counter, 284
- DC fonts, 353
- dcolumn package, 274–276
- dcu BBL<sub>TeX</sub> style (harvard), 700
- `\ddag`, 530
  - (textcomp), 458
- `\ddagger`, 530
- `\dddots` (amsmath), [494](#), 529
- `\ddot` (amsmath), [494](#), 529
- `\ddot`, [494](#), 529, [591](#)
- `\ddots`, [487](#), 536
- debugging messages, indexes, 675
- debugshow option (tracefmt), 368
- `\decaheterov` (hetarom), [613](#)
- decimal data, aligning in tables, [272](#), 274, [275](#), [276](#)
- `\decimalcomma` (babel), [558](#)
- `\decimalpoint` (babel), [558](#)
- `\decimalsep` (babel), [561](#), [563](#)
- declarations vs. high-level font commands, 344, [345](#)
- `\declare@shorthand` (babel), [591](#)
- `\DeclareCaptionFormat` (caption), 314
- `\DeclareCaptionJustification` (caption), 311, 314
- `\DeclareCaptionLabelFormat` (caption), [310](#), [313](#), [314](#)
- `\DeclareCaptionLabelSeparator` (caption), [310](#), [311](#), [314](#)
- `\DeclareCaptionListOfFormat` (subfig), 320
- `\DeclareCaptionStyle` (caption), [312](#), [313](#), 314
- `\DeclareDirectory` (docstrip), [831](#), [832](#), 914
- `\DeclareEncodingSubset` (textcomp), [368](#)
- `\DeclareErrorFont`, 911
- `\DeclareFixedFont`, [417](#), 418
- `\DeclareFontEncoding`, 416, [430](#), 431, 439, [450](#)
  - error using, 898, 920
  - warning using, 927
- `\DeclareFontEncodingDefaults`
  - warning using, 926
- `\DeclareFontFamily`, [403](#), [421](#), 426, [427](#), [429](#), [431](#), 432, [433](#), [437](#), [438](#), 439
- `\DeclareFontShape`, [403](#), 420, [421–423](#), [424](#), [425](#), 426, 427, [428](#), [429](#), [431](#), 432, [433](#), [437](#), [438](#), 439
  - error using, 900, 901, 906, 912
  - whitespace in, 422
- `\DeclareFontSubstitution`, [450](#)
  - error using, 911
- `\DeclareGraphicsExtensions`
  - (graphics), [624](#), [625](#)
  - (graphicx), 624
- `\DeclareGraphicsRule`
  - (graphics), 620, [625](#), [626](#), 627
  - error using, 896
  - (graphicx), 627
  - error using, 896
- `\DeclareInputMath` (inputenc), [443](#), [444](#), 447
- `\DeclareInputText` (inputenc), [443](#), [444](#), [445](#), 447
- `\DeclareMathAccent`, [399](#), 435
  - error using, 927
  - warning using, 927
- `\DeclareMathAlphabet`, [350](#), [351](#), [352](#), 353, 436, 439, [509](#)
  - warning using, 926, 927
  - when not to use, 435
- `\DeclareMathDelimiter`, 435
- `\DeclareMathOperator`
  - (amsmath), [488](#), [489](#), 500, [501](#)
  - (amsopn), 466
- `\DeclareMathOperator*` (amsmath), [501](#)
- `\DeclareMathRadical`, 435
- `\DeclareMathSizes`, 415, [432](#)
- `\DeclareMathSymbol`, 350, [434](#), [435](#), 436, 439, [528](#)
  - error using, 910
  - warning using, 921
- `\DeclareMathVersion`, [436](#), 439
  - warning using, 927
- `\DeclareNewFootnote` (manyfoot), 122, [123–125](#)
- `\DeclareOption`, [879](#), [880](#), 881, 882, [886](#), [887](#)
- `\DeclareOption*`, [879](#), [881](#), 882, [886](#), [887](#)
  - ignores global options, 882
- `\declarepostamble` (docstrip), 830
- `\declarepreamble` (docstrip), 830
- `\DeclareRobustCommand`, 847
- `\DeclareRobustCommand*`, 847
- `\DeclareSymbolFont`, [433](#), 434, 435, [436](#), 439
  - warning using, 927
- `\DeclareSymbolFontAlphabet`, 351, [435](#), 439
  - warning using, 927
- `\DeclareTextAccent`, 450, [451](#)
- `\DeclareTextAccentDefault`, [453](#), 454

- `\DeclareTextCommand`, [452](#)
- `\DeclareTextCommandDefault`, [366](#), [453](#), [454](#)
- `\DeclareTextComposite`, [451](#)
- `\DeclareTextCompositeCommand`, [451](#), [452](#)
- `\DeclareTextSymbol`, [450](#), [451](#), [453](#)
- `\DeclareTextSymbolDefault`, [365](#), [453](#), [454](#)
- `\DeclareUnicodeCharacter` (inputenc), [444](#), [447](#), [913](#)
- `\DeclareUrlCommand` (url), [95](#), [96](#)
- decmulti option (inputenc), [360](#)
- decorative
  - arrows, [490](#)
  - initials, [395](#), [396](#)
  - letters, at start of paragraph, *see* drop caps
  - math symbols, [495](#)
- `\def`, [140](#), [846](#), [909](#), [913](#)
  - in TeX error message, [891](#)
- .def file extension, [7](#), [8](#), [448](#)
  - (graphics), [614](#)
  - (inputenc), [446](#)
- default key value (caption), [309](#), [310](#), [313](#)
- default.type B<sup>E</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X entry type, [806](#)
- `\defaultaddspace` rigid length (booktabs), [271](#)
- `\defaultbibliography` (bibunits), [750](#)
- `\defaultbibliographystyle` (bibunits), [750](#)
- `\DefaultFindent` (lettrine), [101](#)
- `\defaultthyphenchar`, [427](#)
- `\DefaultLhang` (lettrine), [101](#)
- `\DefaultLines` (lettrine), [100](#)
- `\DefaultLoversize` (lettrine), [101](#)
- `\DefaultLraise` (lettrine), [101](#)
- `\DefaultNindent` (lettrine), [101](#)
- `\DefaultSlope` (lettrine), [101](#)
- `\defcitealias` (natbib), [703](#)
- define-alphabet function (xindy), [678](#)
- define-attributes function (xindy), [678](#), [679](#)
- define-letter-group function (xindy), [677](#)
- define-location-class function (xindy), [677](#), [678](#)
- defineactive key (fancyvrb), [162](#)
- `\DefineFNsymbols` (footmisc), [116](#), [117](#)
- `\defineshorthand` (babel), [548](#)
- `\DefineShortVerb` (fancyvrb), [167](#), [168](#)
- `\DEFIvec` (tlc), [846](#), [847](#)
- defn env. (tlc), [140](#)
- `\deg`, [500](#)
- delarray package, [489](#), [490](#)
- `\deletabarwidth` rigid length (changebar), [190](#)
- `\DeleteShortVerb`
  - (doc), [816](#), [821](#), [834](#)
  - (shortvrb), [152](#)
- delim\_0 keyword (makeindex), [661](#), [664](#)
- delim\_1 keyword (makeindex), [661](#), [664](#)
- delim\_2 keyword (makeindex), [661](#), [664](#)
- delim\_n keyword (makeindex), [661](#)
- delim\_r keyword (makeindex), [661](#)
- delimiters, math symbols, [490–497](#), [498](#), [499](#), [504](#)
- `\delimitershortfall`, [392](#)
- `\Delta`, [392](#), [490](#), [499](#), [527](#)
- `\delta`, [497](#), [527](#)
- denag package, [592](#)
- `\Denarius` (marvosym), [412](#)
  - depth, *see* space parameters
- `\depth`, [861](#), [862](#)
  - (graphics), [630](#)
  - depth key (graphicx), [619](#)
  - depth syntax, [867](#), [868](#)
  - depth level, document headings, [27](#), [28](#)
- `\DescribeEnv` (doc), [815](#), [817](#), [821](#)
- `\DescribeMacro` (doc), [815](#), [817](#), [821](#)
- Description env. (tlc), [148](#), [149](#), [150](#), [151](#)
- description env., [131](#), [136](#), [138](#), [147](#), [148](#), [167](#), [600](#), [849](#)
- description lists
  - extensions, [136](#)
  - standard, [131](#)
  - user-defined, [147](#), [148–151](#)
- `\Descriptionlabel` (tlc), [148](#), [149](#), [150](#), [151](#)
- `\descriptionlabel`, [131](#), [138](#), [147](#), [148](#)
  - (paralist), [138](#)
- `\det`, [491](#), [500](#)
  - device drivers, [614](#)
  - device independent files, [7](#)
- `\dffrac` (amsmath), [493](#)
- .dfu file extension (inputenc), [447](#)
- `\DH`, [457](#)
- `\dh`, [458](#)
- `\diagdown` (amssymb), [528](#)
  - diagram package, [488](#), [965](#)
- `\diagup` (amssymb), [528](#)
- dialects, defining, [584](#), [585](#)
- `\Diamond` (latexsym), [464](#)
- `\diamond`, [495](#), [530](#)
- `\diamondsuit`, [528](#)
- dictionary type headers, [231](#), [232](#)
- `\digamma` (amssymb), [527](#)
  - Digital Object Identifier (DOI), [710](#)
- `\dim`, [500](#)
- `\dimen`, [934](#)
- `\dimen73` rigid length, [934](#)
- `\ding` (pifont), [128](#), [130](#), [131](#), [378](#), [380](#)
  - dingautolist env. (pifont), [131](#), [380](#)
  - dingbat package, [400](#), [401](#)
  - dingbat.mf file (dingbat), [400](#)
- `\dingfill` (pifont), [380](#), [381](#)
- `\dingline` (pifont), [380](#), [381](#)
- dinglist env. (pifont), [379](#)
- directivestyle key (listings), [170](#)
- directory names, typesetting, [93–95](#), [96](#)
- `\DisableCrossrefs` (doc), [817](#), [818](#), [821](#)
- `\discretionary`, [173](#), [942](#)
- display key (titlesec), [38](#), [39–41](#), [42](#)
- display languages, [634](#), *see also* PDF; PostScript; SVG

- display-type document headings, 27, 28
- `\displaybreak` (amsmath), 480, 481
  - error using, 897
- `\displaycaps` (tlc), 92
- displaying formatted pages, *see* display languages
- `\displaylimits`, 492
- `\displaymath` option (lineno), 178
- `\displaystyle`, 85, 432, 494, 502, 503
  - (resize), 84
- `\disretionary`, 902
- dissertation year in bibliographies, 742
- `\dissyear` BibTeX field (jurabib), 742
- `\div`, 530
- `DIVn` option (typearea), 204
- `DIV7` option (typearea), 204
- `DIVcalc` option (typearea), 203, 204, 205
- `DIVclassic` option (typearea), 204
- `\divide`, 872
- `\divideontimes` (amssymb), 530
- `\DJ`, 457
- `\dj`, 458
- doc package, 152, 583, 813–824, 834
- doc.dtx file (doc), 814, 827
- doc.sty file (doc), 827
- `\docdate` (doc), 823
- `\DocInclude` (ltxdoc), 835
- `\DocInput` (doc), 818, 820, 821, 835
- docstrip package, 22, 824–834, 975, 977
  - error using, 889, 914
- docstrip.cfg file (docstrip), 830, 831, 914
- `\DocstyleParms` (doc), 823
- document env., 13, 16, 18, 879, 883
  - checking the font set-up, 439
  - error using, 896, 914
  - problems using, 919
- document option (ragged2e), 105, 106, 394
- document class
  - $\mathcal{M}\mathcal{S}\text{-}\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}\mathcal{T}\mathcal{E}\mathcal{X}$ , 467
  - definition, 15
  - modifying, 18
  - name, 16
  - standard, *see* article; book; report
- document headings, *see also* titlesec package
  - alignment, 37
  - alphabetical, 25
  - and layout definitions, 32
  - at page bottom, 40
  - bibliographic citations in, 697
  - breaking before, 42
  - conditional layouts, 43, 44
  - counter, advancing, 33
  - formatting, 27–33
    - box around number, 26
    - complex headings, 32
    - depth level, 27, 28
- document headings (*cont.*)
  - display format, 27, 28
  - fancy headings, 34, 35
  - formatting numbers, 37
  - heading counter, 27
  - hyphenation, 31
  - indentation, after heading, 32, 40
  - indentation, of the heading, 28, 39
  - indentation, suppressing, 32, 39
  - justification, 31
  - label format, 38
  - leaders, 41, 42
  - line breaks, 31
  - predefined layouts, 34, 35
  - predefined text, 34
  - redefinition, 32, 33
  - rules, 41, 42
  - run-in format, 27, 29, 30
  - shape, 38
  - space after, 28
  - space before, 28
  - text style, 28, 30, 31, 37
  - unusual layouts, 41
- hierarchy, changing, 44, 45
- line breaks, 31
- mottos (quotations), on chapters, 35, 36
- nesting, 24
- numbering, 24, 25–27
  - Arabic numbers, 25
  - capital letters, 25
  - formatting numbers, 37
  - referencing subsections, 25, 26
  - suppressing numbers, 22, 23, 24
- spacing
  - above/below, 39, 43
  - after, 28
  - before, 28
  - consecutive headings, 40
  - font size and, 40
  - in front of, 28
  - label and title text, 38
  - left margin, 39
  - right margin, 40
  - tools for, 40
  - vertical, 37
- splitting, 23
- suppressing, 201
- title width, measuring, 41
- document preamble, *see* preamble
- documentation class (ltxdoc)
  - commands, 834
  - configuration files, creating, 835, 836
  - description, 834
  - extensions, 834
  - formatting options, 835, 836

- documentation commands, list of, 820–824
- documentation driver, 583, 814, **818**
- documentation tools
  - automatic indexing, disabling, 817, 836
  - change history, creating, 817, 836
  - commands, list of, 820–824
  - comment characters, 814
  - comments, stripping from source file, 824–834
  - conditional code syntax, 819–824
  - cross-references, 817, 818
  - CVS, 836
  - description, 814
  - documentation class (ltxdoc), 834–836
  - documentation commands, list of, 820–824
  - driver files
    - creating, 818
    - including in conditional code, 820
  - environment descriptions, creating, 815, 816
  - formatting commands, list of, 820–824
  - history commands, list of, 820–824
  - including files, 835
  - index commands, list of, 820–824
  - index entries, creating automatically, 817, 836
  - input commands, list of, 824
  - keys
    - extracting RCS information, **837**, 838–983
    - parsing `$Id$` keyword, 838, **839**
  - layout parameters, list of, 820–824
  - macro descriptions, creating, 815, 816
  - parts, creating, 816, 835
  - preamble commands, list of, 820–824
  - RCS, 836
  - rCS package, **837**, 838–983
  - rCSinfo package, 838, **839**
  - software release control, 836
  - source control, 836, **837**, 838, **839**
  - spaces, 815
  - syntax, 814, 815
  - syntax diagrams, creating, 834
  - typesetting parameters, list of, 820–824
  - verbatim text delimiters
    - defining, 816
    - syntax, 815
  - version control, 836, **837**, 838, **839**
- documentation, finding, 954, 955
- `\documentclass`, 13, **15**, **16**, **18**, **19**, 20, **877**, 878, 882
  - error using, 912
  - global options, 17, 543, 544
  - release information, **878**
  - warning using, 930, 931
- documents
  - backward compatibility, 463, 464
  - displaying, *see* display languages
  - last page, referencing, 216, **226**
  - reformatting, piecewise, 18–20
- documents (*cont.*)
  - sections, 22, 23
  - source files, *see* source files
  - too large for single run, *see* source files, splitting
  - version control, 21, 22
  - versions, selecting for printing, **21**, 22
- `\documentstyle`, 463
  - error using, 912
- doi B<sub>E</sub>T<sub>E</sub>X field
  - (custom-bib), 802
  - (natbib), 710
  - DOI (Digital Object Identifier), 710
- `\dominilof` (minitoc), 56
- `\dominilot` (minitoc), 56
- `\dominitoc` (minitoc), 56
- `\DoNotIndex` (doc), 817, 822
- `\DontCheckModules` (doc), 821
- `\doparttoc` (minitoc), 57
- `\dosecttoc` (minitoc), 57, **58**
- `\dot`, **494**, 529
  - `dotafter` key/option (jurabib), 728, **738**
- `\Doteq` (amssymb), 532
- `\doteq`, 532
- `\doteqdot` (amssymb), 532
- `\dotfill`, 380, 664, **856**, **857**
- `dotinlabels` option (titletoc), **60**, **61**
- `\dotplus` (amssymb), 530
- `\dots`, **81**, 458, 496
  - (amsmath), **492**, **496**, 497
  - (ellipsis), **82**
  - `dots` option (euro), **97**
  - `\dotsb` (amsmath), **490**, **496**, 497
  - `\dotsc` (amsmath), **496**, 497
  - `\dotsi` (amsmath), **496**, 497
  - `\dotsm` (amsmath), **496**, 497
  - `\dotso` (amsmath), 496
  - `dotted` option (minitoc), 56
  - dotted lines, **602**
  - `dottedjoin` env.
    - (epic), 609
    - (epic), **604**, **605**
  - `\dottedline`
    - (epic), 609
    - (epic), **602**, 604
  - `dotter` accents, **494**, **495**
  - double boxes, **597**
  - double quote ("), shorthand character, 551–553
  - double rules (graphic lines), 269
  - `\doublebox` (fancybox), **597**
  - `\doublecap` (amssymb), 530
  - `\doublecup` (amssymb), 530
  - `\DoublePerCent` (docstrip), **833**
  - `\doublerulesep` rigid length, **243**, 271
  - `\doublerulesepcolor` (colortbl), 265
  - `double`space env. (setspace), **107**



- `\doublespacing` (setspace), 107
  - `\Downarrow`, 498, 534
  - `\downarrow`, 489, 498, 534
  - `\downdownarrows` (amssymb), 534
  - `\downharpoonright` (amssymb), 534
  - draft key (graphicx), 620
  - draft option, 939
    - (graphics), 614, 615
    - (graphicx), 614
    - (showkeys), 68
    - (varioref), 73
  - draft mode, 614, 615
  - `\drawdimensionsfalse` (layouts), 201
  - `\drawdimensionstrue` (layouts), 202
  - drawing
    - arcs, 610
    - circles, 610
    - ellipses, 610
    - lines, 603, 604, 610, *see also* epic package; eepic package
    - paths, 610
    - vectors, *see* epic package; eepic package
  - drawjoin env.
    - (eepic), 609
    - (epic), 604, 605
  - `\drawline`
    - (eepic), 609, 610, 611
    - (epic), 603, 604, 611
  - `\drawlinestretch` (epic), 604
  - `\drawwith` (ecltree), 612
  - driver files
    - creating, 818
    - including in conditional code, 820
  - drop key (titlesec), 38, 39, 41
  - drop caps, 99, 100, 101
  - .dtx file extension, 8
    - (doc), 6
    - (ltxdoc), 835
  - duplicate option (chapterbib), 748
  - `duplicate$`  $\LaTeX$  built-in function, 808
  - dutch option (babel), 543, 552, 553, 585
  - .dvi file extension, 7, 8, 9, 327, 593, 660
  - dvi2ps option (graphics), 615
  - dvi2ps program, 615
  - dvi2svg program, 645, 646
  - dvia1w option (graphics), 615
  - dvia1w program, 615
  - dvilaser option (graphics), 615
  - dvilaser/PS program, 615
  - dvipdf option (graphics), 615
  - dvipdf program, 615
  - dvipdfm key/option (geometry), 210
  - dvipdfm program, 643
  - dvips key/option (geometry), 210
  - dvips option
    - (changebar), 189
    - (crop), 213
    - (graphics), 614, 615, 913
  - dvips program, 189, 420, 614, 615, 637–639, 646, 969
  - dvips.def file (graphics), 614
  - dvipsnames package, 191
  - dvipsone option (graphics), 615
  - dvipsone program, 614, 615
  - dvitoln03 option (changebar), 189, 190
  - dvitops option
    - (changebar), 189
    - (graphics), 615
  - dvitops program, 615
  - dviwin option (graphics), 615
  - dviwin program, 615
  - dviwindo option (graphics), 615
  - dviwindo program, 615
  - dynamic key value (jurabib), 718, 732
- ## E
- E syntax (fancyhdr), 225, 226–230
  - e-mail addresses, typesetting, 93–95, 96
  - E . font encoding, 430
  - EC (European Computer Modern) fonts, 353, 354, 355, 356
  - `\ecaption` (tlc), 54, 55
  - ecltree package, 612
  - eco option (euro), 97
  - eco package, 63, 64, 383
  - `\edef`, 131
    - problems using, 892
  - edition  $\LaTeX$  field, 717, 763, 765
  - edition information, bibliographies, 742
  - editor  $\LaTeX$  field, 690, 732, 742, 763, 764, 765, 766, 767
  - editor information, bibliographies, 742
  - `\editorname` (jurabib), 734
  - `editortype`  $\LaTeX$  field (jurabib), 742
  - eepic package, 603, 607–611, 637, 638, *see also* epic package
  - eepicemu package, 611
  - `\efloatseparator` (endfloat), 290
  - `efxmpl.cfg` file (endfloat), 291
  - `\eg` (tlc), 80
  - `\ega` (tlc), 468
  - egrep program, 775
  - eid  $\LaTeX$  field
    - (custom-bib), 802
    - (natbib), 710
  - EID, bibliographies, 710
  - electronic publications, bibliographies, 710
  - `\e11`, 527
  - `\ellipse`
    - (eepicemu), 611
    - (eepic), 610

- `\ellipse*`
  - (`eepicemu`), 611
  - (`eepic`), 610
- ellipses
  - drawing, 610
  - filling, 610, 611
- ellipsis package, xxvii, 82, *see also* `lips` package
- ellipsis (...)
  - mathematical symbol, 496, 497
  - spacing, 81–83
- `\ellipsisgap` (`ellipsis`), 82
- `\ellipsispunctuation` (`ellipsis`), 82
- `\ELSE` (algorithmic), 168
- `\em`, 341, 342, 344
  - using small caps, 342
  - (`ulem`), 87
- emacs program, 787, 946, 976
- `\email` (`tlc`), 95, 96
- `\emdash`, 448
  - `emdash` option (`euro`), 97
- `\emergencystretch` rigid length, 102, 103, 929, 941
- `\eminnershape` (`fixltx2e`), 342
- `\emph`, 167, 341, 342, 344, 345, 849
  - error using, 908
  - (`ulem`), 87
  - (`yfonts`), 394
- `emph` key (`listings`), 171
- emphasizing fonts, 341
- `emphstyle` key (`listings`), 171
- empty key value
  - (`caption`), 310
  - (`subfig`), 320
- empty page style, 222
  - producing unwanted page number, 222
- empty lines, equations, 481
- empty size function, 423
- `empty$` `BBTeX` built-in function, 808, 809–812
- `\emptyset`, 528
- emTeX program, 614, 615
- `emtex` option
  - (`changebar`), 189, 190
  - (`graphics`), 615
- `\EnableCrossrefs` (`doc`), 817, 821, 836
- `encap` keyword (`makeindex`), 660
- `encap_infix` keyword (`makeindex`), 661
- `encap_prefix` keyword (`makeindex`), 661
- `encap_suffix` keyword (`makeindex`), 661
- `\encapchar` (`doc`), 822
- encapsulating page numbers, indexes, 652, 671, 672
- encapsulation, image files, 627, 628
- `\enclname` (`babel`), 547
- encoding
  - accented characters, 357, 358, 359–361
  - definition files, 7
  - font commands, low level, 415, 417
  - encoding (*cont.*)
    - input, 329, 330, 357, 358, 359–361, 443–447
    - languages and fonts, 567, 577
      - Cyrillic alphabet, 569–573
      - description, 336, 337
      - Greek alphabet, 574, 576
      - Hebrew alphabet, 576–578
      - language options, 566–568
      - OT1 extensions, 566
      - T1 extensions, 566
      - T2A encoding, 571
      - T2B encoding, 573
      - T2C encoding, 573
    - $\LaTeX$ , 329, 330, 336, 440–442
    - LICR objects, 442, 443
      - list of, 455–463
    - math input, 445–447
      - OT1, 337
    - output, 330, 361, 362, 447–463
    - Pi fonts, 378, 379–381
    - PostScript, 388, 389, 390
    - schemes, declaring, 430
    - selecting, 361, 362
    - single-byte characters, 359, 360
    - T1 (Cork), 337, 353
    - $\TeX$ , 353
    - text input, 445–447
    - text symbols
      - Pi fonts, 378, 379–381
      - PostScript, 388, 389, 390
      - TS1, 362, 363–368
      - Zapf Dingbats, 378–380
    - TS1, 362, 363–368
    - UTF8 support, 360, 361, 447
    - Zapf Dingbats, 378–380
- `\encodingdefault`, 346, 347, 417, 418
- `\End` (`tlc`), 489
- `\end`, in  $\TeX$  error message, 908, 914, 921
  - `endash` option (`euro`), 97
- `\endbatchfile` (`docstrip`), 826
- `\endcsname`, 26, 905, 933, 934
- `\endfirsthead` (`longtable`), 260, 262
- `endfloat` package, xxvii, 289–291
  - combined with `rotating`, 291
- `endfloat.cfg` file (`endfloat`), 291
- `\endfoot` (`longtable`), 260, 262
- `\endgraf`, 897
- `\endgroup`, 504, 896, 906
  - error using, 898, 899
- `\endhead` (`longtable`), 260, 262
- `\ENDIF` (algorithmic), 168
- `\endinput`, 827, 900
- `\endlastfoot` (`longtable`), 260, 262
- `\endnote` (`endnotes`), 125, 126
  - `endnote` counter (`endnotes`), 125, 126

- endnote key value (jurabib), 728
- endnote citations, bibliographies, 726, 727, [728](#)
- `\endnotemark` (endnotes), [125](#), [126](#)
- endnotes, [125](#), [126](#), *see also* footnotes; marginal notes
- endnotes package, xxvii, [125](#), [126](#)
- `\endnotetext` (endnotes), 125
- `\endpostamble` (docstrip), 829, 830
- `\endpreamble` (docstrip), 829, 830
- `\eng` (babel), [562](#)
- english option (babel), 543, [545](#), [546](#), [548–550](#), [552](#), [734](#)
- enjbbib.lfd file (jurabib), 733
- `\enlargethispage`, [234](#), 930
  - error using, 908, 910
- `\enlargethispage*`, [234](#), [235](#)
- `\noteformat` (endnotes), [126](#)
- `\noteheading` (endnotes), 126
- `\notesize` (endnotes), [126](#)
- `\enskip`, 508
- `\enspace`, [37](#), [856](#)
- `\ensuremath`, [446](#), [844](#), [845](#), [846](#), [932](#)
- .ent file extension (endnotes), 125
- ENTRY BibTeX command, 805, 806, [807](#), 810
- entry types, bibliography database, 761–764
- entry variables, bibliographies, 805
- `enumerate` env., [129](#), [130](#), [131](#), 132, [134](#), [135](#), 600
  - cross-reference to, 66
  - error using, 911
  - style parameters, 130
    - (enumerate), 134
    - (paralist), 134
- enumerate package, 134
- enumerated lists
  - default settings, 136, [137](#), 138
  - extensions, [132–135](#)
  - indentation, [137](#)
  - standard, [129–131](#)
  - user-defined, [151](#)
- enumi counter, [129](#), [130](#), [131](#), 851
- enumii counter, [129](#), [130](#), 851
- enumiii counter, [130](#), 851
- enumiv counter, [130](#), 851
- environment env. (doc), [815](#), [816](#), 821, 824
- environments
  - abbreviations, 468
  - defining new, 847, [848–850](#)
  - descriptions, creating, 815, 816
  - displaying as mini-pages, 477, [478](#), [479](#)
  - documenting, *see* documentation tools
  - naming, 842, 843
  - redefining existing, 847–850
- epic package, [600–607](#), 609, 611, 612, *see also* eepic package
- `\EPS` (tbc), [843](#), [844](#)
- .eps file extension, 8, 625, 626, 896
- .eps.gz file extension, 626
- `\epsilon`, 527
- `\eqcirc` (amssymb), 532
- `\eqnarray` env., [470](#), 600
  - error using, 898, 911
  - wrong spacing, [470](#)
- `\eqnarray*` env., [470](#), 600
- `\eqref` (amsmath), [70](#), [482](#), [485](#)
- `\eqsim` (amssymb), 532
- `\eqslantgtr` (amssymb), 532
- `\eqslantless` (amssymb), 532
- `\equal` (ifthen), [72](#), [73](#), [232](#), [873](#), [874](#), [877](#)
- equality and order, math symbols, [532](#)
- equality and order—negated, math symbols, [532](#)
- equals sign (=), shorthand character, [557](#)
- equation counter, [851](#), [854](#)
  - (amsmath), 482, 484
- equation env., [14](#)
  - cross-reference to, 66
  - spacing problems around, [481](#)
    - (amsmath), [469–471](#), 473, 484
    - error using, 895
- `equation*` env. (amsmath), [469](#), [471](#), 473, [478](#)
- equations, *see also* math fonts; math symbols
  - aligning, [469](#)
  - amsmath package vs. standard L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X, [470](#), [471](#)
  - as mini-pages, [477](#), [478](#), [479](#)
  - empty lines, [481](#)
  - groups with alignment, [475](#)
  - groups without alignment, 474, [475](#)
  - interrupting displays, [479](#)
  - labels, *see* numbering, equations; tags
  - multiple alignments, 475, [476](#), [477](#)
  - numbering, *see also* tags
    - resetting the counter, 485
    - subordinate sequences, 484, [485](#)
  - on multiple lines, no alignment, 471, [472](#)
  - on multiple lines, with alignment, [473](#), [474](#)
  - on one line, [471](#)
  - page breaks, 479–481
  - tags, [469](#), *see also* numbering, equations
    - definition, 468
    - numbering equations, [482](#)
    - placement, [483](#), [484](#)
    - vertical space, 479, [480](#), 481
- `\equiv`, [475](#), [493](#), 532
- `\eqvref` (tbc), [70](#)
- error messages, *see* messages, error; troubleshooting
- `errorcontextlines` counter, 892
- `errorshow` option
  - (multicol), 188
  - (tracefmt), 368
- escape keyword (makeindex), 660
- escape characters, [161](#)
- `\Esper` (babel), 559
- `\esper` (babel), 559

- esperanto option (babel), 543, [556](#), [558](#)
- \esssup (tlc), 466, [501](#)
- estonian option (babel), 543
- \eta, 527
- \etc
  - (tlc), [80](#)
  - (yfonts), [395](#), [396](#)
- \eth (amssymb), 527
- ethiop package, 592
- Ethiopian, 592
- eucal option (mathscr), [397](#)
- eucal package, 396, 467
- \EuFrak (eufrak), 396
- eufrak package, 396, 397, 398, 467
- euler package, 397, 398
  - wrong digits, 398
- Euler font, 396, [397-399](#), 467, [514](#)
- Euler Fraktur font, 467, [509](#)
- euler-digits option (eulerm), [398](#), [399](#), [515](#)
- euler-hat-accent option (eulerm), [399](#)
- eulerm package, 397-399, 435, 515
- \EUR
  - (europs), [411](#)
  - (eurosym), [409](#)
  - (marvosym), [412](#)
- \EURcf (marvosym), [412](#)
- \EURcr (europs), 411
- \EURdig (marvosym), [412](#)
- \EURhv
  - (europs), 411
  - (marvosym), [412](#)
- \EURO (euro), [96](#), [97-99](#)
- \euro
  - (eurosans), [98](#), [99](#), [410](#)
  - (eurosym), [408](#), 409
  - (tlc), [410](#)
- euro option (textcomp), 362, [387](#), 388
- euro package, xxvi, [96-99](#)
  - combined with color, 99
- euro currency, typesetting, [96-99](#)
- euro symbol (€), [407-412](#)
- euro.cfg file (euro), 97
- \EUROADD (euro), [97](#), [98](#)
- \EUROfc (europs), 411
- \EUROFORMAT (euro), [98](#), [99](#)
- European Computer Modern (EC) fonts, 353, 354, [355](#), [356](#)
- European Modern fonts, 355
- europs package, 411
- eurosans package, 98, 99, [410](#), [411](#)
- \EUROSYM (euro), [97](#), [98](#), [99](#)
- eurosym package, 408, 409
- \EURtm
  - (europs), 411
  - (marvosym), [412](#)
- \EuScript (eucal), 396
- even key value (titlesec), [43](#)
- even keyword (makeindex), 657
- \evensidemargin rigid length, [194](#), [196](#), [199](#), 887
- \everypar, 255
- EX env. (tlc), [852](#)
- exa env. (tlc), [139](#), [142](#)
- example env. (tlc), [163](#)
- examples, this book, 14, 162, 960, *see also specific examples*
- exception dictionary errors, 917
- exclamation mark (!), shorthand character, [554](#)
- \excludeonly (excludeonly), [20](#)
- excludeonly package, 19, 20
- excluding files, 20, *see also including files*
- EXECUTE BIBTEX command, [806](#), [807](#)
- \ExecuteOptions, 614, [879](#), [881](#)
- executive option (crop), 213
- executivepaper key/option (geometry), 206
- executivepaper option, 195
  - (typearea), 204
- \exists, 528
- \exp, 500
- expand.macros function (bibtool), [781](#)
- \expandafter, [933](#)
- expert option (fourier), 393
- \ExplainOptions (optional), 21
- exporting citations, 776
- exscale option (ccfonts), 385
- exscale package, 85, 368
  - combined with relsize, 84
  - provided by amsmath, 504
  - provided by ccfonts, 385
  - provided by eulerm, 398
  - provided by mathpazo, 378
  - provided by mathptmx, 377
- ext key (graphicx), 620
- \ext@figure, 52, [54](#)
- \ext@table, 52, [53](#), [54](#)
- extendedchars key (listings), [174](#), [175](#)
- extensions supported, bibliographies, 802, 803
- external documents, cross-references to, 78
- \externaldocument (xr), 78
- extra option (tipa), 405
- \extracolsep, [246](#), 273, [279](#), [280](#)
  - (array), 246
  - (longtable), [261](#)
- \extrafootnoterule (manyfoot), 124
- \extramarks (extramarks), [220](#), [221](#)
- extramarks package, xxvii, 218, [220](#), [221](#)
- \extrarowheight rigid length (array), [244](#), [245](#), [246](#), [268](#), 269
- \extrarulesep rigid length (tbls), 269
- \extras<language> (babel), 579, 588
- \extrarussian (babel), [589](#)
- \extratabsurround rigid length (array), [280](#), [281](#)

- `\eye` (dingbat), [401](#)
- `\EyesDollar` (marvosym), [412](#)
- EZ fonts, [356](#)
- F**
- F syntax (fancyhdr), [226](#), [227](#)
- `\FAIL` (tlc), [918](#)
- `\FAILa` (tlc), [915](#), [916](#)
- `\FAILb` (tlc), [915](#), [916](#)
- `\FAILc` (tlc), [915](#), [916](#)
- `\FAILd` (tlc), [915](#), [916](#)
- `\fakelistoffigures` (minitoc), [56](#)
- `\fakelistoftables` (minitoc), [56](#)
- `\faketableofcontents` (minitoc), [56](#), [58](#)
- `\fallingdotseq` (amssymb), [532](#)
- false key value
  - (caption), [309](#), [311](#)
  - (fancyvrb), [160](#)
  - (geometry), [207](#)
  - (jurabib), [724](#)
  - (listings), [171](#), [172](#), [173](#)
  - (subfig), [318](#)
  - (titlesec), [43](#)
- false syntax, [875](#)
- families, font, *see* fonts, families
- `\familydefault`, [346](#), [347](#), [373](#), [417](#)
  - (yfonts), [394](#)
- fancy page style (fancyhdr), [221](#), [224](#), [225–233](#), [598](#), [839](#)
- fancybox package, [596–600](#)
- `\fancyfoot` (fancyhdr), [225](#), [226–230](#), [233](#)
- `\fancyfootoffset` (fancyhdr), [227](#)
- fancyhdr option (rcsinfo), [839](#)
- fancyhdr package, xxvii, [220](#), [224–232](#)
  - loaded by rcsinfo, [839](#)
- `\fancyhead` (fancyhdr), [225](#), [226–230](#), [233](#), [297](#)
- fancyheadings package, [224](#)
- `\fancyheadoffset` (fancyhdr), [227](#)
- `\fancyhf` (fancyhdr), [226](#), [227](#), [230–233](#)
- `\fancyhfoffset` (fancyhdr), [226](#), [227](#), [598](#)
- `\fancyoval` (fancybox), [596](#), [597](#)
- `\fancypage` (fancybox), [597](#), [598](#), [599](#)
- `\fancypagestyle` (fancyhdr), [230](#)
- `\fancyput` (fancybox), [599](#)
- `\fancyput*` (fancybox), [599](#)
- fancyref package, [76](#)
- `\FancyVerbFormatLine` (fancyvrb), [156](#), [157](#), [158](#)
- `FancyVerbLine` counter (fancyvrb), [157](#), [160](#)
- `\FancyVerbStartString` (fancyvrb), [162](#)
- `\FancyVerbStopString` (fancyvrb), [162](#)
- `\FancyVerbTab` (fancyvrb), [160](#), [161](#)
- fancyvrb package, [152](#), [153](#), [155–168](#), [169](#), [172–174](#)
  - combined with color, [158](#), [163](#)
- fancyvrb.cfg file (fancyvrb), [168](#)
- FAQ (Frequently Asked Questions), [947](#)
- farskip key/option (subfig), [317](#), [318](#)
- `\fatbslash` (stmaryrd), [530](#)
- `\fatsemi` (stmaryrd), [530](#)
- `\fatslash` (stmaryrd), [530](#)
- `\Faxmachine` (marvosym), [401](#)
- `\fbox`, [307](#), [491](#), [860](#), [861](#), [866](#), [869](#), [870](#)
- `\fboxrule` rigid length, [861](#), [869](#), [870](#), [872](#)
  - (boxedminipage), [595](#)
  - (fancybox), [597](#)
- `\fboxsep` rigid length, [158](#), [326](#), [861](#), [869](#), [870](#), [872](#)
  - (boxedminipage), [595](#)
  - (fancybox), [596–598](#)
- `\fcolorbox` (color), [265](#)
- fcolumn env. (tlc), [869](#)
- `\fcolwidth` rigid length (tlc), [872](#)
- .fd file extension, [7](#), [8](#), [355](#), [429](#), [431](#), [432](#), [433](#), [509](#), [923](#), [928](#), [1063](#)
  - defining, [437–439](#)
- .fdd file extension (ltxdoc), [835](#)
- `\FEMALE` (marvosym), [401](#)
- `\Female` (marvosym), [401](#)
- .fff file extension (endfloat), [291](#)
- `\fg` (babel), [552](#), [554](#)
- `\fi`, [902](#)
- field variables, bibliographies, [805](#)
- fields, bibliographies, [762–765](#), [810](#), [811](#)
- fighead option (endfloat), [290](#)
- figlist option (endfloat), [290](#)
- figure counter, [851](#)
- figure env., [47](#), [109](#), [291](#), [306](#), [307](#), [308](#), [309–311](#)
  - cross-reference to, [66](#), [67](#)
  - error using, [899](#), [902](#), [907](#)
  - floats to end of document, [289](#)
  - labels in, [67](#)
  - style parameters, [284–286](#)
  - warning using, [925](#)
  - (caption), [312](#), [313](#)
  - (float), [294](#), [295](#)
  - (multicol), not supported, [189](#)
  - (rotfloat), [298](#)
  - (subfig), [320](#)
- figure lists
  - in tables of contents, [48](#)
  - options, [290](#)
  - placing at end of document, [289–291](#)
- figure\* env. (multicol), [189](#)
- `\figurename` (babel), [547](#)
- `\figureplace` (endfloat), [290](#)
- `\figuresection` (endfloat), [290](#)
- figuresfirst option (endfloat), [290](#)
- figuresleft option (rotating), [297](#)
- figuresright option (rotating), [297](#)
- figwindow env. (picinpar), [108](#), [109](#)
- `\filcenter`
  - (titlesec), [40](#), [44](#), [65](#)
  - (titletoc), [59](#)

- `\file` (docstrip), 826, 827, 830, 831
- file extension, image files
  - search order, 624, 625
  - specifying, 625
- file structure (classes and packages)
  - commands, 879, 883–885, 888
  - description, 877
  - identification part, 877–880
  - initial code part, 880
  - main code part, 883
  - minimal requirements (classes), 888
  - options
    - declaring, 880, 881
    - executing, 881, 882
    - package loading part, 882
- `filecontents` env., 20, 403, 606
  - error using, 904
  - warning using, 922, 923, 928, 931
- `filecontents*` env., 21, 171
  - warning using, 923, 931
- `\filedate` (doc), 823
- `\filename` (doc), 823
- files
  - L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X format, 7
  - T<sub>E</sub>X and L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X, summary list, 8
  - T<sub>E</sub>X font metric, 7
  - auxiliary, 7, 8
  - bibliography style, 8
  - class, 6
  - document source, *see* source files
  - encoding definition, 7
  - font definition, 7
  - index, 7
  - input source, 6
  - internal, 7
  - language definition, 6
  - package, 6
  - plain text, 6
  - transcript, 7
- `\fileversion` (doc), 823
- `\filinmer` (titlesec), 40, 43
- `\fill` length, 261, 849, 856, 857, 858
- `\fillast`
  - (titlesec), 40
  - (titletoc), 59, 65
- `fillcolor` key (fancyvrb), 158
- `\filleft`
  - (titlesec), 40, 41, 43
  - (titletoc), 59
- filling circles, 610, 611
- filling material, *see* leaders
- `\filltype` (eepic), 610
- `\filouter` (titlesec), 40, 43
- `\filright`
  - (titlesec), 40, 42–44
  - (titletoc), 59, 60, 61, 63
- final option
  - (graphics), 615
  - (graphicx), 615
  - (showkeys), 68
  - (varioref), 73
- final mode, 615
- `finalcolumnbadness` counter (multicol), 186, 187
- `\Finale` (doc), 816, 817, 821
- `\finalhyphendemerits`, 849, 850
- `\finallinebreak` (tlc), 102
  - findent key (lettrine), 101
  - finnish option (babel), 543
- `\Finv` (amssymb), 527
- `\Fire` (ifsym), 405
  - first key value (jurabib), 724, 726–728, 729, 731
- `\firsthdashline` (arydshln), 267
- `\firsthline` (array), 268, 280, 281
- `\firstleftmark` (extramarks), 220, 229
- `\firstleftxmark` (extramarks), 220, 221
  - firstline key
    - (fancyvrb), 162, 163
    - (listings), 172
- `\firstmark`, 218
  - firstnotreversed key value (jurabib), 724
  - firstnumber key
    - (fancyvrb), 159, 160, 163
    - (listings), 172
- `\firstrightmark` (extramarks), 220, 231, 232
- `\firstrightxmark` (extramarks), 220
- `fit` option (truncate), 233
- `\FiveFlowerPetal` (bbding), 403
- `fix-cm` package, xxvii, 355, 356
- `fixed` size function, 426
- `\Fixedbearing` (marvosym), 401
- `fixltx2e` package, 232
- `fixltx2e.dtx` file (fixltx2e), 835
- `flafter` package, 70, 286
- `\Flag` (ifsym), 405
  - `flalign` env. (amsmath), 469, 476, 477
    - adjusting with `\minalignsep`, 477
    - error using, 895
  - `flalign*` env. (amsmath), 469
  - `flanguage` B<sup>B</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X field (jurabib), 742
- `\flat`, 528
- `fleqn` option, 68
  - (amsmath), 466, 469, 471, 500
- `float` key (listings), 174
- `float` package, 291–295, 923
- `float` class
  - captions, listing, 293
  - naming, 293, 294
- `float` pages, page styles (headers and footers), 231

- `\FloatBarrier` (placeins), [288](#), [289](#), [295](#)
- `\floatdesign` (layouts), [202](#)
- `\floatdiagram` (layouts), [202](#)
- floatfig package, [299](#)
- floatflt package, [299](#)
- `\floatname`
  - (float), [293](#)
  - (rotfloat), [298](#)
- `\floatpagedesign` (layouts), [202](#)
- `\floatpagediagram` (layouts), [202](#)
- `\floatpagefraction`, [284](#), [285](#), [286](#)
- `\floatplacement` (float), [294](#)
- floats
  - captions
    - continuing across floats, [314](#), [315](#)
    - customizing, [305](#), [308–315](#)
    - fonts, [309](#), [310](#)
    - for specific float types, [305](#), [312](#), [313](#)
    - justifying, [311](#)
    - labels, [310](#), [311](#), [313](#), [314](#)
    - multipage tables, [257](#), [262](#)
    - on separate page, [325](#), [326](#)
    - paragraph separation, [311](#)
    - placement, [323](#), [324](#), [325](#), [326](#)
    - shape, [308](#), [309](#)
    - sideways, [306](#), [323](#), [324](#), [325](#)
    - spacing, [312](#), [317](#)
    - standard L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X, [306](#), [307](#), [308](#)
    - sub-captions, [315](#), [316–319](#), [320](#), [321](#)
    - sub-numbering, [321](#), [322](#), [323](#)
  - columns, [189](#)
  - custom styles, [291](#), [292](#), [293–295](#), [296](#)
  - definition, [283](#), [284](#)
  - figures, [315–321](#)
  - half-empty pages, [285](#), [286](#)
  - inline, [298–306](#)
  - maximum allowed, setting, [284](#)
  - multipage tables, [262–264](#), [289](#)
  - nonfloating tables and figures, [295](#), [296](#)
  - page fraction, setting, [284](#), [285](#)
  - parameters, [284–286](#)
  - pictures inside text, [302](#), [303–306](#)
  - placement control, [286–983](#)
    - after their callouts, [286](#)
    - at end of document, [289–291](#)
    - at exact spot, [287](#), [295](#), [296](#)
    - bunched at end of chapter, [286](#)
    - captions, [323](#), [324–326](#)
    - confined by barriers, [288](#), [289](#)
    - floating backwards, [287](#)
  - premature output, [291](#)
  - rotating, [296](#), [297](#), [298](#)
  - rules (graphic lines), [285](#)
  - separators, [285](#)
  - sub-figures, [315](#), [316](#), [317](#), [318](#), [319](#), [320](#), [321](#)
- floats (*cont.*)
  - sub-tables, [315](#), [316](#), [317](#), [318](#), [319–321](#)
  - tables, [315–321](#)
  - text markers, [290](#), [291](#)
  - typed text as, [174](#)
  - unprocessed, flushing, [289](#)
  - vertical spacing, [285](#)
  - wrapping text around, [108](#), [109](#), [298](#), [299](#), [300](#), [301](#), [302](#)
  - wrong references, [67](#)
- `\floatsep` length, [285](#)
- `\floatstyle`
  - (float), [292](#), [293](#), [294](#), [309–311](#)
  - (rotfloat), [298](#)
- ftpage package, [325](#), [326](#)
- flush left paragraphs, [103–105](#), [106](#)
- flush right paragraphs, [104](#)
- `\flushbottom`, [120](#), [234](#)
- `\flushcolumns` (multicol), [186](#), [188](#)
- FlushLeft env. (ragged2e), [105](#)
- flushleft env., [103](#), [104](#), [146](#)
  - (ragged2e), [105](#)
- flushleft option
  - (paralist), [138](#)
  - (threeparttable), [278](#), [279](#)
- flushmargin option (footmisc), [118](#), [119](#), [123](#), [731](#)
- FlushRight env. (ragged2e), [105](#)
- flushright env., [104](#), [146](#), [858](#)
  - (ragged2e), [105](#)
- FML font encoding (fourier), [392](#)
- FMS font encoding (fourier), [392](#)
- .fmt file extension, [8](#)
- fncychap package, [34](#), [35](#), [36](#)
- fncylab package, [71](#)
- fnpara package, [118](#)
- `\fnref` (tlc), [111](#)
- `\fnsymbol`, [110](#), [852](#), [853](#)
  - error using, [897](#)
  - (perpage), [121](#)
- fntguide.tex file, [423](#)
- folio-by-chapter page numbers, indexes, [665](#)
- `\font`, [30](#), [82](#), [387](#), [427](#), [428](#), [429](#)
- font key/option
  - (caption), [310](#), [316](#)
  - (subfig), [317](#), [318](#), [319](#)
- font commands
  - high level
    - combining, [343](#)
    - definition, [338](#)
    - emphasizing fonts, [341](#)
    - L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X 2.09, [347](#)
    - main document text, changing, [346](#), [347](#)
    - main document text, description, [338](#), [339](#)
    - monospaced font, [339](#)
    - overall document appearance, [346](#), [347](#)

font commands (*cont.*)

- sans serif fonts, 339
- selected words or phrases, [338](#)
- serifed fonts, 339
- sizing fonts, [342](#), [343](#)
- special characters, [345](#)
- standard families, 339
- standard series, 340
- standard shapes, 340, [341](#), [342](#)
- typewriter font, 339
- underlining text, 342
- vs. declarations, 344, [345](#)

in math, [351](#)

## low level

- automatic font substitution, 418
- definition, 412, 413
- encoding, 415, [417](#)
- family, 413
- series, 414
- setting font attributes, individual, 413–417
- setting font attributes, multiple, 417
- shape, 414
- size, 415
- within a document, 418

font definition files, 7, *see also* `.fd`font encoding, *see* output encoding

font memory errors, 917

font-loading options, 426–429

`fontdef.cfg` file, 431`\fontdimen`, 30, 82, [428](#), [429](#), 437`\fontdimen1`, 428`\fontdimen2`, [30](#), 51, [428](#), [429](#)`\fontdimen3`, [30](#), 82, 428`\fontdimen4`, [30](#), 428`\fontdimen5`, [387](#), [428](#)`\fontdimen6`, 428`\fontdimen7`, 428fontenc package, 7, 155, 156, [361](#), [362](#), 888

- changing `\encodingdefault`, 347

- error using, 889, 898

`\fontencoding`, [156](#), [345](#), [355](#), [367](#), 412, [413](#), [415](#), [417](#), [419](#), 430, [454](#), 571

- error using, 898

- (array), producing wrong output, 245

`\fontfamily`, [95](#), [355](#), [410](#), 412, [413](#), [417](#), [419](#)fontfamily key (`fancyvrb`), 155, [156](#), [167](#)

fontinst package, 88, 376, 419, 420, 437, 438, 971

`fontmath.ltx` file, 529fonts, *see also* math fonts; math symbols; text

- accented characters, 337, 357, [358](#), 359–361

- Almost European fonts, 356

- automatic substitution, 418

- backward compatibility, 463, 464

- bibliographies, 736, 737

- body, 338

fonts (*cont.*)changing, *see* font commands

classification, 372

CM Bright, 385, [386](#)

CM-Super fonts, 354–356, 570–983

Computer Modern (CM)

- ℒ<sub>TeX</sub> standard fonts, 353, 354, [355](#), [356](#), 357

- old-style numerals, 381, 382, [383](#)

Concrete, 383, [384](#), 385

DC fonts, 353

declaring, 421

decorative initials, [395](#), [396](#)defining for a document, *see* font commands, high leveldefining in a package, *see* font commands, low leveldefining in the preamble, *see* font commands, low level

displaying font tables, 369, 370

EC fonts, 353, 354, [355](#), [356](#)

emphasizing, 341

encoding, *see* encoding, languages and fonts

European Modern fonts, 355

EZ fonts, 356

## families

- classification, 372

- declaring, 421

- encodings, 336, 337

- low-level commands, 413

- modifying, 429

- shapes, 333–335

- sizes, 335, 336

float captions, 309, [310](#)for line numbers, 179, [180](#)Fourier-GUTenberg, [391–393](#)

Fraktur, 394–396

Gothic, 394–396

headed lists, 141

in typed text, 155, [156](#)

italic, 333

italic correction, 340, [341](#), [342](#)ℒ<sub>TeX</sub> 2.09, 347Latin Modern fonts, 356, [357](#)loading unnecessary `.tfms`, 343

low-level commands, 413

low-level interface, *see* font commands, low level

## main document text

- changing, 346, 347

- description, 338, 339

## math

- alphabet identifiers, 348, [349–351](#)

- automatic changes, 347, 348

- Baskerville Math, [520](#)

- Bitstream Charter Math, [520](#)

- CM Bright, [522](#)

- Computer Modern (CM), [513](#)



fonts (*cont.*)

- Concrete, [514](#)
- Euler, [396](#), [397-399](#), [514](#)
- font commands, [351](#)
- formula versions, [352](#), [353](#)
- Fourier-GUTenberg, [391-393](#), [515](#)
- Helvetica Math, [522](#)
- Info Math, [523](#)
- Lucida Math, [521](#)
- Palatino, [377](#), [378](#), [390](#), [391](#), [518](#)
- Palatino Math, [519](#)
- Pazo, [518](#)
- Pi, [378-381](#), [382](#)
- PXfonts, [518](#)
- scaling large operators, [368](#)
- Times Roman, [376](#), [377](#), [388](#), [389](#), [390](#), [516](#)
- TM Math, [517](#)
- TXfonts, [516](#)
- METAFONT, [334](#)
- modifying, [429](#)
- monospaced, [331](#), [332](#), [339](#), *see also* typed text
- NFSS, [327-329](#), *see also* PSNFSS
- normal, [338](#)
- oblique, [333-983](#)
- old German, [394](#), [395](#), [396](#)
- outline, [334](#)
- Pi, [382](#)
- PostScript fonts, [354](#), [355](#), *see also* PSNFSS
- printer points, [335](#)
- proportional, [331](#), [332](#)
- resizing, relative to original, [83](#), [84](#), [85](#)
- sans serif, [332](#), [339](#)
- scaling large operators, [368](#)
- Schwabacher, [394-396](#)
- searching PDF documents, [356](#)
- series, [340](#), [414](#)
- serifed, [332](#), [339](#)
- setting attributes, individual, [413-417](#)
- setting attributes, multiple, [417](#)
- setting up
  - declaration order, [439](#)
  - defining .fd files, [437-439](#)
  - dimensions, [428](#), [429](#)
  - empty size function, [423](#)
  - encoding schemes, declaring, [430](#)
  - example, [437-439](#)
  - families, declaring, [421](#)
  - families, modifying, [429](#)
  - fixed size function, [426](#)
  - font-loading options, [426-429](#)
  - for math use, [432-437](#)
  - gen size function, [424](#)
  - genb size function, [425](#)
  - hyphenation character, [427](#)
  - internal file organization, [431](#), [432](#)

fonts (*cont.*)

- naming scheme, [420](#)
- overview, [419](#)
- s size function, [424](#)
- sfixed size function, [426](#)
- sgen size function, [425](#)
- sgenb size function, [425](#)
- shape groups, [421-429](#)
- size, [422](#), [432](#)
- size functions, [423-426](#)
- size ranges, [422](#)
- ssub size function, [426](#)
- ssubf size function, [426](#)
- sub size function, [425](#)
- subf size function, [426](#)
- symbol fonts, [433-437](#)
- shaded, [334](#)
- shape groups, [421-429](#)
- shapes, [333](#), [334](#), [340](#), [341](#), [342](#), [414](#)
- size, [342](#)
  - description, [335](#), [336](#)
  - footnotes, [112](#)
  - low-level commands, [415](#)
  - measuring, [335](#), [336](#)
  - setting up, [422](#), [432](#)
  - standard sizes, [342](#), [343](#)
- size functions, [423-426](#)
- size ranges, [422](#)
- slanted, [333](#), [340](#)
- sloped, [333](#)
- small caps, [334](#), [341](#), [563](#)
- special characters, [345](#), *see also* text symbols
- specifying in tables, [244](#), [245](#)
- symbols, *see* text symbols; math symbols
- tables, displaying, [369](#), [370](#)
- text symbols, *see* text symbols
- tracing font selection, [368](#)
- typewriter, [339](#), [386](#), [387](#), [388](#), [834](#)
- underlining text, [342](#)
- upright, [333](#), [340](#)
- URW Antigua, [393](#), [394](#)
- URW Grotesk, [393](#), [394](#)
- weight, [334](#), [335](#)
- whitespace, [340](#), [341](#), [342](#)
- width, [334](#), [335](#)
- \fontseries, [156](#), [340](#), [412](#), [413](#), [414](#), [419](#)
- fontseries key (fancyvrb), [156](#)
- \fontshape, [156](#), [410](#), [412](#), [413](#), [414](#), [419](#)
- fontshape key (fancyvrb), [156](#)
- \fontsize, [41](#), [84](#), [343](#), [355](#), [371](#), [373](#), [408](#), [412](#), [413](#), [415](#), [417](#), [419](#), [464](#), [920](#)
- fontsize key (fancyvrb), [156](#), [166](#), [167](#)
- fonttext.cfg file, [829](#)
- fonttext.ltx file, [431](#), [432](#)
- \Football (marvosym), [401](#)

- `\footcite` (jurabib), 726, 728
- `\footcitet` (jurabib), 733
- `\footcitetitle` (jurabib), 726
- footer height, 201
- footers, *see* headers and footers
- `footexclude` option (typearea), 204
- `\footfullcite` (jurabib), 726, 732
- `footinclude` option (typearea), 204
- `footmisc` package, xxvii, 114–120, 122, 123
- `\footnote`, 110, 111, 113, 122, 123, 277
  - cross-reference to, 67
  - justification in, 104
  - style parameters, 112–114
    - (babel), 566
    - (fancyvrb), 167
    - (footmisc), 111, 118, 119
      - numbered using stars, 117
      - problems with consecutives, 120
      - typeset as marginal, 118, 119, 121
      - typeset run-in, 118–120
  - (longtable), 263
  - (manyfoot), 123, 124
  - (multicol), 189
  - (perpage), numbered per page, 121
  - (supertabular), 256
- footnote counter, 110, 121, 851, 934
  - (longtable), 263
- footnote citations, bibliographies, 726, 727, 728
- `\Footnote`(*suffix*) (manyfoot), 122, 123, 124
- `\footnote`(*suffix*) (manyfoot), 122
- `footnote`(*suffix*) counter (manyfoot), 122
- `\footnotedesign` (layouts), 202
- `\footnotediagram` (layouts), 202
- `\footnotemargin` rigid length (footmisc), 118, 119
- `\footnotemark`, 110, 111, 122, 277
- `\Footnotemark`(*suffix*) (manyfoot), 122
- `\footnotemark`(*suffix*) (manyfoot), 122
- `\footnoterule`, 112, 113, 119, 124, 285
  - (manyfoot), 124
- footnotes, *see also* endnotes; marginal notes
  - columns, 114, 183, 189
  - counters, resetting per-page, 120, 121
  - customizing, 112–114
  - font size, 112
  - in tables, 263, 277, 278, 279
  - in the margin, 118, 119
  - independent, 122, 123–125
  - main text vs. `minipage` env., 110, 111, 112–114
  - multilingual documents, 565, 566
  - multipage tables, 263
  - multiple at same point, 120
  - numbering, 112, 115, 116, 122, 123–125
  - page layout, 207
  - paragraph format, 117, 118
  - rules (graphic lines), 112, 119, 120
- footnotes (*cont.*)
  - schematic layout, 113
  - spacing from text, 112
  - standard, 110, 111, 112–114
  - styles, 114, 115, 116–120
  - superscript marks, 113, 114
  - symbols for, 116, 117
  - troubleshooting, 944, 945
  - two-column environment, 114, 115
  - typed text in, 167
  - vertical spacing, 112
- `\footnotesep` rigid length, 112, 113
- `footnotesep` key/option (geometry), 207
- `\footnotesize`, 112, 126, 144, 146, 342, 343, 373
  - `footnotesize` key value
    - (caption), 310
    - (subfig), 317
- `\footnotetext`, 110, 111, 122
- `\Footnotetext`(*suffix*) (manyfoot), 122, 123
- `\footnotetext`(*suffix*) (manyfoot), 122
- `footnpag` package, 116
- `\footrule` (fancyhdr), 224
- `\footrulewidth` (fancyhdr), 224, 226, 228
- `\footskip` length, 194, 196
  - `footskip` key/option (geometry), 209
- `\forall`, 501, 509, 528
  - `force` option (textcomp), 364
- `\forcefootnotes` (camel), 744
- `\foreignlanguage` (babel), 545, 546, 561, 563
- `\form` (euro), 98, 99
- formal rules (graphic lines), 269, 270, 271, 272
- format key/option
  - (caption), 309
  - (subfig), 316, 318
- `format.ins` file, 829, 830
- `format.name$` B<sup>B</sup>TeX built-in function, 808
- `formatcom` key (fancyvrb), 156, 163
- formulas, typesetting, *see* math fonts; math symbols
- `\ForwardToIndex` (marvosym), 401
- `founder` B<sup>B</sup>TeX field (jurabib), 742
- founder information, bibliographies, 742
- `\foundername` (jurabib), 742
- `fourier` package, xxvii, 371, 391–393, 515
- Fourier-GUTenberg font, 391–393, 515
- `\FourStar` (bbding), 403
- `fp` package, 96
- `FPfigure` env. (fltpage), 325, 326
- `FPtable` env. (fltpage), 325
- `\frac`, 474, 493, 494, 504, 506
- fractions, math symbols, 493, 494
- `\fracwithdelims` (amsxtra), 467
- fragile commands, 468, 892–894
- `\frail` (tlc), 893
- `\frakdefault` (yfonts), 396
- `\frakfamily` (yfonts), 394, 395, 396

- `\fraklines` (yfonts), [395](#), [396](#)
  - Fraktur font, [394–396](#)
  - `\frame`, [412](#)
  - frame key
    - (fancyvrb), [157](#), [158](#), [159](#), [165](#)
    - (listings), [173](#), [174](#), [175](#)
    - (titlesec), [38](#), [39](#), [40](#), [65](#)
  - frame option (crop), [212](#), [214](#)
  - `\framebox`, [326](#), [860](#), [861](#), [866](#)
    - (pspicture), [640](#)
  - frameround key (listings), [174](#)
  - framerule key
    - (fancyvrb), [158](#), [165](#)
    - (listings), [173–175](#)
  - frames, *see also* boxes; lines (graphic)
    - boxes, [595](#)
    - code listings, [173](#)
    - pages, [597](#), [598](#), [599](#)
    - typed text, [157](#), [158](#)
  - framesep key
    - (fancyvrb), [158](#), [159](#)
    - (listings), [173–175](#)
  - francais option (babel), [543](#)
  - French, [554](#), [561](#), [564](#), [590](#)
    - layout style, [565](#)
    - names, [563](#)
    - words, index sort order, [670](#)
  - french option (babel), [16](#), [100](#), [101](#), [543](#), [545](#), [549](#), [552](#), [554](#), [561](#), [563](#), [565](#), [566](#)
  - french package, [591](#), [970](#)
  - frenchb option (babel), [543](#)
  - frenchb.cfg file (babel), [589](#), [590](#)
  - frenchb.ldf file (babel), [548](#), [549](#), [591](#)
  - `\FrenchFootnotes` (babel), [565](#), [566](#)
  - `\FrenchLayout` (babel), [565](#)
  - `\frenchspacing`, [564](#)
  - Frequently Asked Questions (FAQ), [947](#)
  - `\from` (docstrip), [826](#), [827](#), [830](#), [831](#), [834](#)
  - `\frontmatter`, [22](#), [216](#)
  - `\frown`, [535](#)
  - `\Frown` (marvosym), [401](#)
  - ftnright package, [114](#), [176](#)
  - ftp servers
    - download commands, [952–954](#)
    - list of, [948](#)
  - full option
    - (textcomp), [362](#), [364](#), [384](#), [389](#), [390](#)
    - (trace), [946](#)
  - full citations in running text
    - author-date citation system, [710](#), [711](#)
    - short-title citation system, [723](#), [724–726](#)
  - `\fullcite` (jurabib), [723](#), [724](#), [729](#), [732](#)
  - fulloldstyle option (fourier), [393](#)
  - `\fullref`
    - (tlc), [69](#)
    - (varioref), [75](#)
    - FUNCTION B<sub>IB</sub>T<sub>E</sub>X command, [805](#), [807](#), [809–812](#)
    - function names, *see* operators; operator names
  - `\fussy`, [103](#)
  - fvr-b-ex package, [163](#)
  - `\fvset` (fancyvrb), [164](#), [165](#), [168](#), [169](#)
- ## G
- galician option (babel), [543](#), [556](#)
  - `\Game` (amssymb), [527](#)
  - `\Gamma`, [496](#), [527](#)
  - `\gamma`, [527](#)
  - gather env. (amsmath), [469](#), [473](#), [474](#), [475](#), [484](#), [488](#), [499](#)
    - error using, [895](#)
  - gather option (chapterbib), [747](#), [748](#), [749](#)
  - gather\* env. (amsmath), [469](#), [473](#), [475](#), [486](#), [492](#), [493](#), [501](#)
  - gathered env. (amsmath), [469](#), [477](#), [478](#)
    - error using, [895](#), [897](#)
  - `\GBP` (tlc), [98](#)
  - `\gcd`, [500](#)
  - `\ge`, [501](#), [532](#)
  - gen option (eurosym), [409](#)
  - gen size function, [424](#)
  - genb size function, [425](#)
  - gender B<sub>IB</sub>T<sub>E</sub>X field (jurabib), [690](#), [734](#), [735](#), [742](#)
  - gender information, bibliographies, [734](#), [735](#), [742](#)
  - generalizations, math symbols, [493](#), [494](#)
  - `\generalname` length (doc), [824](#)
  - `\generate` (docstrip), [826](#), [827](#), [830](#), [831](#)
  - `\geneuro` (eurosym), [409](#)
  - `\geneuronarrow` (eurosym), [409](#)
  - `\geneurowide` (eurosym), [409](#)
  - `\genfrac` (amsmath), [493](#), [494](#)
  - gennarrow option (eurosym), [409](#)
  - genwide option (eurosym), [409](#)
  - `\geometry` (geometry), [211](#)
  - geometry option (ifsym), [405](#)
  - geometry package, xxvii, [200](#), [206–211](#)
    - combined with calc, [210](#)
  - `\geq`, [501](#), [532](#)
    - (eulervm), [399](#)
  - `\geqq` (amssymb), [532](#)
  - `\geqslant` (amssymb), [532](#)
  - German
    - hyphenation, [553](#)
    - index sort order, [657](#), [668](#), [670](#)
    - quotation marks, [552](#)
    - shorthands, [551](#)
    - spacing after punctuations, [564](#)
  - german option
    - (babel), [16](#), [18](#), [395](#), [396](#), [543](#), [545](#), [546](#), [553](#), [657](#), [672](#)
    - (biblist), [774](#)
    - (varioref), [18](#)

- german.ldf file (babel), 548, 585
- germanb option (babel), 543
- \germanhyphenmins (babel), [586](#)
- \gets, 534
- \gg, 532
- \ggg (amssymb), 532
- \gggtr (amssymb), 532
- gгло.ist file (doc), 827
- ghostscript program, 370, [635](#), [642](#), [643](#), [969](#)
- ghostview program, 213, [628](#), [635](#)
- .gif file extension, 8, [642–644](#), [896](#)
- \gime1 (amssymb), 527
- gind.ist file (doc), 827
- Glenn option (fncychap), 34
- .glo file extension, [653](#)
  - (doc), [836](#)
- \global, [266](#)
- global options, 17, [880–883](#), [886](#)
- global variables, bibliographies, 805
- global.max\$ \BTeX built-in function, [812](#)
- globalcitecopy option (bibunits), 751
- \glossary, [653](#)
  - (doc), [817](#)
- glossary entries, makeindex processing, [653](#)
- \glossaryentry, [653](#)
- \GlossaryMin rigid length (doc), [823](#)
- \glossaryname (babel), 547
- \GlossaryParms (doc), [823](#)
- \GlossaryPrologue (doc), [823](#)
- \glue, 935, [936](#), [937](#)
- glyphs, *see* special characters; text symbols
- \gnapprox (amssymb), 532
- .gnd file extension, 8
- \gneq (amssymb), 532
- \gneqq (amssymb), 532
- \gnsim (amssymb), 532
- gobble key
  - (fancyvrb), [157](#), [164](#)
  - (listings), [172](#), [175](#)
- \gothfamily (yfonts), [394](#), [395](#)
- Gothic font, 394–396
- gpic program, 608
- graphic objects, *see also specific types of graphics*
  - resizing, [629](#), [630](#)
  - rotating, [630–634](#)
  - scaling, [628](#), [629](#)
- graphical front end, bibliographies, 784–787
- graphics package, 296, [613–618](#), [620](#), [624–631](#), 954, 969
  - error using, 889, 896, 897, 907–909, 913
  - loaded by lscape, 212
- graphics, device-dependent support
  - bounding box comments, 615
  - device drivers, 614
  - draft mode, 614, 615
  - final mode, 615
  - graphics, device-dependent support (*cont.*)
    - including image files
      - default key values, 623, 624
      - encapsulation, 627, 628
      - file extension, search order, 624, 625
      - file extension, specifying, 625
      - file location, 624
      - file name parsing, 620
      - full type, 625
      - \includegraphics (graphics), 616, [617](#), [618](#)
      - \includegraphics (graphicx), 618, 619, [620–623](#)
      - require full file name, 625
      - rotation, 620
      - scaling, 620
      - size of image, 620, 626
      - rotated material, hiding, 615
      - scaled material, hiding, 615
    - graphics.cfg file (graphics), 614
  - \graphicspath
    - (graphics), [624](#), 919
    - (graphicx), [624](#), 919
  - graphicx package, 613–615, 618–624, 631–633
    - error using, 889, 896, 897, 907–909, 913
  - graphpap package, 640
  - \graphpaper (graphpap), [640](#), [641](#)
  - graphs
    - bar charts, 612, [613](#)
    - combining curve and line types, 604, [605](#)
    - creating, 604–606
    - labeled axes, 606, 607
    - loading external data, 605, 606
- \grave, 529
  - grave accent (‘), shorthand character, [555](#)
  - greater than sign (>), shorthand character, [557](#)
  - Greek, [527](#), 554, 558, 561, 574, [575](#), [576](#)
  - greek option (babel), [543](#), [549](#), [550](#), [558](#), [562](#), [568](#), [574](#)
  - greek.ldf file (babel), 585
- \greekencoding (babel), 567
- \Greeknatural (babel), [562](#)
- \greeknumeral (babel), [562](#)
- \greetext (babel), 568
- grey option (changebar), 190
- \grid (epic), 606, [607](#)
- grmath package, 564
- group\_skip keyword (makeindex), 661
- grouping levels errors, 917, 918
- \Grtoday (babel), [558](#)
- \gtrapprox (amssymb), 532
- \gtrdot (amssymb), 530
- \gtreqless (amssymb), 532
- \gtreqqlless (amssymb), 532
- \gtrless (amssymb), 532
- \gtrsim (amssymb), 532
- guillemets, 552, [557](#)

- `\guillemotleft`, 458
- `\guillemotright`, 458
- `\guilsinglleft`, 458
- `\guilsinglright`, 458
- gunzip program, 626
- `\gvertneqq` (amssymb), 532
- H**
- H syntax
  - (fancyhdr), 226, 227
  - (float), 293, 294, 295
- `\H`, 457
- hands, symbols, 400, 401
- hang key (titlesec), 38, 39–41
- hang key value
  - (caption), 309
  - (subfig), 316, 318
- `\hangindent`, 679, 680
- harvard Bib<sub>T</sub>E<sub>X</sub> style (harvard), 811
- harvard package, 68, 700, 704, 792, 801
- Harvard citation system, 684, 689, *see also* author-date citations
- `\harvarditem` (harvard), 700, 701
- hash size errors, 918
- `\hat`, 495, 512, 529
  - (eulervm), 399
- `\hbadness`, 924, 928, 929
- `\hbar`
  - (amssymb), 527
  - (eulervm), 398
  - (euler), 398
- `\hbox`, 843, 860, 870, 928, 936
  - in T<sub>E</sub>X warning message, 924, 926, 928
  - problems using, 870
- Hcaption font, 577
- Hclassic font, 577
- `\hdashline` (arydshln), 267, 268
- `\hdots` (amsmath), 536
- `\hdotsfor` (amsmath), 487
- headed lists, 138, 139, 140, 143, 144
  - customizing, 141, 142, 143
  - font, 141
  - indentation, 141
  - proofs, 143, 144
  - punctuation, 141
  - QED (□) symbol, 143, 144
  - spacing, 141
  - style name, 141
  - style, defining, 140
- headers and footers
  - float pages, page styles, 231
  - footer height, 201
  - multipage tables, 256, 257, 261
  - running
    - formatting, *see* page styles
- headers and footers (*cont.*)
  - page layout, 207, 209
  - running headers/footers, 207, 209
- headers and footers, page styles, 221, 222
  - customizing
    - by floating objects, 231
    - by page style, 225–227, 228–230
    - globally, 224, 225
    - saving a customization, 230
  - dictionary type headers, 231, 232
  - float pages, 231
  - for two-sided printing, 223, 226
  - mark commands, 217, 218, 219, 220, 221, 229, 230
  - multiple text lines, 225
  - named, 230
  - rules (graphic lines), 224
  - truncating text, 232, 233
- headexclude option (typearea), 204
- `\headheight` rigid length, 194, 196, 197, 198, 872
  - (fancyhdr), 225
- headheight key/option (geometry), 206, 209
- headinclude option (typearea), 204, 205, 207
- heading\_prefix keyword (makeindex), 661, 662
- heading\_suffix keyword (makeindex), 661, 662
- `\headingdesign` (layouts), 202
- `\headingdiagram` (layouts), 202
- headings, *see* document headings
- headings page style, 222, 235, 236, 598
- headings\_flag keyword (makeindex), 661, 662
- `\headrule` (fancyhdr), 224, 225, 227
- `\headrulewidth` (fancyhdr), 224, 226, 228, 230, 231
- heads option (endfloat), 290
- `\headsep` rigid length, 194, 196, 198, 200, 872, 935
- headsep key/option (geometry), 209
- `\headtoname` (babel), 547
- `\headwidth` rigid length (fancyhdr), 227, 233
- `\heartsuit`, 528
- heavycircles option, 529
  - (stmaryrd), 531
- `\heavyrulewidth` rigid length (booktabs), 270
- hebcal package, 558
- `\hebdate` (babel), 558, 559
- `\hebdays` (babel), 558, 559
- hebfont package, 578
- Hebrew, 576, 577, 578, 579, 591
- `\hebrew` (babel), 559
- hebrew option (babel), 543, 568
- `\hebrewencoding` (babel), 567
- `\Hebrewtoday` (hebcal), 559
- height, *see* space parameters
- `\height`, 861, 862, 866
  - (graphics), 630
- height key (graphicx), 109, 619, 621–623
  - error using, 898
- height key/option (geometry), 207, 208, 211

- height option (crop), 213
- height syntax, [227](#), [867](#), [868](#)
- heightrounded key/option (geometry), [207](#), [208](#)
- \help (nfssfont.tex), 369
- help resources
  - CTAN
    - CD-ROM, 948, 949
    - contents, 948
    - ftp commands, 952–954
    - ftp servers, list of, 948
    - web access, 950
  - DANTE FAQ, 947
  - FAQs, 947
  - ftp servers
    - download commands, 952–954
    - list of, 948
  - news groups, 948
  - packages
    - descriptions, on-line catalogue, 950
    - documentation, finding, 954–956
  - program files, obtaining
    - CD-ROM, 948, 949
    - ftp, 948, 952–954
    - web access, 950
  - texdoc program, 954, 955
  - texdoctk program, 955, 956
  - TUG home page, 948
  - UK-TUG FAQ, 947
  - user groups, 956–958
- helvet package, [370](#), [371](#), [373](#), [424](#)
- helvetica key value (fancyvrb), 155, [156](#)
- Helvetica font, 370, 375, [522](#)
  - in math and text, [522](#)
- here package, 294
- hetarom package, 613
- \hfil, [223](#), [850](#)
- \hfill, 148, [150](#), [856](#), [857](#), [861](#), [863](#)
- \hfuzz rigid length, 939
- hfuzz key (fancyvrb), 157
- \hhline (hhline), [266](#), [267](#)
- hhline package, 266, 267
- hiderotate option
  - (graphics), 615
  - (graphicx), 615
- hidescale option
  - (graphics), 615
  - (graphicx), 615
- highlighting text, *see* italic; underlining
- hiresbb key (graphicx), 619
- hiresbb option
  - (graphics), 615
  - (graphicx), 615
- history commands, list of, 820–824
- \hl (soul), [88](#), [92](#)
- \hline, 243, [266](#), 267, [268](#), [272–274](#), [276](#), [282](#)
  - alignment problems with, 280
  - colored, [265](#)
  - error using, 904
  - (array), [244–247](#), [249](#), [250](#), 280
  - (booktabs), 269
  - (hhline), 266, 267
  - (supertabular), 257
  - (tabs), [269](#)
- hmargin key/option (geometry), 211
- hmarginratio key/option (geometry), [208](#), [209](#), 211
- \Hmjd (tlc), 506
- hmode boolean, 875
- \hodiau (babel), [558](#)
- \hodiaun (babel), [558](#)
- \hoffset rigid length, [196](#), [199](#), 203, 210
- hoffset key/option (geometry), 210
- holes, in paragraphs, [108](#), [109](#)
- \hom, 500
- \hookleftarrow, [533](#), [534](#)
- \hookrightarrow, 534
- horizontal extensions, math symbols, [497](#), [499](#)
- howcited B<sub>A</sub>T<sub>E</sub>X field (jurabib), 723, 742
- howcited key/option (jurabib), [722](#), [723](#), 742
- \howcitedprefix (jurabib), [723](#)
- \howcitedsuffix (jurabib), [723](#)
- howpublished B<sub>A</sub>T<sub>E</sub>X field, [690](#), [763](#), [765](#)
- \hphantom, 505
- \HR (tlc), [600](#), [616](#), [617](#), [863–865](#)
- \HRule (tlc), [858](#)
- \hrule, 112, [227](#), 267, [867](#), [868](#)
  - in headings, [31](#)
- \hrulefill, [242](#), [856](#), [857](#)
- hscale key/option (geometry), [208](#), 211
- \hsize rigid length (tabularx), [252](#)
- \hslash
  - (amssymb), 527
  - (eulerm), [398](#)
  - (euler), [398](#)
- \hspace, [131](#), [148](#), 151, 507, [508](#), 513, [694](#), [856](#), [857](#), 861
  - allowing hyphenation, [83](#), [127](#), [246](#), [247](#), [249](#), [250](#)
  - error using, 903
- \hspace\*, [849](#), [856](#)
- \Hsub (tlc), [31](#)
- HTML files, of bibliographies, 776, [777](#), 789
- \Huge, 342, 343
- \huge, 146, [342](#), [343](#)
- humanbio B<sub>A</sub>T<sub>E</sub>X style, 792
- humannat B<sub>A</sub>T<sub>E</sub>X style, 792
- hungarian option (babel), 543, [555](#)
- \Hut (ifsym), [405](#)
- hvams package, 523
- hvmath package, 523
- hyperlinking cross-references, 78

- hyperref package, 78, 175, 643, 701, 706
    - incompatible with notoccite, 698
  - hyphen (-), nonbreaking, 83, 93
  - hyphen.tex file (babel), 581
  - hyphenate option (truncate), 233
  - hyphenation
    - character, defining, 427
    - cultural aspects, 542
    - defining dynamically, 542
    - document headings, 31
    - in multiple languages, 546, 580, 581
    - in tables, 246
    - Italian, 563
    - language aspects, 541
    - patterns, adjusting, 586
    - patterns, applying, 545
    - preventing, 545
    - special rules, 553
    - troubleshooting, 940
  - \hyphenation, 940
    - error using, 902, 907, 917
  - \hyphenchar, 427
  - \hyphenpenalty, 942
  - hyphenrules env. (babel), 545
  - hyphens option (url), 95
- I**
- I syntax (paralist), 133
  - \i, 458
    - (tipa), 406
  - i syntax (paralist), 132, 133, 134, 135, 137
  - ibidem key value (jurabib), 735, 740, 797
  - ibidem key/option (jurabib), 727, 728, 729-731, 734
  - ibidem citations, 728-731, 740
  - ibidemalt key value (jurabib), 740
  - \ibidemmidname (jurabib), 734
  - \ibidemname (jurabib), 734
  - icelandic option (babel), 543, 563, 567
  - idem key/option (jurabib), 730, 731, 735
  - \idemPfname (jurabib), 735
  - \idemPfname (jurabib), 735
  - \idemPmname (jurabib), 735
  - \idemPmname (jurabib), 735
  - \idemPnname (jurabib), 735
  - \idemPnname (jurabib), 735
  - \idemSfname (jurabib), 735
  - \idemsfname (jurabib), 735
  - \idemSmname (jurabib), 735
  - \idemsname (jurabib), 735
  - \idemSname (jurabib), 735
  - \idemsname (jurabib), 735
  - identification part, 877-880
  - identifierstyle key (listings), 170
  - \idotsint (amsmath), 492
  - .idx file extension, 7, 8, 648, 650, 655, 874
    - errors when reading, 658, 659
    - (doc), 836
    - (index), 681, 682
    - (xindy), 673
  - \idxitem (tlc), 232
  - \ie (tlc), 80
  - \IeC (inputenc), 445
  - ieeetr  $\LaTeX$  style, 792
  - \IF (algorithmic), 168
    - if\$  $\LaTeX$  built-in function, 808, 809-812
  - \ifbottomfloat (fancyhdr), 231
  - \ifcase, 899
  - \ifdim, 905
  - \iffalse, 814
  - \IfFileExists, 879, 884
  - \iffloatpage (fancyhdr), 231
  - \iffootnote (fancyhdr), 231
  - \iflanguage (babel), 546
  - \ifmmode, 446
  - \ifnum, 905
  - ifsym package, 403-405
  - ifsym.ps file (ifsym), 403
  - ifthen package, 872-877
  - \ifthenelse (ifthen), 72, 73, 150, 157, 198, 199, 232, 307, 680, 692, 873, 874-877, 886, 893
    - comparing numbers, 852, 873
    - error using, 905
  - \iftopfloat (fancyhdr), 231
  - \ifToplevel (docstrip), 828
  - \ifix, 828
    - ignored fields, bibliography database, 762
    - ignorehead key/option (geometry), 209
    - ignoremp key/option (geometry), 211
  - \ignorespaces, 146, 147
  - \iiiint (amsmath), 492
  - \iiint (amsmath), 492
  - \iint (amsmath), 492
  - \ij, 591
  - .ilg file extension, 8
    - (makeindex), 648, 655, 658
  - \Im, 527
    - image files, including, 616, 617-623
      - encapsulation, 627, 628
      - file extension, search order, 624, 625
      - file extension, specifying, 625
      - file location, 624
      - file name parsing, 620
      - full type, 625
      - require full file name, 625
      - rotation, 620
      - scaling, 620
      - size of image, 620, 626
    - images, in paragraphs, 108, 109
  - \imath, 527, 529

- `\in`, [475](#), [501](#), [533](#)
  - (euro), [98](#)
- in key value (jurabib), [717](#), [723](#), [724](#)
- inbook  $\LaTeX$  entry type, [763](#), [765](#), [772](#)
  - (jurabib), [743](#)
- `\include`, [18](#), [19](#), [49](#), [835](#), [919](#), [921](#)
  - error using, [902](#)
  - problems with TOC entries, [49](#)
  - warning using, [925](#)
  - (chapterbib), [747](#), [748](#)
  - (excludeonly), [20](#)
  - (index), [681](#)
- includeall key/option (geometry), [207](#), [211](#)
- includefoot key/option (geometry), [207](#)
- `\includegraphics`
  - (graphics), [616](#), [617](#), [618](#), [624](#)–[626](#), [628](#)
  - error using, [896](#)
  - graphics not found, [899](#)
  - (graphicx), [109](#), [213](#), [214](#), [303](#), [614](#), [615](#), [618](#), [620](#)–[623](#), [624](#)–[627](#)
  - error using, [896](#), [898](#)
- `\includegraphics*`
  - (graphics), [616](#), [617](#)
  - (graphicx), [618](#)
- includehead key/option (geometry), [206](#), [207](#)
- includeheadfoot key/option (geometry), [207](#)
- includemp key/option (geometry), [206](#), [207](#), [210](#)
- `\includeonly`, [18](#), [19](#), [681](#)
  - (excludeonly), [20](#)
- including files, *see also* excluding files
  - candidates for, [19](#)
  - image files, *see* image files, including
  - partial document reformatting, [19](#)
  - reasons for, [19](#)
  - source documentation, [835](#)
- inclusion and sets, math symbols, [533](#)
- inclusion and sets—negated, math symbols, [533](#)
- incollecion  $\LaTeX$  entry type, [763](#), [765](#)
  - (jurabib), [743](#)
- incrementing counters, [852](#)
- .ind file extension, [8](#), [648](#)
  - (index), [682](#)
  - (makeindex), [648](#), [655](#), [658](#), [669](#)
  - errors when writing, [658](#)
  - (xindy), [648](#), [673](#)
- `\indent` (picinpar), [108](#)
- indent\_length keyword (makeindex), [661](#)
- indent\_space keyword (makeindex), [661](#)
- indentafter option (titlesec), [40](#)
- indentation
  - after headings, [32](#), [40](#), [565](#)
  - bibliographies, [738](#), [739](#)
  - code listings, [172](#)
  - enumerated lists, [137](#)
  - headed lists, [141](#)
  - indentation (*cont.*)
    - of headings, [28](#), [39](#)
    - of headings, suppressing, [32](#), [39](#)
    - tables of contents, [51](#), [59](#)
    - typed text, removing, [157](#)
- indentfirst package, [32](#), [565](#)
- indentation key/option (caption), [309](#), [313](#)
- independent footnotes, [122](#), [123](#)–[125](#)
- `\Index` (tlc), [653](#)
- `\index`, [339](#), [648](#), [649](#), [650](#), [651](#)–[654](#), [655](#), [664](#)–[666](#), [874](#)
  - (index), [681](#), [682](#)
- index package, [665](#), [681](#), [682](#), [701](#)
- index commands, list of, [820](#)–[824](#)
- index files, [7](#)
- index generation
  - $\LaTeX$  commands, indexing, [654](#), [669](#)
  - author indexes, [681](#)
  - automatic indexing, disabling, [817](#)
  - bibliographic citations, indexing automatically, [709](#), [720](#), [721](#)
  - blanks, [650](#), [655](#), [666](#), [669](#)
  - case sensitivity, [650](#)
  - citations, indexing automatically, [709](#), [720](#), [721](#)
  - column breaks, [680](#)
  - commands, indexing automatically, [817](#), [836](#)
  - consistency, [666](#), [667](#)
  - cross-references
    - creating, [651](#)
    - verifying, [667](#)
  - Cyrillic alphabet, [573](#)
  - debugging messages, [675](#)
  - entries, creating automatically, [817](#), [836](#)
  - entries, printing in margin, [680](#)
  - error messages
    - list of, [658](#), [659](#)
    - makeindex, [658](#), [659](#)
    - suppressing, [657](#), [668](#), [674](#)
  - formatting
    - page numbers, [651](#), [652](#)
    - with  $\LaTeX$ , [679](#), [680](#), [682](#)
    - with makeindex, [654](#)–[666](#)
    - with xindy, [666](#)–[679](#)
  - French words, sort order, [670](#)
  - generating formatted index
    - makeindex, [655](#)
    - xindy, [668](#), [669](#)
  - generating raw index, [649](#)
  - German words, sort order, [657](#), [668](#), [670](#)
  - glossary entries, processing, [653](#)
  - in tables of contents, [48](#)
  - index level separator, [651](#)
  - indxcite, [680](#)
  - input files, specifying, [655](#), [668](#)
  - input style parameters, [660](#)
  - leader dots, [664](#)



- index generation (*cont.*)
- leading blanks, 650, 655, 666, 669
  - letter groups, 662, 677
  - letter-by-letter sort order, 657, 668
  - location classes, 677, 678
  - location formatting, 678
  - macros, indexing automatically, 817, 836
  - merge rules, 673, 676
  - messages, suppressing, 657, 668, 674
  - multiple indices, 681, 682
  - non-English words, 666, **669–671**
  - output files, specifying, 655, 657, 668, 674
  - output style parameters, 661
  - page breaks, 680
  - page numbers
    - composed (folio-by-chapter), 665
    - duplicates, 650
    - encapsulating, 652, 671, 672
    - formatting, 651, 652
    - makeindex, 664, 665
    - roman numerals, 666, 677
    - sort order, 657, 664, 678, 679
    - xindy, 678, 679
  - page ranges
    - disabling, 657, 668, 672, 677
    - limiting length, 677
  - process flow, 648, 673
  - progress messages, suppressing, 657, 668, 674
  - quiet mode, 657, 668, 674
  - repeatindex, 680
  - roman numerals
    - sort order, 666
    - suppressing page ranges, 677
  - showidx, 680
  - sort order
    - French words, 670
    - German words, 657, 668, 670
    - letter-by-letter, 657, 668
    - page numbers, 657, 664, 678, 679
    - roman numerals, 666
    - spaces, 666
    - Spanish words, 670
    - special cases, 667
    - symbols, 666, 667
    - troubleshooting, 665, 666
    - xindy rules, 673, 677
  - spaces
    - compressing, **650**, 655, 666, 669
    - sort order, 666
  - Spanish words, sort order, 670
  - special characters, **652**, **653**, 654, 662
  - stand-alone indices, 659–662
  - standard input/output files, 655, 668
  - starting page number, setting, 657, 662
- index generation (*cont.*)
- style files
    - makeindex, 658–665
    - specifying, 658
    - xindy, 673–679
  - subentries, 650, 651
  - symbols, sort order, 666, 667
  - table of contents support, 681
  - technical indices, 667
  - tocbibind, 680
  - trailing blanks, **650**, 655, 666, 669
  - transcript file, specifying, 658, 668
  - troubleshooting, 665, 666
  - unifying index entries, 676
  - user commands, defining, 653, 654
  - verbose mode, 675
  - index level separator, 651
  - `\index*` (index), 681
    - indexed key value (jurabib), 720
  - `\indexentry`, 649, 653, **660**, **874** (natbib), **709**
  - `\IndexInput` (doc), 818, 821
  - `\IndexMin rigid length` (doc), 822
  - `\indexname`, **34**, **679**, **680** (babel), **547**, **549**, **550**
  - `\IndexParms` (doc), 822
  - `\IndexPrologue` (doc), 822
  - `\indexproofstyle` (index), 681
  - `\Indextt` (tlc), **653**
    - Indian, 592
  - indxcite package, 681
  - `\inf`, 491, **500**
  - Info Math font in math and text, **523**
  - infomath package, 523
  - informational messages, 920–931, *see also* troubleshooting
    - infoshow option
      - (multicol), **188**
      - (tlc), 880
      - (tracefnt), 368
  - `\infty`, **491**, **492**, **500**, **501**, **528**
  - `\init` (nfssfont.tex), **369**, 370
  - `\initfamily` (yfonts), 396
  - initial code part, 880
  - `\initiate@active@char` (babel), **589**, **590**
  - `\injlil` (amsmath), 500
  - inner key/option (geometry), 208
  - innerbars option (changebar), 190
  - innerbody option (sidecap), 323
  - innercaption option (sidecap), 323
  - inparadesc env. (paralist), **136**, 138
  - inparaenum env. (paralist), **132**
  - inparaitem env. (paralist), 135
  - `\inplus` (stmaryrd), 533
  - inproceedings B<sub>M</sub>T<sub>E</sub>X entry type, **690**, **763**

- `\input`, 20, 432, 835, 884, 919
  - error using, 899
  - (docstrip), [826](#), 829
- input commands, list of, 820–983
- input encoding, [329](#), [330](#), 357, [358](#), 359–361, 443–447
- input files
  - indexes, 655, 668
  - source files, 6
  - specifying, 826, 827
- input style parameters, indexes, 660
- inputenc package, 7, 175, 329, [357–361](#), [443–447](#), 571, 578
  - combined with listings, 175
  - error using, 889, 903
  - required for icelandic, 566
  - restrictions with keys, 66
- `\inputencoding` (inputenc), [360](#), [361](#), [417](#), 571
  - inputencoding key (listings), 175
- `\InputIfFileExists`, [879](#), [881](#), [884](#)
- `.ins` file extension, [825](#)
  - (docstrip), 825
  - (doc), 814
- `\insert`, 917
  - install-pkg.sh program, 961
  - install-tl.sh program, 960
  - installation support, adding, 830–833
  - institution BibTeX field, 763, 765
- `\int`, 536
  - sub/superscript placement on, [491](#), [492](#)
  - (relsize), using larger symbol, [85](#)
- `int.to.chr$` BibTeX built-in function, 808
- `int.to.str$` BibTeX built-in function, 808
- INTEGERS BibTeX command, 805, [807](#)
- integral signs, multiple, [492](#)
- `\intercal` (amssymb), 530
- `\interleave` (stmaryd), 530
- interlingua option (babel), 543
- internal files, 7
- internal tables, overflowing, 917–919
- `\internallinenumbers` (lineno), [177](#)
- `\internallinenumbers*` (lineno), [177](#)
- international documents, *see* multilingual documents
- International Phonetic Alphabet (IPA), 405, [406](#), [407](#)
- International Standard Book Number (ISBN), 710
- International Standard Serial Number (ISSN), 710
- Internet resources, bibliographies, 773, 774
- interrupting displays, [479](#)
- `\intertext` (amsmath), [479](#)
- `\Interval` (ifsym), [404](#)
- `\intertextsep` length, 285
  - (wrapfig), 300
- `intlimits` option (amsmath), 491
- `invert` option (crop), 214
- `\iota`, 527
  - IPA env. (tipa), [406](#)
  - IPA (International Phonetic Alphabet), 405, [406](#), [407](#)
  - irish option (babel), 543
- `\IroningII` (marvosym), [401](#)
- `is-abbrev` BibTeX style, 792
- `is-alpha` BibTeX style, [778](#), [792](#)
- `is-plain` BibTeX style, 792
- `is-unsrtd` BibTeX style, 792
- `isbn` BibTeX field, [690](#), 764, [772](#), [779](#)
  - (BibTexMng), 789
  - (custom-bib), 802
  - (natbib), 710
- ISBN (International Standard Book Number), 710
- `\iscurrentchapter` (tlc), [72](#)
- `\iso` (euro), 98
  - iso88595 option (inputenc), 571
- `\isodd` (ifthen), [157](#), [876](#)
- `issn` BibTeX field, [690](#)
  - (BibTexMng), 789
  - (custom-bib), 802
  - (natbib), 710
- ISSN (International Standard Serial Number), 710
- `.ist` file extension, 8
  - (makeindex), [648](#), 659
- `\it`, [347](#), 464
  - used in math, 349, 464
- it key value
  - (caption), [310](#), [311](#), [313](#), [324](#)
  - (subfig), [316](#), [318](#)
- it option (titlesec), [37](#)
- italian option (babel), 543, [544](#), [839](#)
- italic key value (jurabib), [718](#), [720](#), [733](#), 737
- italic correction, 340, [341](#), [342](#)
- italic font shape, 333
- ItalicNums option (parallel), 183
- ITC Bookman font, 374
- `\itdefault`, 346
- `\item`, [128–131](#), 144–146, [147–151](#), 167, 849, 858, [875](#)
  - error using, 903, 910
  - in theindex, [679](#), 680
  - (fancybox), [600](#)
  - (threeparttable), [278](#)
  - item\_0 keyword (makeindex), 661
  - item\_01 keyword (makeindex), 661
  - item\_1 keyword (makeindex), 661
  - item\_12 keyword (makeindex), 661
  - item\_2 keyword (makeindex), 661
  - item\_x1 keyword (makeindex), 661
  - item\_x2 keyword (makeindex), 661
- `\itemindent` rigid length, [145](#), [147](#), 148, [151](#)
- itemize env., [128](#), 135, 364, 600
  - error using, 911
  - style parameters, 128
  - (babel), [565](#)
  - (paralist), 136

- itemized lists
    - default settings, [136](#), [137](#), [138](#)
    - extensions, [135](#), [136](#)
    - standard, [128](#)
  - \itemsep length, [145](#), [707](#)
  - ITERATE  $\LaTeX$  command, [806](#), [807](#)
  - \itshape, [340](#), [341](#), [344](#), [346](#), [408](#), [464](#)
    - used in math, [348](#), [350](#)
- J**
- J syntax (tabulary), [254](#)
  - \j, [451](#), [458](#)
    - problems in T1, [417](#)
  - JabRef program, [789](#)
  - \JackStar (bding), [403](#)
  - \JackStarBold (bding), [403](#)
  - Japanese, [592](#)
  - jas99  $\LaTeX$  style (chicago), [700](#)
  - Java database manager, [787](#)–[789](#)
  - \jbactualauthorfont (jurabib), [718](#), [736](#)
  - \jbactualauthorfontifannotator (jurabib), [718](#)
  - \jbannotatorfont (jurabib), [736](#)
  - \jbannotefont (jurabib), [740](#), [741](#)
  - \jbauthorfont (jurabib), [736](#)
  - \jbauthorfontifannotator (jurabib), [736](#)
  - \jbauthorindexfont (jurabib), [721](#)
  - \jbbfsasep (jurabib), [736](#)
  - \jbbibhang rigid length (jurabib), [739](#)
  - \jbbstasep (jurabib), [736](#)
  - \jbbtasep (jurabib), [736](#)
  - \jbcitationyearformat (jurabib), [733](#)
  - JBibtexManager program, [787](#), [788](#)
  - \jbindexbib (jurabib), [721](#)
  - \jbindextype (jurabib), [721](#)
  - \jbnovarioref (jurabib), [727](#)
  - \jbtitelfont (jurabib), [736](#)
  - \jbuseidemhrule (jurabib), [740](#), [797](#)
  - \jbyearaftertitle (jurabib), [733](#)
  - \jmath, [527](#), [529](#)
    - (mathptmx), unavailable with, [377](#)
  - jmb  $\LaTeX$  style (jmb), [791](#), [792](#)
  - jmb package, [792](#)
  - \jobname, [754](#)
  - \Joch (ifsym), [405](#)
  - \Join
    - (amssymb), [535](#)
    - (latsym), [464](#)
  - \joinrel, [535](#)
  - \jot rigid length (multirow), [273](#)
  - journal  $\LaTeX$  field, [763](#), [765](#), [770](#)
  - jox  $\LaTeX$  style (jurabib), [742](#), [792](#)
  - .jpeg file extension, [642](#), [643](#)
  - .jpg file extension, [8](#), [896](#)
  - \jput (epic), [604](#), [605](#), [606](#)
  - jtb  $\LaTeX$  style, [792](#)
  - jura.bib file (tlc), [717](#), [776](#)
  - jurabib  $\LaTeX$  style
    - (bibtopic), [755](#)
    - (jurabib), [717](#)–[721](#), [723](#)–[741](#), [742](#), [764](#), [785](#), [792](#), [797](#)
  - jurabib package, xxvi, [715](#)–[743](#), [745](#), [792](#)
    - compatibility matrix, [746](#)
    - installation possibilities, [831](#)
  - jurabib.cfg file (jurabib), [741](#)
    - used for this book, [716](#)
  - \jurabibsetup (jurabib), [716](#), [717](#)–[724](#), [726](#)–[735](#), [740](#), [741](#)
  - jureco  $\LaTeX$  style (jurabib), [742](#), [792](#)
  - jurunsrt  $\LaTeX$  style (jurabib), [739](#), [742](#), [792](#)
  - justification
    - document headings, [31](#)
    - float captions, [311](#)
    - paragraphs, [102](#), [103](#), [104](#), [105](#), [106](#)
  - justification key/option
    - (caption), [301](#), [311](#), [313](#), [323](#)
    - (subfig), [316](#), [318](#)
  - justified key value (caption), [311](#)
  - justify env. (ragged2e), [106](#)
  - \justifying (ragged2e), [106](#)
  - \JustifyingParfillskip length (ragged2e), [106](#)
  - \JustifyingParindent rigid length (ragged2e), [106](#)
- K**
- \k, [452](#), [458](#), [567](#)
  - \kappa, [527](#)
  - keepaspectratio key (graphicx), [619](#), [622](#), [623](#)
  - keeping material on same page, [234](#), *see also* floats
  - KeepShorthandsActive option (babel), [581](#)
  - \keepsilent (docstrip), [828](#)
  - \Ker (tlc), [466](#)
  - \ker, [500](#)
    - kernel errors, *see* troubleshooting
  - key  $\LaTeX$  field, [764](#), [765](#), [779](#), [795](#)
  - \Keyboard (marvosym), [401](#)
  - keys, *see also* arguments
    - bibliographies
      - adding to bibliography listing, [778](#)
      - case sensitivity, [762](#)
      - definition, [761](#)
      - extracting, [778](#)
      - generating, [782](#), [783](#)
      - removing duplicates, [780](#), [787](#)
      - searching by strings, [775](#)
    - displaying, [68](#)
    - extracting RCS information, [837](#), [838](#)–[983](#)
    - naming, [842](#)
    - parsing \$Id\$ keyword, [838](#), [839](#)
  - keyval package, [206](#), [308](#), [623](#)
  - keyword  $\LaTeX$  field (printbib), [776](#)
  - keyword keyword (makeindex), [653](#), [660](#)
  - keywords  $\LaTeX$  field (BibTeXMng), [789](#)
  - keywordstyle key (listings), [170](#), [171](#), [172](#)

- `\kill`, [241](#), [242](#)
  - (longtable), [261](#)
- kluwer B<sup>B</sup>L<sub>A</sub>T<sub>E</sub>X style (harvard), [700](#), [792](#)
- koi8-r option (inputenc), [358](#), [417](#), [570](#), [571](#)
- KOMA-Script classes, [236](#), [237](#)
- Korean, [592](#)
- kuvio package, [488](#), [980](#)
- L**
- L syntax
  - (fancyhdr), [225](#), [226-230](#)
  - (tabulary), [254](#)
  - (tlc), [248](#)
- `\L`, [457](#)
  - (babel), [568](#)
    - producing geminated L, [552](#)
  - (pxfonts), problems with, [390](#)
  - (txfonts), problems with, [389](#)
- `\l`, [458](#), [567](#)
  - (babel), producing geminated l, [552](#)
  - (pxfonts), problems with, [390](#)
  - (txfonts), problems with, [389](#)
- l syntax, [243](#), [244](#), [245](#)
  - (array), [249](#)
- L.. font encoding, [416](#), [430](#)
- `\l@{language}` (babel), [546](#), [579](#), [580](#)
- `\l@chapter`, [50](#)
- `\l@english` (babel), [580](#)
- `\l@example` (tlc), [55](#)
- `\l@figure`, [50](#), [53](#), [54](#)
- `\l@paragraph`, [50](#)
- `\l@part`, [50](#)
- `\l@section`, [50](#)
- `\l@subfigure` (subfig), [320](#)
- `\l@subparagraph`, [50](#)
- `\l@subsection`, [50](#), [52](#)
- `\l@subsubsection`, [50](#), [52](#)
- `\l@subtable` (subfig), [320](#)
- `\l@table`, [50](#), [53](#), [54](#)
- `\label`, [26](#), [66](#), [67](#), [69](#), [71-73](#), [111](#), [121](#), [130](#), [178](#), [215](#), [307](#), [853](#), [876](#), [918](#), [927](#)
  - causing extra space, [859](#)
  - error using, [894](#), [906](#)
  - problems using, [26](#), [67](#), [85](#), [852](#)
  - restrictions on key, [66](#), [842](#)
  - strange results with, [26](#)
  - warning using, [924](#), [928](#)
  - (amsmath), [473](#), [482](#), [485](#)
  - (babel), [66](#)
  - (fancyvrb), [161](#)
  - (longtable), [262](#)
  - (paralist), [132](#), [133](#)
  - (prettyref), [75](#), [76](#)
  - (showkeys), [68](#)
  - (subfig), [316](#), [318](#), [319](#)
- `\label` (*cont.*)
  - (subfloat), [322](#), [323](#)
  - (textcase), [86](#)
    - problems using, [85](#)
  - (titleref), [77](#)
  - (varioref), [71](#)
  - (wrapfig), [300](#)
  - (xr), [78](#)
- label key
  - (fancyvrb), [158](#), [159](#)
  - (listings), [174](#)
- `\labelenumi`, [129](#), [130](#), [131](#), [854](#)
- `\labelenumii`, [129](#), [130](#), [854](#)
- `\labelenumiii`, [130](#), [854](#)
- `\labelenumiv`, [130](#), [854](#)
- labelfont key/option
  - (caption), [301](#), [306](#), [310](#), [311](#), [313](#), [324](#)
  - (subfig), [316](#)
- `\labelformat` (varioref), [69](#), [71](#), [72](#), [75](#), [130](#), [727](#)
- labelformat key/option
  - (caption), [310](#), [311](#), [313](#), [314](#)
  - (subfig), [316](#), [317](#)
- `\labelitemi`, [128](#), [365](#)
- `\labelitemii`, [128](#)
- `\labelitemiii`, [128](#)
- `\labelitemiv`, [128](#)
- labelposition key (fancyvrb), [158](#), [159](#)
- labels
  - chart axes, [606](#), [607](#)
  - equations, *see* tags
  - float captions, [310](#), [311](#), [313](#), [314](#)
  - format, cross-references, [71](#), [72](#), [73-75](#)
  - format, document headings, [38](#)
- `\labelsep` rigid length, [131](#), [138](#), [145](#), [148](#), [151](#), [241](#), [850](#)
- labelsep key/option
  - (caption), [310](#), [311](#), [313](#), [314](#), [324](#)
  - (subfig), [316](#)
- labelstoglobalaux option (bibunits), [753](#)
- `\labelwidth` rigid length, [145](#), [147-151](#), [850](#)
- `\Lambda`, [527](#)
- `\lambda`, [479](#), [500](#), [527](#)
- `\land`, [530](#)
- landscape env. (lscape), [212](#)
- landscape key/option (geometry), [206](#), [207](#), [211](#)
- landscape option, [887](#), [888](#)
  - (crop), [213](#)
  - (typearea), [204](#), [205](#)
- landscape mode, [211](#), [212](#)
- `\langle`, [498](#), [537](#)
- language
  - and typesetting, [541](#)
  - current, setting/getting, [544](#), [545](#), [546](#)
  - defining, [584](#), [585](#)
  - identifying, [582](#)
- `\language`, [544](#)

- language `BIBTeX` field
  - (BibTeXMng), 789
  - (custom-bib), 802
  - (jurabib), 717, 734
- language key (listings), 170, 171–175
- language attributes, 549, 550
- language definition files
  - adding definitions to, 589
  - copyright information, 582
  - definition, 579
  - documentation driver, 583
  - documentation initialization, 583
  - hyphenation patterns, adjusting, 586
  - language identification, 582
  - languages and dialects, defining, 584, 585
  - license information, 582
  - punctuation, special cases, 591
  - release information, 583
  - shorthands, 589–591
  - structure, 582–591
  - translating language-dependent strings, 586
- language options, babel package
  - language-specific commands, 558–564
  - layout considerations, 564–566
  - shorthands, 550–558
  - translations, 550
- language-dependent strings
  - babel package, 542, 547, 579
  - customizing, 549–551, 579
  - hyphenation patterns, 586
  - translations, 550
- language.dat file (babel), 7, 545, 580, 581, 584, 919
- language.skeleton file (babel), 579, 582
- `\language0` (babel), 584
- `\languageattribute` (babel), 549
  - warning using, 931
- `\languagename` (babel), 545, 546
- `\languageshorthands` (babel), 548, 589
- `\LARGE`, 342
  - Large key value (caption), 310
- `\Large`, 342
- `\large`, 342, 343, 856
  - large key value (caption), 310
- `\largepencil` (dingbat), 401
- `\larger` (relsize), 84
- `\largestsep` option (titlesec), 40
- last key value
  - (fancyvrb), 159, 160
  - (listings), 172
- last update field, bibliographies, 743
- `\LastDeclaredEncoding`, 431
- `\lasthdashline` (arydshln), 267, 268
- `\lasthline` (array), 268, 280, 281
- `\lastleftmark` (extramarks), 220
- `\lastleftxmark` (extramarks), 220
- lastline key
  - (fancyvrb), 162, 163
  - (listings), 172
- LastPage counter (lastpage), 216, 226
- lastpage package, xxvii, 216
- `\lastrightmark` (extramarks), 220, 229, 231, 232
- `\lastrightxmark` (extramarks), 220, 221
- `LATEX`
  - current system, overview, 6–9
  - files used in, 6–9
  - history of, 1–6
  - process flow, 9
- `LATEX 2.09`
  - fonts, 347
  - high-level font commands, 347
  - symbols, 464
- `LATEX` files, obtaining
  - CD-ROM, 948, 949
  - ftp, 948, 952–954
  - web access, 950
- `LATEX` format file, 7
- `LATEX` Project Public License (LPPL), 4, 961
- latex.fmt file, 7
- latex.ltx file, 365, 829, 854
- latex2html program, 839
- latexsym package, 464
- latin option (babel), 543, 556, 557
- Latin Modern fonts, 356, 357
- latin1 option (inputenc), 90, 100, 101, 359, 361, 417, 567
- latin2 option (inputenc), 359, 361
- latin3 option (inputenc), 359
- latin4 option (inputenc), 359
- latin5 option (inputenc), 359
- latin9 option (inputenc), 359
- `\latinencoding` (babel), 567
- `\latintext` (babel), 568, 589
- law support, bibliographies, 743, 744, 745
- layout (layout), 199
  - layout package, 199
  - layout of a page, *see* page layout
  - layout parameters, list of, 820–824
  - layouts package, xxvii, 195, 199–202
- `\LB` (tlc), 845
- `\Lbag` (stmaryrd), 537
- `\lbag` (stmaryrd), 530
- `\lbrace`, 472, 498, 509, 511, 537
- `\lbrack`, 498, 537
  - lccn `BIBTeX` field (BibTeXMng), 789
- `\lceil`, 498, 537
- `\Lcs` (tlc), 339
- .ldf file extension, 8
  - (babel), 7, 542, 579, 582–588
  - (jurabib), 733
- `\ldf@finish` (babel), 588
- `\LdfInit` (babel), 584

- `\ldots`, 496, 536, [844](#), [874](#), [932](#)
- `\le`, [500](#), 532
- leaders
  - document headings, 41, [42](#)
  - in tables of contents, 59
  - indexes, 664
  - tables of contents, 59
- leading
  - blanks, indexes, 650, 655, 666, 669
  - spaces, removing from typed text, [157](#)
  - vertical spacing, 106, [107](#), 108, [343](#), 373
- `\leadsto` (l<sup>a</sup>texsym), [464](#)
- ledmac package, 117, 982
- `\left`, [478](#), [483](#), [487](#), [498](#), [504](#), 525, [526](#), 537, 899
  - error using, 905, 906
- left key value
  - (fancyvrb), 159, [160](#), [163](#), [165](#)
  - (listings), [172](#)
- left key/option (geometry), [208](#), [209](#)
- left option
  - (eurosym), 409
  - (lineno), 181
- `\Leftarrow`, 534
- `\leftarrow`, 534
- `\leftarrowtail` (amssymb), 534
- `\leftarrowtriangle` (stmaryrd), 534
- leftbars option (changebar), 190
- leftbody option (sidecap), 323
- leftcaption option (sidecap), 323
- leftFloats option (fltpage), 325
- `\leftharpoondown`, 534
- `\leftharpoonup`, 534
- `\lefythyphenmin`, 586
  - leftlabels option (titletoc), 60
- `\leftleftarrows` (amssymb), 534
- leftline key value (fancyvrb), 158
- leftmargin rigid length, [145](#), [147-149](#), [151](#), [850](#)
- leftmargin key (titlesec), 38, 43
- `\leftmark`, [218](#), [226-228](#), 229, 232, [233](#)
  - (extramarks), 220
- `\leftpointright` (dingbat), [401](#)
- `\Leftrightarrow`, 534
- `\leftrightarrow`, 534
- `\leftrightarrows` (stmaryrd), 532
- `\leftrightarrows` (amssymb), 534
- `\leftrightarrowtriangle` (stmaryrd), 534
- `\leftrightharpoons` (amssymb), 534
- `\leftrightsquigarrow` (amssymb), 534
- `\leftroot` (amsmath), [504](#), [505](#)
- `\leftskip` length, [182](#), 183
- `\leftslice` (stmaryrd), 530
- `\leftthreetimes` (amssymb), 530
- `\leftthumbedown` (dingbat), [401](#)
- `\leftthumbup` (dingbat), [401](#)
  - legal option (crop), 213
  - legalpaper key/option (geometry), 206
  - legalpaper option, 195
    - (typearea), 204
  - lem env. (tlc), [139](#)
  - length, *see* space parameters
  - `\lengthtest` (ifthen), [150](#), [307](#), [875](#), [876](#)
  - Lenny option (fncychap), 34, [35](#)
  - `\leq`, 532
    - (eulervm), [399](#)
    - leqno option (amsmath), [466](#), [469](#), [471](#), [472](#), [484](#)
  - `\leqq` (amssymb), 532
  - `\leqslant` (amssymb), 532
    - less than sign (<), shorthand character, [557](#)
  - `\lessapprox` (amssymb), 532
  - `\lessdot` (amssymb), 530
  - `\lesseqgtr` (amssymb), 532
  - `\lesseqgtr` (amssymb), 532
  - `\lessgtr` (amssymb), 532
  - `\lesssim` (amssymb), 532
  - `\let`, [162](#), [249](#), [308](#), [501](#), 587, [680](#)
  - `\Letter` (ifsym), [405](#)
    - letter document class, 6, 22, 547
    - letter groups, indexes, 662, 677
    - letter-by-letter sort order, indexes, 657, 668
    - letter-shaped math symbols, [527](#)
    - letterpaper key/option (geometry), 206
    - letterpaper option, [195](#), [196](#), [881](#)
      - (typearea), 204
    - letters, math symbols, 526-529
    - letterspacing, 88-92
  - `\lettrine` (lettrine), [99](#), [100](#), [101](#)
    - lettrine package, 99-101
      - lettrine.cfg file (lettrine), 101
    - `\LettrineFontHook` (lettrine), [100](#)
    - `\LettrineTextFont` (lettrine), [100](#)
    - level keyword (makeindex), 659, [660](#), [662](#)
    - `\levelchar` (doc), 822
    - lexical analyzer, bibliographies, 777
  - `\lfloor`, 498, 537
  - `\tfoot` (fancyhdr), [224](#), [225](#)
  - `\lg`, 500
  - `\Lgem` (babel), 552
  - `\lgem` (babel), 552
    - LGR font encoding, 567, 574, [575](#), 576
  - `\lgroup`, [489](#), [498](#), 537
    - lhag key (lettrine), [101](#)
  - `\lhd` (l<sup>a</sup>texsym), [464](#)
    - LHE font encoding, 577, [578](#)
  - `\thead` (fancyhdr), [221](#), [224](#), [225](#), [598](#)
  - `\hook`, 535
    - license information
      - language definition files, 582
      - ℒ<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X Project Public License (LPPL), 4, 961
      - multicol package, 184
      - LICENSE.TL file, 961

- LICR (L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X internal character representation), 442, 443
- LICR objects, 442, 443
  - list of, 455–463
- \Lightning (ifsym), 405
- \lightning (stmaryrd), 528
- \lightrulewidth rigid length (booktabs), 270
- \lim, 491, 500
  - sub/superscript placement on, 491, 492
- \liminf, 500
  - limiting positions (subscripts/superscripts), 491, 492
- \limits, 492
  - error using, 903
- \limsup, 500
- \Line (pspicture), 641
- \line, 601, 607, 608
  - error using, 895
  - warning using, 926
  - (eepic), 608, 609, 610
  - (epic), 608
  - (pspicture), 639, 641
- line breaks, *see also* space parameters
  - badness rating, 859
  - bibliographies, 694
  - code listings, 172, 173
  - computer code, 172, 173
  - document headings, 31
  - in citations, 694
  - in tables, 247
  - number-only citations, 694
  - second-last line, 849, 850
- line\_max keyword (makeindex), 661
- \linebreak, 102, 845, 943
  - (soul), 90
- \linelabel (lineno), 178, 179
- \Lineload (marvosym), 401
- lineno package, xxvii, 176–181, 182
- linenomath env. (lineno), 178
- linenomath\* env. (lineno), 178
- \LineNumber (lineno), 180, 181
- \linenumberfont (lineno), 179, 180
- \linenumbers (lineno), 176, 177, 178–182
  - linenumbers env. (lineno), 177
- \linenumbersep rigid length (lineno), 179, 180, 182
- \linenumberwidth rigid length (lineno), 179
- lineonmath env. (lineno), 178
- \lineref (lineno), 179
- lines key (lettrine), 100, 101
- lines key value
  - (fancyvrb), 158, 159
  - (listings), 173
- lines key/option (geometry), 207
- lines (graphic), *see also* boxes; frames
  - drawing, 603, 604, 610, *see also* epic package; eepic package
  - thickness, 604
- lines (of text)
  - fonts for line numbers, 179, 180
  - numbering, 175, 176, 177, 178, 179, 180, 181
  - per page, 198
  - referencing line numbers, 178, 179
- \lineskip length, 936
- \linespread, 204, 373
- \linethickness, 611, 612
  - (epic), 602
  - (picins), 304, 305
  - (pspicture), 639, 640, 641
- \linewidth rigid length, 158, 194, 242, 250–252, 326, 624, 858, 867, 869–871
  - (multicol), 186
- \lining (fourier), 393
- linking cross-references, 78
- \lips
  - (lips), 82, 83
  - (tlc), 81
- lips package, 82, 83, *see also* ellipsis package
- list env., 144, 146, 147, 151, 850, 858
  - error using, 911
  - style parameters, 145
- list stack, displaying, 944
- \listdesign (layouts), 202
- \listdiagram (layouts), 202
- \listfigurename, 34, 53
  - (babel), 547
- \listfiles, 21, 884
- listing env. (moreverb), 153
- listing\* env. (moreverb), 153
- listingcont env. (moreverb), 153
- listingcont\* env. (moreverb), 153
- listings package, xxvi, 154, 168–175
  - combined with color, 171
  - combined with inputenc, 175
- \listof (float), 55, 293, 294
- \listofexamples (tlc), 54, 55
- \listoffigures, 22, 46, 52, 54, 222, 293, 307
  - listed in TOC, 48
  - (caption), 315
  - (subfig), 321
- listofformat key/option (subfig), 319, 320
- listofindent key/option (subfig), 320, 321
- listofnumwidth key/option (subfig), 320
- \listoftables, 22, 46, 52, 54, 222, 259, 293
  - listed in TOC, 48
- \listparindent rigid length, 145
- lists
  - boxed, 600
  - bulleted, *see* itemized lists
  - description
    - extensions, 136
    - standard, 131
    - user-defined, 147, 148–151

- lists (*cont.*)
  - enumerated
    - default settings, 136, [137](#), 138
    - extensions, [132–135](#)
    - indentation, [137](#)
    - standard, [129–131](#)
  - headed, 138, [139](#), 140
    - customizing, 141, 142, [143](#)
    - font, 141
    - indentation, 141
    - proofs, 143, 144
    - punctuation, 141
    - QED (□) symbol, 143, 144
    - spacing, 141
    - style name, 141
    - style, defining, [140](#)
  - itemized
    - default settings, [136](#), 137, 138
    - extensions, [135](#), 136
    - standard, [128](#)
  - multilingual documents, [565](#)
  - numbered, *see* enumerated lists; headed lists
  - of figures/tables, in tables of contents, 48
  - schematic layout, 145
  - types of, 128
  - unnumbered, *see* itemized lists
  - user-defined, 144–146
    - description lists, 147, [148–150](#), 151
    - enumerated lists, [151](#)
    - quotations, 146, [147](#)
- lists option (endfloat), 290
- \listtablename, 34
  - (babel), 547
- \ll, 532
- \llap, 180, [181](#)
- \llbracket
  - (fourier), [392](#)
  - (stmaryrd), 498, 537
- \llceil (stmaryrd), 537
- \lleftarrow (amssymb), 534
- \llfloor (stmaryrd), 537
- \lll (amssymb), 532
- \llless (amssymb), 532
- \llparenthesis (stmaryrd), 537
- lmargin key/option (geometry), [206](#), [208](#)
- lmodern package, 357
- \lmoustache, 498, 537
- \ln, 500
  - ln option (graphics), 615
- \lnapprox (amssymb), 532
- \lneq (amssymb), 532
- \lneqq (amssymb), 532
- \lnot, 528
- \lnsim (amssymb), 532
- \LoadClass, [879](#), [886](#), [887](#)
  - error using, 903, 908, 912
  - warning using, 931
- \LoadClassWithOptions, [883](#), [887](#)
  - loading option (tracefmt), [369](#), 946
  - loadonly option (titlesec), 44, 45
  - location BibTeX field (BibTeXMng), 789
  - location classes, 677, 678
  - location formatting, 678
- .lof file extension, [7](#), [8](#), [46](#), 48, 53
  - (chapterbib), 749
  - (subfig), 320
  - (titletoc), 58
- lofdepth counter (subfig), 320
- \log, [493](#), [500](#)
  - .log file extension, [7](#), [8](#), 657
  - logonly option (trace), 946
- \long, [846](#), 932, [933](#)
  - long key value (jurabib), [732](#)
  - long option (rcsinfo), 839
- \Longarrownot (stmaryrd), [533](#), 535
- \longarrownot (stmaryrd), 535
  - longgather env. (tlc), [468](#)
- \Longleftarrow, 534
- \longleftarrow, 534
- \Longleftrightarrow, 534, [862](#)
- \longleftrightarrow, [533](#), 534
- \Longmapsfrom (stmaryrd), 534
- \longmapsfrom (stmaryrd), 534
- \Longmapsto (stmaryrd), 534
- \longmapsto, 534
  - longnamesfirst option (natbib), [704](#), [705](#)
  - problems using, [705](#)
- \longpage (tlc), [234](#)
- \Longrightarrow, 534
- \longrightarrow, [489](#), 534
  - longtable env. (longtable), 259, [260](#), [261–264](#), 270, 277
  - “floating”, 289
- longtable package, 259–263
  - combined with booktabs, 270
  - combined with caption, 262
- lookat key/option (jurabib), [727](#), [728](#), 729, [741](#)
- \lookatprefix (jurabib), 727
- \lookatsuffix (jurabib), 727
  - lookforgender key/option (jurabib), [735](#)
- looktex program, 775
- \looparrowleft (amssymb), 534
- \looparrowright (amssymb), 534
  - loose option
    - (minitoc), 56
    - (shorttoc), 55
- \looseness, 943
  - output produced from, [943](#)
- \lor, 530
  - lost characters, tracing, 945



- .lot file extension, [7](#), [8](#), [46](#), [48](#)
  - (chapterbib), [749](#)
  - (subfig), [320](#)
  - (titletoc), [58](#)
- lotdepth counter (subfig), [320](#)
- loversize key (lettrine), [101](#)
- \lowercase, [341](#)
  - problems with, [571](#)
- lowersorbian option (babel), [543](#)
- \lozenge (amssymb), [528](#)
- \LPNobreakList (lips), [82](#)
- LPPL (L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X Project Public License), [4](#), [961](#)
- \lproject (tlc), [94](#), [95](#)
- \LR (tlc), [182](#)
  - LR boxes, [860–862](#)
- lraise key (lettrine), [101](#)
- lrbox env., [869](#), [870](#)
- lscap package, [211](#), [212](#)
- \Lsh (amssymb), [534](#)
  - lsorbian option (babel), [559](#)
- \lstineline (listings), [171](#)
- \lstininputlisting (listings), [171](#), [172–175](#)
- lstlisting counter (listings), [174](#)
- lstlisting env. (listings), [170](#), [172](#), [173](#), [175](#)
- \lstlistingname (listings), [174](#)
- \lstlistlistingname (listings), [174](#)
- \lstlistoflistings (listings), [174](#)
- \lstloadlanguages (listings), [170](#), [171](#)
- \lstset (listings), [169](#), [170](#), [171–175](#)
- \Lsub (tlc), [31](#)
- \LTcapwidth rigid length (longtable), [262](#)
- LTchunksize counter (longtable), [263](#)
- \Ltimes (amssymb), [530](#)
- \LTleft length (longtable), [261](#)
  - ltoutenc.dtx file, [368](#)
- \LTpost length (longtable), [261](#)
- \LTpre length (longtable), [261](#)
- \LTRight length (longtable), [261](#)
- .ltx file extension, [8](#)
  - (tlc), [14](#), [960](#)
- .ltx2 file extension (tlc), [14](#), [960](#)
- ltxdoc document class, [818](#), [834](#), [835](#)
  - ltxdoc.cfg file (ltxdoc), [835](#)
- Lucida Bright font, in math and text, [521](#)
- lucidabr package, [339](#), [521](#)
- luximono package, [386–388](#)
- LV1 font encoding, [416](#)
- \lvec (tlc), [845](#), [846](#), [932](#), [933](#), [934](#)
- \lVert (amsmath), [498](#), [501](#), [537](#)
- \lvert (amsmath), [498](#), [500](#), [501](#), [537](#)
- \lvertneqq (amssymb), [532](#)
- LY1 font encoding, [416](#)
  - list of LICR objects, [455–463](#)
  - (pxfonts), [391](#)
  - (txfonts), [388](#)

## M

- m syntax
  - (array), [244](#), [245](#), [249](#)
  - (tabularx), [252](#)
- M-xcompile function (emacs), [787](#)
- \m@ne, [843](#)
- macce option (inputenc), [360](#)
- maccyr option (inputenc), [571](#)
- MACRO B<sub>B</sub>T<sub>E</sub>X command, [805](#), [807](#)
- macro env. (doc), [815](#), [816](#), [817](#), [821](#), [824](#)
- macro stack, displaying, [892](#)
- macrocode env. (doc), [815](#), [816](#), [817](#), [821](#), [824](#)
- macrocode\* env. (doc), [815](#), [817](#), [821](#)
- \MacrocodeTopsep length (doc), [824](#)
- \MacroFont (doc), [824](#)
- \MacroIndent rigid length (doc), [824](#)
- macros
  - cross-references, [817](#), [818](#)
  - descriptions, creating, [815](#), [816](#)
  - documenting, *see* documentation tools
  - spacing after macro names, [80](#), [81](#)
- \MacroTopsep length (doc), [816](#), [824](#)
- mag key/option (geometry), [210](#)
- magnification, [210](#)
- magyar option (babel), [543](#)
- \main (doc), [822](#)
- main code part, [883](#)
- main font, [338](#), [339](#)
- \mainmatter, [22](#), [216](#)
  - make-rules program, [671](#)
- \makeatletter, [14](#), [18](#), [25](#), [26](#), [114](#), [129](#), [692](#), [693](#), [843](#), [852](#)
- \makeatother, [14](#), [18](#), [25](#), [26](#), [114](#), [129](#), [692](#), [693](#), [843](#), [852](#)
- makebib program, [776](#)
- \makebox, [113](#), [158](#), [242](#), [835](#), [860](#), [861](#), [862](#)
  - zero-width, [126](#), [147](#), [183](#), [629](#)
  - (fancybox), [597](#)
  - (ltxdoc), [835](#)
  - (pspicture), [640](#)
- makebst program, [685](#), [708](#), [711](#)
- makebst.tex file (custom-bib), [798](#), [799](#), [801–804](#)
- \makeenmark (endnotes), [126](#)
- \makeglossary, [653](#)
- makeidx package, [649](#), [652](#), [656](#)
- \makeindex, [649](#), [655](#)
- makeindex program, [7](#), [8](#), [573](#), [574](#), [648](#), [650](#), [652](#), [654–666](#), [827](#), *see also* index generation; xindy program
  - Cyrillic alphabet, [573](#)
  - multilingual documents, [573](#)
- \makeLabel, [145](#), [147](#), [148](#), [149](#), [150](#), [850](#)
- \makeLineNumber (lineno), [180](#), [181](#)
- \makeLineNumberRight (lineno), [179](#)
- \MakeLowercase, [37](#), [63](#), [64](#), [85](#), [341](#), [571](#)
  - (fontenc), [361](#)
- \MakePercentCommand (doc), [824](#)

- `\MakePercentIgnore` (doc), 824
- `\MakePerPage` (perpage), 120, 125
- `\MakePrivateLetters` (doc), 824
- `\MakeShortVerb`
  - (doc), 816, 821
  - (shortvrb), 152, 885
- `\MakeShortVerb*`
  - (doc), 816, 822
  - (shortvrb), 152, 153
- `\MakeTextLowercase` (textcase), 86
- `\MakeTextUppercase` (textcase), 86
- `\maketitle`, 22
  - error using, 907
  - producing unwanted page number, 222, 230
  - warning using, 925
- `\MakeUppercase`, 85, 86, 229, 571, 767
  - in headings, 31, 91, 92, 679, 680
  - (fontenc), 361
  - (textcase), 86
- `\MakPerPage` (perpage), 121
- Manju (Mongolian), 592
- manjutex package, 592
- manual  $\LaTeX$  entry type, 690, 763, 765, 779
- manyfoot package, xxvi, 122–125
- .map file extension, 420
- `\Mapsfrom` (stmaryrd), 534
- `\mapsfrom` (stmaryrd), 534
- `\Mapsfromchar` (stmaryrd), 535
- `\mapsfromchar` (stmaryrd), 535
- `\Mapsto` (stmaryrd), 534
- `\mapsto`, 534
- `\Mapstochar` (stmaryrd), 535
- `\mapstochar`, 535
- `\marg` (ltxdoc), 834
  - margin key/option
    - (caption), 309, 318
    - (geometry), 211, 213, 214
    - (subfig), 316, 317
  - margin footnotes, 118, 119
  - marginal option (footmisc), 118, 124, 728, 730
  - marginal notes, 126, 127, 209, *see also* endnotes; footnotes
  - margincaption option (sidecap), 323, 325
- `\marginlabel` (tlc), 127
- `\marginpar`, 103, 126, 127, 177, 178, 221, 863
  - error using, 899, 907, 912
  - justification in, 106
  - numbered per page, 121
  - problems with hyphenation, 127
  - style parameters, 127
  - warning using, 924
  - (lineno), 177
  - (mparhack), 127
  - (multicol), not supported, 189
  - (perpage), numbered per page, 121
  - (titlesec), problems using, 38
- `\marginparpush` rigid length, 127, 194, 196
- `\marginparsep` rigid length, 127, 194, 196, 302
  - (fancyhdr), 227
  - (sidecap), 324
  - marginparsep key/option (geometry), 210
- `\marginparswitchfalse` (layouts), 200
- `\marginparwidth` rigid length, 127, 194, 196, 199, 203, 302
  - (fancyhdr), 227
  - marginparwidth key/option (geometry), 206, 209
- marginratio key/option (geometry), 206, 211
- margins
  - driver margins, 196
  - inner margins, 195
  - outer margins, 195
  - page layout, 195, 208, 211
- `\mark`, 217, 218
  - mark commands, 217, 218, 219, 220, 221, 229, 230
- `\markboth`, 218, 219, 221–223, 228, 229, 230
  - error using, 893
  - markers option (endfloat), 290
  - marking omitted text, *see* ellipsis
- `\markright`, 218, 219, 220, 222, 223, 228, 229, 230, 232
  - error using, 893
  - (extramarks), 221
- markshow option (multicol), 188
- markup-location function (xindy), 678, 679
- markup-location-list function (xindy), 675
- marvodoc.pdf file (marvosym), 401
- marvosym package, xxvii, 401–403, 411, 412
- MarVoSym font, 401, 403
- master scripts, creating, 829
- mastersthesis  $\LaTeX$  entry type, 763
- math option (inputenc), 446
- math alphabet identifier, *see* alphabet identifier
- math fonts, *see also* fonts
  - alphabet identifiers, 348, 349–351
  - AMS, 467, 468
  - automatic changes, 347, 348
  - Baskerville Math, 520
  - Bitstream Charter Math, 520
  - Blackboard Bold, 378, 509, 519
  - bold letters, 510–512, 513
  - CM Bright, 522
  - Computer Modern (CM), 513
  - Concrete, 514
  - Euler, 396, 397–399, 467, 514
  - Euler Fraktur, 467, 509
  - font commands, 351
  - formula versions, 352, 353
  - Fourier-GUTenberg, 391–393, 515
  - Helvetica Math, 522
  - Info Math, 523
  - input, encoding, 445–447
  - Lucida Math, 521
  - Palatino, 377, 378, 390, 391, 518

math fonts (*cont.*)

Palatino Math, 519  
 Pazo, 377, 378, 509, 518  
 Pi, 378–381, 382  
 Pxfonts, 518  
 scaling large operators, 368  
 setting up, 432–437  
 Times Roman, 376, 377, 389, 390, 516  
 TM Math, 517  
 Txfonts, 516

math symbol type, 524

math symbols, *see also* special characters; text symbols

accents, 529  
   as superscripts, 495  
 binary operator symbols, 529  
 compound, 490–495  
 continued fractions, 490  
 decorated arrows, 490  
 decorative, 495  
 delimiters, 490–497, 498, 499, 504  
 dotted accents, 494, 495  
 ellipsis (...), 496, 497  
 formulas, boxed, 491, 600  
 fractions, 493, 494  
 generalizations, 493, 494  
 horizontal extensions, 497, 499  
 integral signs, multiple, 492  
 letters, 526–529  
 math symbol type, 524  
 $\backslash\mathbin$  (boxes), 530  
 $\backslash\mathbin$  (circles), 531  
 $\backslash\mathbin$  (miscellaneous), 530  
 $\backslash\mathclose$  (open/close), 498, 537  
 mathematical type, 524  
 $\backslash\mathinner$  (punctuation), 536  
 $\backslash\mathop$ , 536  
 $\backslash\mathopen$  (open/close), 498, 537  
 $\backslash\mathord$  (Greek), 527  
 $\backslash\mathord$  (letter-shaped), 527  
 $\backslash\mathord$  (miscellaneous), 528  
 $\backslash\mathord$  (punctuation), 536  
 $\backslash\mathpunct$  (punctuation), 536  
 $\backslash\mathrel$  (arrows), 534  
 $\backslash\mathrel$  (arrows—negated), 534  
 $\backslash\mathrel$  (equality and order), 532  
 $\backslash\mathrel$  (equality and order—negated), 532  
 $\backslash\mathrel$  (miscellaneous), 535  
 $\backslash\mathrel$  (negation and arrow extensions), 535  
 $\backslash\mathrel$  (sets and inclusion), 533  
 $\backslash\mathrel$  (sets and inclusion—negated), 533  
 modular relations, 492, 493  
 numerals, 526–529  
 opening/closing symbols, 537  
 operator symbols, 536  
 operators, 490–493, 494, 495

math symbols (*cont.*)

operators, multilingual documents, 564  
 ordinary symbols, 526, 527, 528, 529  
 positioning subscripts/superscripts, 491, 492  
 punctuation, 535  
 radicals, 504, 505  
 relation symbols, 531, 532, 533  
 spacing between, 525, 526, 528, 529  
 subscripts, limiting positions, 491, 492  
 superscripts, above Relation symbols, 495  
 superscripts, limiting positions, 491, 492  
 symbol classes, 524–526, 528, 529  
 variable form, 495, 496–499  
 vertical extensions, 498, 499  
 $\backslash\mathalpha$ , 399, 434, 435, 524  
 $\backslash\mathbb$   
   (amsfonts), 467, 509  
   (amssymb), 509  
   (fourier), 391  
   (mathpazo), 378  
   (tlc), 435, 509  
 $\backslash\mathbf$ , 349, 352, 472, 475, 492, 495, 504, 508, 510, 511  
   (bm), 510  
   (mathptmx), 377  
 $\backslash\mathbin$ , 85, 435, 524, 528, 530, 531  
   (bm), 512  
   (resize), 85  
 $\backslash\mathcal$ , 349, 351, 397, 484, 489, 495, 501, 506, 508, 509  
   (ccfonts), 384  
   (eucal), 396, 467  
   (eulervm), 397, 398  
   (fourier), 391  
   (mathpazo), 377  
   (mathptmx), 376  
   (pxfonts), 390  
   (txfonts), 389  
 $\backslash\mathclose$ , 435, 498, 524, 537  
 $\backslash\mathdollar$ , 527  
 $\backslash\mathellipsis$ , 536  
 mathematical typesetting, *see also*  $\mathcal{A}\mathcal{M}\mathcal{S}\text{-}\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}\mathcal{T}\mathcal{E}\mathcal{X}$ ; *specific mathematical elements*  
   fine-tuning layout  
     alignment, 505, 506, 507  
     big-g delimiters, 504  
     horizontal space, 507, 508  
     radicals, 504, 505  
     sizing, 502, 503  
     smashing, 506, 507  
     spacing, 502, 503, 505, 506, 507  
     sub-formulas, 503, 504  
   operator names, 499, 500, 501  
   text, 499–501  
 $\backslash\mathfrak$   
   (amsfonts), 467, 509  
   (amssymb), 509

- `\mathfrak` (*cont.*)
  - (eufrak), 396, 397, 399, 467
  - (eulervm), 398
- `\mathindent` length (amsmath), 469, 471, 500
- `\mathindent` rigid length, 471
- `\mathinner`, 498, 525, 536
- `\mathit`, 349, 464
- `\mathlarger` (relsize), 84, 85
- `mathlines` option (lineno), 178
- `\mathnormal`, 349, 350
  - (eulervm), 397
- `\mathop`, 85, 435, 524, 536
  - (amsmath), 492
  - (bm), 512
- `\mathopen`, 435, 498, 524, 537
- `\mathord`, 435, 474, 498, 524, 527–529, 536
- `\mathparagraph`, 527
- `mathpazo` package, 371, 373, 377, 378, 519
- `mathpple` package, 371, 373, 377
- `mathptm` package, 371, 373, 376, 377
- `mathptmx` package, 370, 371, 373, 376, 377, 388–390, 517
  - combined with tipa, 406
- `\mathpunct`, 435, 524, 536
- `\mathrel`, 85, 435, 474, 498, 524, 528, 529, 532–535
  - (amsmath), 504
  - (bm), 512
- `\mathring`, 529
- `\mathrm`, 349, 350, 489, 499
- `\mathscr`
  - (eucal), 396, 397
  - (eulervm), not existing, 398
  - (tlc), 509
- `mathscr` option (eucal), 396
- `\mathsection`, 527
- `\mathsf`, 349, 351, 352, 353, 464
  - (eulervm), 399
- `\mathsmaller` (relsize), 84, 85
- `\mathsterling`, 527
- `\mathstrut`, 505
- `mathtime` package, 352
- `\mathhtt`, 349
- `\mathversion`, 352
  - error using, 904
- `matrix` env. (amsmath), 486
  - error using, 904, 907
- matrix-like environments
  - `cases` env., 486
  - matrix environments, 486, 487
  - single equations, few variants, 486
  - subscripts, stacking, 487, 488
  - superscripts, stacking, 487, 488
- `\matrixput` (epic), 607
- `\max`, 491, 500, 525
- `\maxdimen` rigid length, 88
  - (tabulary), 253
- `\maxfiles` (docstrip), 833
  - `MaxMatrixCols` counter (amsmath), 487
- `\maxoutfiles` (docstrip), 833
- `\maxovaldiam` rigid length (eepic), 609
- `\mbox`, 148, 499, 512, 844, 860, 870
  - hiding material in a `\discretionary`, 173
  - to suppress hyphenation, 694
  - (bm), 512
  - (soul), 90
  - (ulem), 87
- `md` key value (caption), 310
- `md` option (titlesec), 37
- `\mddefault`, 346
- `\mdqoff` (babel), 548
- `\mdqon` (babel), 548
- `\mdseries`, 340, 344, 346
- `\meaning`, 935
- `\meas` (tlc), 501
- `\measuredangle` (amssymb), 528
- medieval attribute (babel), 549
- medium option (titlesec), 37
- `\medmuskip` length, 507, 525, 526
- `\medskip`, 857
  - in headings, 31
- `\medskipamount` length, 857
- `\medspace` (amsmath), 507, 508
- memo page style (tlc), 230
- memoir document class, 202, 237, 701
- memory exceeded message, 915–919
- `\merge` (stmaryrd), 530
- merge rules, 673, 676
- merge-rule function (xindy), 676
- merge-to function (xindy), 678
- merging, bibliographies, 779, 780
- `merlin.mbs` file (custom-bib), 799, 803
- `\MessageBreak`, 884, 885
- messages, *see also* troubleshooting
  - generating, 827, 828
  - informational, 920–931
  - memory exceeded, 915–919
  - user, generating, 827, 828
  - warning, 920–931
- messages, error
  - \* (asterisk) only, 894
  - colored, in bibliography front end, 785
  - indexes
    - list of, 658, 659
    - makeindex, 658, 659
    - suppressing, 657, 668, 674
  - list of, 894–915
  - source line, finding, 890–894
  - syntax, 890
- messages, index generation
  - debugging, 675

- messages, index generation (*cont.*)
  - error messages
    - list of, 658, 659
    - makeindex, 658, 659
    - suppressing, 657, 668, 674
- `\meta` (doc), [815](#), [822](#)
- METAFONT, [334](#)
- `\MetaPrefix` (docstrip), [829](#), [833](#)
- MFpic program, [970](#)
- `\mho`
  - (amssymb), [527](#)
  - (latsym), [464](#)
- `\mid`, [509](#), [535](#)
- `\middle`, available with eTeX, [498](#), [504](#), [537](#)
- `\midrule` (booktabs), [270](#), [271](#), [272](#)
- `\midrulesep` rigid length (booktabs), [271](#)
- `\midwordellipsis` (ellipsis), [82](#)
- `\min`, [500](#)
- `\minalignsep` (amsmath), [476](#), [477](#), [479](#)
- `\minilof` (minitoc), [56](#)
- `\minilot` (minitoc), [56](#)
- minipage env., [862](#), [863](#), [864](#), [865](#), [866](#), [869](#), [870](#)
  - footnotes in, [110](#), [111](#), [113](#), [277](#)
  - justification in, [104](#), [106](#)
  - nested, [864](#)
  - (supertabular), [256](#)
- `\minitoc` (minitoc), [56](#), [58](#)
- minitoc package, xxvii, [56–58](#), *see also* titletoc package
- minitocdepth counter (minitoc), [56](#), [57](#)
- `\minus` (euro), [99](#)
- minus syntax, [63](#), [91](#), [415](#), [695](#), [854](#), [855](#), [935](#)
- `\minuso` (stmaryrd), [530](#)
- mirror option (crop), [214](#)
- misc BibTeX entry type, [763](#)
- misc option (ifsym), [405](#)
- missing\$ BibTeX built-in function, [808](#), [810](#)
- mktexlsr program, [899](#)
- ML env. (tlc), [139](#)
- mla option
  - (ellipsis), [82](#)
  - (lips), [83](#)
- MBibTeX program, [761](#)
- .mlf(*n*) file extension (minitoc), [56](#)
- mlt env. (tlc), [468](#)
- .mlt(*n*) file extension (minitoc), [56](#)
- mmode boolean, [875](#)
- mnk option (inputenc), [571](#)
- mnote counter (tlc), [121](#)
- `\Mobilefone` (marvosym), [401](#)
- `\mod` (amsmath), [492](#), [493](#)
- `\models`, [535](#)
- modular relations, math symbols, [492](#), [493](#)
- `\Module` (doc), [824](#)
- modulo option (lineno), [179](#)
- `\modulolinenumbers` (lineno), [179](#), [182](#)
- monetary symbols, *see* currencies, typesetting
- Mongolian (Manju), [592](#)
- monospaced fonts, [331](#), [332](#), [339](#), *see also* typed text; typewriter font
  - courier, [374](#)
- monotoniko attribute (babel), [549](#), [574](#)
- month BibTeX field, [690](#), [763](#), [765](#), [770](#)
- `\moo` (stmaryrd), [530](#)
- `\morecmidrules` (booktabs), [271](#), [272](#)
- moredefs package, [82](#), [83](#)
- morefloats package, [912](#)
- moreverb package, [153](#)
- mos option (inputenc), [571](#)
- mottos (quotations), on chapter headings, [35](#), [36](#)
- `\Mountain` (ifsym), [405](#)
  - mountains, symbols, [403](#), [404](#), [405](#)
- `\movetoevenpage` (nextpage), [236](#)
- `\movetooddpage` (nextpage), [236](#)
- `\mp`, [530](#)
  - mparhack package, [127](#)
  - mpexclude option (typearea), [205](#)
  - mpfootnote counter, [110](#), [851](#)
    - (footmisc), [111](#)
  - `\mpfootnotemark` (footmisc), [111](#)
  - `\mpfootnoterule` (footmisc), [119](#)
  - mpinclude option (typearea), [205](#)
  - mpsupertabular env. (supertabular), [256](#), [277](#)
  - mpsupertabular\* env. (supertabular), [256](#), [277](#)
- `\mrm` (tlc), [350](#)
- mrnumber BibTeX field (BibTexMng), [789](#)
- `\msfsl` (tlc), [350](#), [351](#), [352](#)
- `\Msg` (docstrip), [827](#)
- .msp file extension, [626](#)
- `\mspace` (amsmath), [507](#)
- .mtc(*n*) file extension (minitoc), [56](#)
- `\mtcfont` (minitoc), [57](#)
- `\mtcindent` rigid length (minitoc), [57](#)
- mtcoff package, [58](#)
- `\mtcpagenumbers` (minitoc), [57](#)
- `\mtcPfont` (minitoc), [57](#)
- `\mtcPSfont` (minitoc), [57](#)
- `\mtcrule` (minitoc), [57](#)
- `\mtcrules` (minitoc), [57](#)
- `\mtcSfont` (minitoc), [57](#)
- `\mtcSSfont` (minitoc), [57](#)
- `\mtcSSSfont` (minitoc), [57](#)
- `\mtctitle` (minitoc), [57](#)
- `\mu`, [492](#), [527](#)
- `\multfootsep` (footmisc), [120](#)
- multibib package, [746](#), [754](#), [755](#), [756](#)
  - compatibility matrix, [746](#)
- multicol package, [176](#), [184–189](#), [232](#), [299](#)
  - license information, [184](#)
- `\multicolpretolerance` (multicol), [186](#)

- multicols env. (multicol), [184](#), [185–189](#), [680](#), 863, 875
  - style parameters, 185–187
- multicols\* env. (multicol), [185](#), 884
- \multicolsep length (multicol), [185](#), 186
- \multicoltolerance (multicol), [186](#), 187
- \multicolumn, [272](#), 273, [274](#), [276](#), [277](#), [279](#), [280](#)
  - error using, 901, 904, 905
  - (longtable), [260](#)
  - (supertabular), [257](#), [258](#)
  - (tabularx), [282](#)
  - restrictions using, 252
- multilingual documents, *see also* babel package
  - ! (exclamation mark), shorthand character, [554](#)
  - " (double quote), shorthand character, 551–553
  - ' (acute accent), shorthand character, [556](#)
  - . (period), shorthand character, [558](#)
  - : (colon), shorthand character, [554](#)
  - ; (semicolon), shorthand character, [554](#)
  - < (less than sign), shorthand character, [557](#)
  - = (equals sign), shorthand character, [557](#)
  - > (greater than sign), shorthand character, [557](#)
  - ? (question mark), shorthand character, [554](#)
  - ^ (caret), shorthand character, [556](#)
  - ‘ (grave accent), shorthand character, [555](#)
  - ~ (tilde)
    - multilingual aspects, [554](#)
    - nonbreaking space, 550
- accented letters, [552](#)
- bibliographies, language support, 733, [734](#), 735, 811, 812
- BiBTeX, 573
- character sets, 541
- citations, Hungarian, 564
- culture, and typesetting, 542
- current language, setting/getting, 544, [545](#), [546](#)
- dates, formatting, [558](#), [559](#)
- definite articles, Hungarian, 563
- encoding languages and fonts
  - Cyrillic alphabet, 569–573
  - Greek alphabet, 574, 576
  - Hebrew alphabet, 576–578
  - language options, 566–568
- footnotes, 565, [566](#)
- French names, [563](#)
- Hcaption font, 577
- Hclassic font, 577
- hyphenation
  - cultural aspects, 542
  - defining dynamically, 542
  - in multiple languages, 546, [580](#), [581](#)
  - Italian, 563
  - language aspects, 541
  - patterns, adjusting, 586
  - patterns, applying, [545](#)
  - preventing, [545](#)
- multilingual documents (*cont.*)
  - special rules, [553](#)
  - indentation after heading, 565
  - indexes, 666, [669–671](#)
  - language attributes, [549](#), [550](#)
  - language, and typesetting, 541
  - language-dependent strings, 542, [547](#), [549–551](#), 586
  - lists, [565](#)
  - makeindex, 573
  - mathematical operators, [564](#)
  - non-Latin alphabets
    - Arabic, 591
    - Armenian, 592
    - Chinese, 592
    - Cyrillic, 569–571, [572](#), 573, 574
    - Ethiopian, 592
    - Greek, 574, [575](#), [576](#)
    - Hebrew, [576](#), [577](#), [578](#), [579](#), 591
    - Indian, 592
    - Japanese, 592
    - Korean, 592
    - Manju (Mongolian), 592
  - numbering, 559, [560–563](#), 564
  - Omega, T<sub>E</sub>X extension, 592
  - OT1 extensions, 566, 567
  - overview, 539–541
  - Polish, [567](#)
  - punctuation, special cases, [591](#)
  - quoting characters, inserting, [552](#), [553](#)
  - right-to-left typesetting, 566, [577](#)
  - shalom fonts, 577
  - shorthands, 547, [548](#), [549](#)
  - spacing after punctuation, 564
  - special characters, [552](#)
  - summary table, 542
  - T1 extensions, 566, 567
- \multimap (amssymb), 534
- multipage tables
  - and floats, [262–264](#)
  - captions, 257, [262](#)
  - creating with longtable, 259, [260](#), 261, [262–264](#)
  - creating with supertabular, 256, [257](#), [258](#), 259
  - footnotes, 263
  - headers and footers, 256, 257, 261
  - horizontal alignment, 261
  - page breaks, 257
  - problems with, [263](#), [264](#)
  - reducing run numbers, 263
  - row commands, 261
  - spacing around, 261
  - width, 258, 259, [260](#), 261, 262, [263](#), 264
- multiple key value (jurabib), 722, 735
- multiple option (footmisc), [120](#), [123–125](#), [728–731](#)
- multiple bibliographies, 745–756
- multiple citations, 703, [704](#)

- multiple indexes, 681, 682
  - multiple tables of contents, 54, [55](#), 56–58
  - `\multiply`, 871
  - `\multipt`, 601, 606, 607
    - (`pspicture`), 640
  - `\multiptulist` (`epic`), [606](#), [607](#)
  - `\multirow` (`multirow`), [273](#), [274](#), [282](#)
    - `multirow` package, 273, 274
  - `\multirowsetup` (`multirow`), [273](#), [274](#)
  - `multline` env. (`amsmath`), [469](#), [471](#), [472](#)
    - error using, 895
  - `multline*` env. (`amsmath`), [469](#), [472](#)
  - `\multlinegap` rigid length (`amsmath`), [471](#), [472](#)
  - `\myclearpage` (`tlc`), 236
  - `myheadings` page style, 222
  - `MYitemize` env. (`tlc`), [128](#)
  - `\MyRot` (`tlc`), [631](#)
  - `myverbatim` env. (`tlc`), [165](#)
- N**
- `\n` (`tlc`), [83](#)
  - `\nabla`, 528
  - NACRO  $\text{\LaTeX}$  command, [812](#)
  - `\name` (`tlc`), [341](#)
  - name key
    - (listings), [172](#)
    - (titlesec), [43](#), [44](#)
  - name key value (`jurabib`), [729](#), [730](#), [731](#), [734](#)
  - `name&title` key value (`jurabib`), 729
  - `name&title&auto` key value (`jurabib`), [730](#)
  - named  $\text{\LaTeX}$  style
    - (`chicago`), 700
    - (`named`), 791, [792](#)
  - named package, 792
  - named boxes, 868, [869](#), [870](#), *see also* boxes
  - named page styles, 230
  - `namelimits` option (`amsmath`), 491
  - names, bibliography database, 766–768
  - naming conventions, 842, 843
  - naming fonts, 420
  - `namunsrt`  $\text{\LaTeX}$  style, 792
  - `nar`  $\text{\LaTeX}$  style, 792
  - `nar` package, 792
  - `\NAT@close` (`natbib`), [709](#)
  - `\NAT@date` (`natbib`), [709](#)
  - `\NAT@idtxt` (`natbib`), [709](#)
  - `\NAT@name` (`natbib`), [709](#)
  - `\NAT@open` (`natbib`), [709](#)
  - `natbib` package, xxvii, 68, **700–710**, **712–715**, 801
    - compatibility matrix, 746
    - incompatible with `cite`, 714
  - `natbib.cfg` file (`natbib`), 706, 709
  - `natheight` key (`graphicx`), 619
  - `\natural`, 528
  - `nature`  $\text{\LaTeX}$  style (`nature`), 792
  - `nature` package, 792
  - `natwidth` key (`graphicx`), 619
  - `naustrian` option (`babel`), 543
  - `ncc` option (`inputenc`), 571
  - `\ncong` (`amssymb`), 532
  - `\Ndash` (`tlc`), [83](#)
  - `ndkeywordstyle` key (listings), 170
  - `\ne`, 532
  - `\narrow`, 534
  - `nearskip` key/option (`subfig`), 317, 318, [319](#), [321](#)
  - `nederlands`  $\text{\LaTeX}$  style (`harvard`), 700, [811](#)
  - `\NeedsTeXFormat`, [878](#), [879](#), [886](#), [888](#)
    - release information, [878](#)
    - warning using, 931
  - `\neg`, 528
  - negated math symbols
    - arrow extensions, [535](#)
    - arrows, [534](#)
    - equality and order, [532](#)
    - sets and inclusions, [533](#)
  - `\negmedspace` (`amsmath`), 507, 508
  - `\negthickspace` (`amsmath`), 507, 508
  - `\negthinspace`, 507, 508
  - `\neq`, [506](#), [528](#), 529, 532
  - nesting
    - commands, [846](#)
    - document headings, 24
    - levels, tables of contents, 50
  - `neveradjust` option (`paralist`), [135](#), 136
  - `neverdecrease` option (`paralist`), [134](#), [135](#), 136
  - New Century Schoolbook font, 375
  - New Font Selection scheme (NFSS), 327–329
  - `newapa`  $\text{\LaTeX}$  style
    - (`chicago`), 700
    - (`newapa`), 792
  - `newapa` package, 792
  - `\newblock`, 686, [687](#), [693](#), [698](#)
    - ( $\text{\LaTeX}$ ), 806
  - `\newboolean` (`ifthen`), [875](#), [886](#)
  - `newcent` package, 371
  - `\newcites` (`multibib`), [755](#), [756](#)
  - `\newcolumntype`
    - (`array`), [248](#), [249](#), [266](#), [561](#), [563](#)
    - (`colortbl`), [265](#)
    - (`dcolumn`), [275](#), [276](#)
    - (`tabularx`), [251](#)
    - (`tabulary`), 253
  - `\newcommand`, [843–845](#), [846](#), 847, 883
    - error using, 897, 901, 904, [909](#), 914, 932
    - used in `.bb1` file, 749, 771
  - `\newcommand*`, [846](#), 908, 932
  - `newcommands` option (`ragged2e`), [105](#), [739](#)
  - `\newcounter`, [151](#), [198](#), [849](#), [851](#), 852, 853, [871](#)
    - error using, 897, 906
  - `\newdatelsorbian` (`babel`), [559](#)

- `\newdateusorbian` (babel), [559](#)
  - `\newenvironment`, [847](#), [848](#), [849](#), [850](#)
    - error using, [844](#), [897](#), [901](#), [905](#), [909](#), [914](#)
  - `\newfloat`
    - (float), [292](#), [293](#), [294](#), [312](#), [320](#)
    - (rotfloat), [298](#)
  - `\newfont`, [328](#)
  - `\newif`, [875](#)
  - `\newindex` (index), [682](#), [709](#), [721](#)
  - `\newlength`, [854](#), [875](#), [876](#), [883](#)
    - error using, [897](#)
  - newfont package, [464](#)
  - `\newline`, [860](#)
    - error using, [911](#)
    - (amsthm), [141](#), [142](#)
  - newline key value (caption), [310](#)
  - `\newline$`  $\TeX$  built-in function, [808](#), [810](#)
  - `\newpage`, [30](#), [234](#), [289](#)
    - (longtable), [261](#)
    - (multicol), [186](#)
    - (nfssfont.tex), [369](#)
  - `\newrefformat` (prettyref), [76](#)
  - news groups, [948](#)
  - `\newsavebox`, [90](#), [849](#), [868](#), [869](#), [870](#), [944](#)
    - error using, [897](#)
  - `\newstylenums` (eco), [383](#)
  - `\newsubfloat` (subfig), [320](#)
  - `\newtheorem`, [851](#)
    - error using, [906](#)
    - (amsthm), [138](#), [139](#), [140](#), [142](#)
  - `\newtheorem*` (amsthm), [139](#), [140](#), [143](#)
  - `\newtheoremstyle` (amsthm), [141](#), [142](#), [143](#)
  - `\newtie` (textcomp), [363](#), [366](#)
    - newzealand option (babel), [543](#)
  - `\nexists` (amssymb), [528](#)
  - next option (inputenc), [360](#)
  - `\nextcitefull` (jurabib), [725](#)
  - `\nextcitenotitle` (jurabib), [725](#)
  - `\nextcitereset` (jurabib), [725](#)
  - `\nextciteshort` (jurabib), [725](#)
  - nextpage package, [235](#), [236](#)
  - NFSS (New Font Selection scheme), [327](#)–[329](#)
  - nfssfont.tex package, [345](#), [369](#), [370](#), [434](#), [435](#), [509](#)
  - `\NG`, [457](#)
    - problems in T1, [417](#)
  - `\ng`, [458](#)
    - problems in T1, [417](#)
  - `\ngeq` (amssymb), [532](#)
  - `\ngeqq` (amssymb), [532](#)
  - `\ngeqslant` (amssymb), [532](#)
  - ngerman option (babel), [543](#), [544](#), [552](#), [657](#), [672](#), [734](#)
  - `\ngtr` (amssymb), [532](#)
  - `\ni`, [533](#)
  - nindent key (lettrine), [101](#)
  - `\nintt` (tlc), [464](#)
    - nintt option (rawfonts), [464](#)
  - `\niplus` (stmaryrd), [533](#)
  - `\nleftarrow` (amssymb), [534](#)
  - `\nleftarrow` (amssymb), [534](#)
  - `\nleftrightarrow` (amssymb), [534](#)
  - `\nleftrightarrow` (amssymb), [534](#)
  - `\nleq` (amssymb), [532](#)
  - `\nleqq` (amssymb), [532](#)
  - `\nleqslant` (amssymb), [532](#)
  - `\nless` (amssymb), [532](#)
  - `\nmid` (amssymb), [535](#)
  - `\nn` (tlc), [652](#)
  - `\nnearrow` (stmaryrd), [534](#)
  - `\nnwarrow` (stmaryrd), [534](#)
  - `\No` (babel), [563](#)
  - `\no` (babel), [563](#)
    - noadjust option (cite), [695](#)
  - `\noalign`, [266](#)
    - error using, [904](#)
  - noBBppl option (mathpazo), [378](#)
  - `\nobibliography`
    - (bibentry), [711](#)
    - (jurabib), [726](#), [727](#)
  - `\nobibliography*` (bibentry), [711](#)
  - nobottomtitles option (titlesec), [40](#)
  - nobottomtitles\* option (titlesec), [40](#)
  - `\nobreak`, [234](#)
  - `\nobreakdash` (amsmath), [83](#)
  - `\nobreakspace`, [313](#), [314](#)
  - `\NoCaseChange` (textcase), [86](#)
  - nocfg option (paralist), [138](#)
  - `\nochangebars` (changebar), [190](#)
  - `\nocite`, [691](#), [692](#), [693](#), [726](#), [772](#), [778](#), [793](#)
    - error using, [896](#)
    - problem using, [691](#)
    - warning using, [920](#)
  - (biblist), [774](#), [775](#)
  - (bibtopic), [753](#)
  - (bibunits), [751](#)
  - (jurabib), [723](#), [726](#), [737](#)–[741](#)
  - (multibib), [755](#)
- `\nocite*` (bibunits), [751](#)
- `\nocite{type}` (multibib), [755](#)
- nocompress option (cite), [694](#), [695](#)
- `\nocorr`, [345](#)
- `\nocorrlist`, [344](#)
- `\noextras{language}` (babel), [579](#), [588](#)
- `\noextrarussian` (babel), [589](#)
- nofancy option (rcsinfo), [839](#)
- nofighead option (endfloat), [290](#)
- nofiglist option (endfloat), [290](#)
- `\nofiles`
  - warning using, [925](#)
  - (longtable), [259](#)
- nofoot key/option (geometry), [209](#)



- nographics option (crop), [214](#)
- nogrey option (quotchap), [35](#)
- nohang key value (jurabib), [738](#)
- nohead key/options (geometry), [209](#)
- noheadfoot key/options (geometry), [209](#)
- noheads option (endfloat), [290](#)
- nohyphenation option (babel), [545](#)
- \noibidem (jurabib), [729](#)
- \noindent, [113](#), [114](#), [126](#), [250](#), [858](#), [862](#), [867](#), [869](#)  
(picins), [303](#)
- noindentafter option (titlesec), [40](#), [42](#)
- noinfo option (crop), [213](#)
- \nointerlineskip, [867](#)
- nointlimits option (amsmath), [491](#)
- \nolimits, [492](#)  
error using, [903](#)
- \nolinebreak, [692](#), [849](#), [943](#)  
(cite), [694](#)
- \nolinenumbers (lineno), [176](#)
- nolists option (endfloat), [290](#)
- nolol key (listings), [174](#)
- nomarkers option (endfloat), [290](#)
- \nombre (babel), [561](#), [562](#)
- nomove option (cite), [697](#)
- \nomtcpagenumbers (minitoc), [57](#)
- \nomtcrule (minitoc), [57](#)
- \nomtcrules (minitoc), [57](#)
- \non (tlc), [488](#)
- non-ASCII symbols, [842](#)
- non-English documents, *see* multilingual documents
- non-Latin alphabets
  - Arabic, [591](#)
  - Armenian, [592](#)
  - Chinese, [592](#)
  - Cyrillic, [569](#), [572](#), [574](#)–[983](#)
  - Ethiopian, [592](#)
  - Greek, [574](#), [575](#), [576](#)
  - Hebrew, [576](#), [577](#), [578](#), [579](#), [591](#)
  - Indian, [592](#)
  - Japanese, [592](#)
  - Korean, [592](#)
  - Manju (Mongolian), [592](#)
- non-numerical cross-references, [76](#), [77](#)
- \nonaheterov (hetarom), [613](#)
- nonamebreak option (natbib), [706](#)
- nonamlimits option (amsmath), [491](#)
- nonbreaking hyphen (–), [83](#), [93](#)
- none key value
  - (fancyvrb), [158](#), [159](#), [161](#), [165](#)
  - (listings), [172](#)
- \nonfrenchspacing, [428](#)
- \nonstopmode, [893](#)
- \nonumber (amsmath), [482](#)
- \nopagebreak, [234](#)
- \nopostamble (docstrip), [830](#)
- \nopreamble (docstrip), [829](#), [830](#)
- \noptcrules (minitoc), [57](#)
- \norm (tlc), [501](#)
- normal key value (jurabib), [717](#), [722](#), [732](#), [742](#)
- normal option (threeparttable), [279](#)
- normal font, [338](#)
- \normal@char(*char*) (babel), [589](#), [590](#)
- \normalcolor, [870](#)
- \normalem (ulem), [87](#)
- normalem option (ulem), [87](#)
- \normalfont, [29](#), [30](#), [113](#), [141](#), [148](#), [223](#), [339](#), [341](#), [344](#),  
[345](#), [464](#), [848](#), [870](#)
- normalizing, bibliographies, [780](#), [781](#), [786](#)
- \normalmarginpar, [127](#)
- \normalsize, [29](#), [30](#), [144](#), [146](#), [197](#), [342](#), [343](#), [373](#), [479](#),  
[480](#), [888](#), [911](#)
- normalsize key value (caption), [310](#)
- norsk option (babel), [543](#), [585](#)
- norsk.ldf file (babel), [585](#)
- norule option (footmisc), [119](#)
- noSeparatorLine option (ftpage), [325](#)
- nosort option (cite), [694](#), [695](#)
- nospace option (cite), [695](#)
- nostar option (titleref), [77](#)
- nostrict key value (jurabib), [729](#), [730](#)
- nosumlimits option (amsmath), [491](#)
- \not, [531](#), [533](#), [535](#)  
(iffthen), [877](#)
- notabhead option (endfloat), [290](#)
- notablist option (endfloat), [290](#)
- \notag (amsmath), [472](#), [473](#), [475](#), [482](#), [483](#), [499](#)
- notbib option (tocbibind), [48](#)
- notcite option (showkeys), [68](#)
- note B<sub>W</sub>TEX field, [690](#), [763](#), [764](#), [765](#), [773](#)
- Notes env. (tlc), [151](#)
- notes counter (tlc), [151](#)
- \notesname (endnotes), [126](#)
- notext option (crop), [214](#)
- \notin, [533](#)
- notindex option (tocbibind), [48](#)
- notlof option (tocbibind), [48](#)
- notlot option (tocbibind), [48](#)
- notoccite package, [697](#), [698](#)  
incompatible with hyperref, [698](#)
- notref option (showkeys), [68](#)
- nottoc option (tocbibind), [48](#)
- nottoday option (rcsinfo), [839](#)
- \nparallel (amssymb), [535](#)
- \nparallelslant (fourier), [392](#)
- \nplus (stmaryrd), [530](#)
- \nprec (amssymb), [532](#)
- \npreceq (amssymb), [532](#)
- \nrightarrow (amssymb), [534](#)
- \nrightharpoonright (amssymb), [534](#)
- \nshortmid (amssymb), [535](#)

- `\nshortparallel` (amssymb), 535
  - `\nsim` (amssymb), [531](#), [532](#)
  - `\nsubseteq` (amssymb), 533
  - `\nsubseteqq` (amssymb), 533
  - `\nsucc` (amssymb), 532
  - `\nsucceq` (amssymb), [531](#), [532](#)
  - `\nsupseteq` (amssymb), 533
  - `\nsupseteqq` (amssymb), 533
  - `\ntriangleleft` (amssymb), 533
  - `\ntrianglelefteq` (amssymb), 533
  - `\ntrianglelefteqslant` (stmaryrd), 533
  - `\ntriangleright` (amssymb), 533
  - `\ntrianglerighteq` (amssymb), 533
  - `\ntrianglerighteqslant` (stmaryrd), 533
  - `\nu`, 527
  - null.tex file, 901
  - num.names\$  $\TeX$  built-in function, 808, [811](#)
  - numarrows env. (tlc), [181](#)
  - number  $\TeX$  field, 763, 765
  - number of strings errors, 918
  - number width, tables of contents, 51
  - number-only citations, 691–698, *see also* citation systems
    - captions, 697
    - color, [695](#)
    - compressing citations, 714
    - customizing citations, [692](#), [693](#), 694, [695](#)
    - definition, 686
    - headings, 697
    - line breaks, 694
    - natbib package, 712–715
    - page ranges, disabling, 695
    - parentheses, [695](#)
    - punctuation, 694, [696](#), [697](#)
    - sort order, [693](#), [694](#), 695, 714
    - spaces, processing, 695
    - superscripts, [696](#), 697
    - unsorted citation style, 697
    - verbose mode, 696
  - numberblanklines key
    - (fancyvrb), [160](#)
    - (listings), 172
  - numbered key value (jurabib), 739
  - numbering
    - code lines, [172](#)
    - equations
      - resetting the counter, 485
      - subordinate sequences, 484, [485](#)
    - footnotes, 112, 115, [116](#), 122, [123–125](#)
    - headings, *see* document headings, numbering
    - lines, 175, 176, [177](#), [178](#), 179, [180](#), [181](#)
    - lines, typed text, 159, [160](#)
    - multilingual documents, 559, [560–563](#), 564
    - pages, *see* page numbers
    - sub-numbering float captions, 321, [322](#), 323
  - numberless key (titlesec), [43](#), [44](#)
    - numberless tables of contents, 59
  - `\numberline`, [33](#), [47](#), 48, 49, [50–52](#), 53
    - (titletoc), [61](#), [63](#)
  - numbers key
    - (fancyvrb), [159](#), [160](#), [163](#), [165](#)
    - (listings), [172](#)
  - numbers option (natbib), [712](#), [713](#), 714, [715](#)
  - numbersep key
    - (fancyvrb), [159](#), [160](#)
    - (listings), [172](#)
  - numberstyle key (listings), [172](#)
  - `\numberwithin` (amsmath), 485, 851
  - numbib option (tocbibind), 48
  - numerals, math symbols, 526–529
  - numindex option (tocbibind), 48
  - numquotation env. (lineno), 177, **180**
  - numquotation\* env. (lineno), 180
  - numquote env. (lineno), 177, **180**
  - numquote\* env. (lineno), 180
  - `\nVDash` (amssymb), 535
  - `\nVdash` (amssymb), 535
  - `\nvDash` (amssymb), 535
  - `\nvdash` (amssymb), 535
  - `\nwarrow`, 534
  - nynorsk option (babel), 543, [585](#)
- ## O
- 0 syntax (fancyhdr), 225, [226–230](#)
  - `\O`, 457
  - `\o`, 459
    - oaddress  $\TeX$  field (jurabib), 742
  - `\oarg` (ltxdoc), 834
  - `\oast` (stmaryrd), 531
  - `\obar` (stmaryrd), 531
    - obeyspaces option (url), 95
  - obeytabs key (fancyvrb), [160](#), [161](#)
  - oblique font, 333
  - `\oblong` (stmaryrd), 530
  - `\ocircle` (stmaryrd), 531
  - `\oday` (babel), [559](#)
    - odd key value (titlesec), [43](#)
    - odd keyword (makeindex), 657
  - `\oddpagelayoutfalse` (layouts), [200](#), [201](#)
  - `\oddsidemargin` rigid length, 194, 196, [199](#), 887
  - `\odot`, 531
    - (stmaryrd), 529
  - `\OE`, 457
  - `\oe`, 451, 459
  - `\officialeuro` (eurosym), 409
  - `\og` (babel), [552](#), [554](#)
  - `\ogreaterthan` (stmaryrd), 531
  - `\oiint` (fourier), [392](#)
  - `\oiint` (fourier), [392](#)
  - `\oint`, 536
    - old German font, [394](#), [395](#), 396

- `\olddateisorbian` (babel), [559](#)
- `\olddateusorbian` (babel), [559](#)
- oldfont package, [349](#), [464](#)
- oldstyle option (fourier), [393](#)
- OldStyleNums option (parallel), [183](#)
- `\oldstylenums`, [14](#), [383](#), [733](#)
  - (textcomp), [39](#), [367](#)
  - warning using, [926](#)
- `\olessthan` (stmaryrd), [531](#)
- `\olips` (lips), [83](#)
- `\Omega`, [479](#), [527](#)
  - (fourier), [392](#), [393](#)
- `\omega`, [527](#)
  - Omega, T<sub>E</sub>X extension, [592](#)
- `\ominus`, [531](#)
- `\omit`, error using, [904](#)
- omitted text, marking, *see* [ellipsis](#)
- OML font encoding, [416](#), [436](#), [453](#)
  - (ccfonts), [384](#)
  - (cmbright), [385](#)
  - (eulervm), [397](#)
- OMS font encoding, [365](#), [416](#), [436](#)
  - (ccfonts), [384](#)
  - (cmbright), [385](#)
  - (eulervm), [397](#)
- OMX font encoding, [416](#), [436](#)
  - (eulervm), [397](#)
- on-line access to CTAN, [950](#)
- `\onecolumn`, [184](#), [679](#), [680](#)
- onehalfspace env. (setspace), [107](#)
- `\onehalfspacing` (setspace), [107](#)
- online option (threeparttable), [278](#), [279](#)
- online resources, bibliographies, [773](#), [774](#)
- online tracing, [943](#)
- only option
  - (excludeonly), [20](#)
  - (rawfonts), [464](#)
- `\OnlyDescription` (doc), [817](#), [818](#), [821](#), [835](#)
- `\ontoday` (babel), [559](#)
- `\opcit` (jurabib), [731](#), [741](#)
  - opcit key/option (jurabib), [731](#), [741](#)
- open/close, math symbols, [498](#), [537](#)
- openbib option, [693](#)
- `\openin`, [432](#)
  - openout\_any env. variable (latex (web2c)), [832](#), [901](#)
- operator names, mathematical typesetting, [499](#), [500](#), [501](#)
- `\operatorname` (amsmath), [475](#), [500](#), [501](#)
- `\operatorname*` (amsmath), [500](#), [501](#)
- operators, math symbols, [490–493](#), [494](#), [495](#), [536](#)
  - multilingual documents, [564](#)
- `\oplus`, [531](#)
- `\opt` (optional), [21](#)
  - optional package, [21](#), [22](#)
  - optional arguments, [845](#), [850](#)
  - optional code execution, tables of contents, [59](#), [60](#)
  - optional fields, bibliography database, [762](#), [763](#)
- `\OptionNotUsed`, [879](#), [887](#)
  - options
    - class, [16](#)
    - declaring, [880](#), [881](#)
    - executing, [881](#), [882](#)
    - global, [17](#)
    - processing, [17](#), [18](#)
    - unused, [18](#)
  - opublisher B<sub>B</sub>T<sub>E</sub>X field (jurabib), [742](#)
- `\or`
  - in T<sub>E</sub>X error message, [899](#)
  - (ifthen), [877](#)
- ordinary math symbols, [526](#), [527](#), [528](#), [529](#)
- organization B<sub>B</sub>T<sub>E</sub>X field, [690](#), [763](#), [764](#), [765](#), [779](#)
- origin key (graphicx), [619](#), [624](#), [632](#), [633](#)
- originalparameters option (ragged2e), [106](#)
- ornamental boxes, [596–600](#)
- `\OrnamentDiamondSolid` (bbding), [403](#)
- ornaments, *see specific types of ornaments*
- osf option (mathpazo), [378](#)
- `\oslash`, [531](#)
- OT1 font encoding, [337](#), [346](#), [354](#), [416](#), [420](#), [430](#), [441](#), [442](#)
  - comparison with T1, [346](#), [355](#)
  - extensions, [566](#), [567](#)
  - for math fonts, [436](#), [437](#)
  - hyphenation in, [427](#), [902](#)
  - list of LICR objects, [455–463](#)
  - (avant), [372](#)
  - (babel), [566](#), [567](#), [590](#)
  - (bookman), [372](#)
  - (ccfonts), [384](#)
  - (chancery), [372](#)
  - (charter), [372](#)
  - (cmbright), [385](#)
  - (courier), [372](#)
  - (fourier), not supported, [391](#)
  - (helvet), [372](#)
  - (infomath), [523](#)
  - (newcent), [372](#)
  - (palatino), [372](#)
  - (pxfonts), [390](#), [391](#)
  - (times), [372](#)
  - (txfonts), [388](#), [389](#)
  - (utopia), [372](#)
- OT2 font encoding, [416](#)
  - (babel), [570](#)
- OT3 font encoding, [416](#)
- OT4 font encoding, [416](#)
- OT6 font encoding, [416](#)
- `\otherbeta` (fourier), [392](#), [393](#)
- otherlanguage env. (babel), [544](#), [545](#), [546](#)
  - otherlanguage\* env. (babel), [545](#)
- `\otherOmega` (fourier), [392](#), [393](#)
- `\otimes`, [489](#), [531](#)

- `\out` (euro), [98](#), [99](#)
  - `\outer`, [834](#)
    - outer key/option (geometry), [208](#)
    - outerbars option (changebar), [190](#)
    - outerbody option (sidecap), [323](#)
    - outercaption option (sidecap), [323](#)
  - `\outlfamily` (babel), [568](#)
  - outline font, [334](#)
  - `\output`, warning involving, [929](#), [930](#)
  - output encoding, [330](#), [361](#), [362](#), [447–463](#)
  - output files, indexes, [655](#), [657](#), [668](#), [674](#)
  - output files, specifying, [826](#), [827](#)
  - output style parameters, indexes, [661](#)
  - `\oval`, [596](#), [597](#), [608](#), [611](#)
    - warning using, [926](#)
    - (epic), [608](#), [609](#)
    - (epic), [608](#)
    - (pspicture), [639](#), [640](#), [641](#)
    - (texpicture), [640](#)
  - oval boxes, [596](#), [597](#)
  - `\Ovalbox` (fancybox), [596](#)
  - `\ovalbox` (fancybox), [596](#), [597](#), [598](#)
  - `\ovee` (stmaryrd), [531](#)
  - `\over`, [494](#)
    - overcite package, [696](#)
    - overflow errors, [917–919](#), *see also* troubleshooting
  - `\overfullrule` rigid length, [939](#)
    - output produced from, [939](#)
  - `\overleftarrow` (amsmath), [497](#)
  - `\overrightarrow` (amsmath), [497](#)
  - overload option (textcase), [87](#)
  - `\overrightarrow` (amsmath), [497](#)
  - `\overset` (amsmath), [483](#), [495](#)
  - `\overwithdelims`, [494](#)
  - `\owedge` (stmaryrd), [531](#)
  - `\owns`, [533](#)
  - `\oyear`  $\LaTeX$  field (jurabib), [742](#)
  - OzTeX program, [615](#)
  - `oztex` option (graphics), [615](#)
- P**
- `\P`, [63](#), [527](#)
    - (textcomp), [457](#)
  - `\p` (tlc), [83](#)
  - `p` syntax, [243](#), [244](#), [245–247](#), [249](#), [252](#), [263](#), [264](#)
    - error using, [905](#)
    - (tabulary), [253](#), [254](#)
  - `\p@enumi`, [129](#), [130](#)
  - `\p@enumii`, [129](#), [130](#)
  - `\p@enumiii`, [130](#)
  - `\p@enumiv`, [130](#)
    - package errors, *see specific package names*;
    - troubleshooting
  - package files, [6](#)
  - package loading part, [882](#)
    - package options, [16](#)
  - `\PackageError`, [885](#)
    - output produced from, [885](#)
  - `\PackageInfo`, [884](#), [885](#)
    - output produced from, [885](#)
  - `\PackageInfoNoLine`, [885](#)
    - packages, *see also specific packages*
      - combining in one file, [20](#), [21](#)
      - commands, [847](#), [879](#), [883–885](#)
      - definition, [16](#)
      - descriptions, on-line catalogue, [950](#)
      - documentation, finding, [954–956](#)
      - documenting, *see* documentation tools
      - file structure, [877–885](#)
      - local, distributing, [20](#), [21](#)
      - modifying, [18](#)
      - multiple, with same options, [18](#)
      - processing, [17](#), [18](#)
        - a4, [199](#), [202](#)
        - a4dutch, [202](#)
        - a4wide, [202](#)
        - a5, [202](#)
        - a5comb, [202](#)
    - accents, [494](#), [965](#)
    - ae, [356](#)
    - afterpage, [289](#)
    - alg, [168](#)
    - algorithmic, [168](#)
    - alltt, [152](#)
    - amscd, [467](#), [488](#), [489](#)
    - amsfonts, [383](#), [385](#), [386](#), [467](#), [509](#)
    - amsmath, [83](#), [138](#), [465–488](#), [489](#), [490–508](#), [524](#), [535](#), [964](#)
    - amsopn, [466](#)
    - amsrefs, [968](#)
    - amssymb, [383](#), [385](#), [386](#), [392](#), [467](#), [509](#), [511](#), [524–537](#)
    - amstext, [467](#)
    - amsthm, [138–144](#), [467](#), [964](#)
    - amsmath, [968](#)
    - amsxtra, [467](#), [495](#)
    - apalike, [692](#), [791](#)
    - array, [243–251](#), [280–282](#), [489](#)
    - arydshln, [267](#), [268](#)
    - askinclud, [19](#)
    - authordate1-4, [700](#), [791](#)
    - avant, [371](#), [373](#)
    - ba, [521](#)
    - babel, [539](#), [541](#), [542–591](#), [701](#), [733](#), [749](#), [915](#)
    - bang, [592](#)
    - bar, [612](#)
    - bbding, [403](#)
    - beton, [384](#), [397](#)
    - bibentry, [710](#), [711](#)
    - biblist, [774](#), [775](#)

packages (*cont.*)

bibtopic, 746, **753–755**  
 bibunits, xxvii, 746, **749–753**  
 bigfoot, 117, 122  
 bm, 510–513  
 bookman, 205, **371**  
 booktabs, 269–272  
 boxedminipage, 595  
 breqn, **470**, 968  
 calc, 871, 872  
 camel, xxvi, 681, **743–745**, 965  
 captcont, 314  
 caption, xxvi, **295**, **296**, **308–315**, 316, 323  
 caption2, **308**, 315  
 ccfonts, **383–385**, 399, 515  
 chams, 521  
 chancery, 371  
 changebar, 189–191  
 chappg, 216, 217  
 chapterbib, 701, 707, 746, **747–749**, 771  
 charter, 371  
 chicago, 692, **699**, 700  
 chmath, 521  
 cite, xxvi, **693–697**  
 citehack, 573  
 cjk, 592  
 cmbright, **385**, **386**, 523  
 color, 214, 969  
 colortbl, 265, 266  
 courier, 370, **371**  
 crop, 212–214  
 curves, 611  
 custom-bib, xxvii, 772, 789, 791, **798–804**  
 dcolumn, 274–276  
 delarray, 489, 490  
 denag, 592  
 diagram, 488, 965  
 dingbat, 400, 401  
 doc, 152, 583, **813–824**, 834  
 docstrip, 22, **824–834**, 975, 977  
 dvipsnames, 191  
 ecltree, 612  
 eco, 63, 64, **383**  
 eepic, 603, **607–611**, 637, 638  
 eepicemu, 611  
 ellipsis, xxvii, **82**  
 endfloat, xxvii, **289–291**  
 endnotes, xxvii, **125**, **126**  
 enumerate, 134  
 epic, **600–607**, 609, 611, 612  
 ethiop, 592  
 eucal, 396, 467  
 eufrak, **396**, 397, 398, **467**  
 euler, 397, 398  
 eulerm, **397–399**, 435, 515

packages (*cont.*)

euro, xxvi, **96–99**  
 europs, 411  
 eurosans, 98, 99, **410**, **411**  
 eurosym, 408, 409  
 excludeonly, 19, 20  
 exscale, 85, **368**  
 extramarks, xxvii, 218, **220**, **221**  
 fancybox, 596–600  
 fancyhdr, xxvii, 220, **224–232**  
 fancyheadings, 224  
 fancyref, 76  
 fancyvrb, 152, 153, **155–168**, 169, 172–174  
 fix-cm, xxvii, 355, **356**  
 fixltx2e, 232  
 flafter, 70, **286**  
 float, **291–295**, 923  
 floatfig, 299  
 floatflt, 299  
 fltpage, 325, 326  
 fncychap, **34**, **35**, 36  
 fncylab, 71  
 fnpara, 118  
 fontenc, 7, 155, 156, **361**, **362**, 888  
 fontinst, 88, 376, 419, 420, 437, 438, 971  
 footmisc, xxvii, **114–120**, 122, 123  
 footnpag, 116  
 fourier, xxvii, 371, **391–393**, 515  
 fp, 96  
 french, **591**, 970  
 ftncright, **114**, 176  
 fvr-b-ex, 163  
 geometry, xxvii, 200, **206–211**  
 graphics, 296, **613–618**, 620, **624–631**, 954, 969  
 graphicx, 613–615, 618–624, 631–633  
 graphpap, 640  
 grmath, 564  
 harvard, 68, **700**, 704, **792**, 801  
 hebc-al, 558  
 hebfont, 578  
 helvet, **370**, **371**, 373, 424  
 here, 294  
 hetarom, 613  
 hhl-line, 266, 267  
 hvams, 523  
 hvmath, 523  
 hyperref, **78**, 175, 643, 701, 706  
 ifsym, 403–405  
 ifthen, 872–877  
 indentfirst, **32**, 565  
 index, 665, **681**, **682**, 701  
 indxcite, 681  
 infomath, 523  
 inputenc, 7, 175, 329, **357–361**, **443–447**, 571, 578  
 jmb, 792

packages (*cont.*)

jurabib, xxvi, **715–743**, 745, 792  
 keyval, 206, 308, 623  
 kuvio, 488, 980  
 lastpage, xxvii, **216**  
 latexsym, 464  
 layout, 199  
 layouts, xxvii, 195, **199–202**  
 ledmac, 117, 982  
 lettrine, 99–101  
 lineno, xxvii, **176–181**, 182  
 lips, 82, 83  
 listings, xxvi, 154, **168–175**  
 lmodern, 357  
 longtable, 259–263  
 lscap, 211, 212  
 lucidabr, 339, 521  
 luximono, 386–388  
 makeidx, **649**, 652, 656  
 manjutex, 592  
 manyfoot, xxvi, **122–125**  
 marvosym, xxvii, **401–403**, **411**, **412**  
 mathpazo, **371**, 373, **377**, **378**, 519  
 mathpple, **371**, 373, 377  
 mathptm, **371**, 373, 376, 377  
 mathptmx, 370, **371**, 373, **376**, **377**, 388–390, 517  
 mathtime, 352  
 minitoc, xxvii, **56–58**  
 moredefs, 82, 83  
 morefloats, 912  
 moreverb, 153  
 mparhack, 127  
 mtcoff, 58  
 multibib, 746, 754, **755**, **756**  
 multicol, 176, **184–189**, 232, 299  
 multirow, 273, 274  
 named, 792  
 nar, 792  
 natbib, xxvii, 68, **700–710**, **712–715**, 801  
 nature, 792  
 newapa, 792  
 newcent, 371  
 newfont, 464  
 nextpage, 235, 236  
 nfssfont.tex, 345, **369**, **370**, 434, 435, 509  
 notoccite, 697, 698  
 oldfont, 349, **464**  
 optional, 21, 22  
 overcite, 696  
 palatino, 101, **371**, 398, 399  
 pamath, 519  
 paralist, xxvi, **132–138**  
 parallel, xxvii, **181–184**  
 perpage, xxvi, **120**, **121**  
 picinpar, 108, 109

packages (*cont.*)

picins, 299, **302–306**  
 pict2e, xxvii, 638  
 pifont, **378–381**, 401, 403  
 placeins, 288, 289  
 prettyref, 75, 76  
 pspicture, **638–641**, 955  
 pstricks, **594**, 643, 969, 970  
 pxfonts, **390**, **391**, 511, 519  
 quotchap, 35, 36  
 ragged2e, xxvii, **105**, **106**  
 rawfonts, 464  
 rcs, 837, 838  
 rcsinfo, 838, 839  
 relsize, xxvi, **83–85**, 156  
 remreset, 851  
 repeatindex, 680  
 rotating, 212, **296–298**, **633**, **634**  
 rotfloat, 298  
 rplain, 224  
 scrpage, 237  
 seminar, 596  
 setspace, **106–108**, 204  
 shadow, 595  
 shorttoc, 55  
 shortvrb, **152**, **153**, 816, 885  
 showidx, 656, **680**, 681  
 showkeys, **68**, 701  
 showtags, 778  
 sidecap, xxvii, **323–325**  
 soul, xxvi, **88–92**  
 stmaryrd, 498, **524–537**  
 subfig, xxvi, 309, **315–321**  
 subfigure, 315  
 subfloat, xxvi, **321–323**  
 supertabular, **256–259**, 261  
 Tabbings, 242  
 tabs, 269  
 tabularx, 250, **251–253**  
 tabulary, 251, **253–255**  
 texpicture, 639, 640  
 textcase, 85–87  
 textcomp, 89, **362–368**, 388, 453–455  
 theorem, 140  
 threeparttable, xxvi, **278**, **279**  
 times, 370, 371  
 tipa, xxvii, **405–407**, 416  
 titleref, 76, 77  
 titlesec, xxvii, **36–45**, 65, 224  
 titletoc, xxvii, 56, **58–66**  
 tlc, 983  
 tocibind, **48**, 681  
 trace, **945**, **946**, 976  
 tracefnt, 368, 369  
 truncate, 232, 233

packages (*cont.*)

- txfonts, 388–390, 510, 511, 517
- typearea, xxvii, 203–206, 207, 237
- ucs, 361
- ulem, 87, 88
- upquote, xxvii, 153–155
- upref, 467
- url, xxvi, 93–96, 802
- utopia, 371
- varioref, 68–75, 544
- verbatim, 153, 155
- vmargin, 202, 203
- wasysym, 401
- wrapfig, 176, 299–302
- xdoc, 814
- xdoc2, 814
- xr, 78
- xr-hyper, 78
- xspace, 80, 81
- xypic, 593, 969
- yfonts, 394–396

`\PackageWarning`, 881, 884

- output produced from, 884

`\PackageWarningNoLine`, 884

- page counter, 215, 216, 851
- page key (titlesec), 43, 44
- page boundaries, ignoring in bibliographies, 729
- page breaks, *see also* space parameters
  - badness rating, 859
  - equations, 479–481
  - indexes, 680
  - multipage tables, 257
  - page layout, 234, 235
  - troubleshooting, 935–939
- page contents, symbolic display, 935–937
- page layout
  - asymmetrical, 208, 209
  - auto-completion, 206, 207, 208, 209, 210, 211
  - binding, and the inner margin, 207
  - BLANK PAGE on generated pages, 236
  - body area, 207
  - changing, 197, 198, 199
  - crop marks, 212, 213, 214
  - displaying, 199, 200, 201, 202
  - driver margins, 196
  - footer height, 201
  - footnotes, 207
  - for computer display, 206
  - geometrical dimensions, 193–197
  - headings, suppressing, 201
  - in relation to paper size, 203, 204, 205, 206
  - inner margins, 195
  - KOMA-Script classes, 236, 237
  - landscape mode, 211, 212
  - lines per page, 198

page layout (*cont.*)

- magnification, 210
- marginal notes, 209
- margins, 195, 208, 211
- outer margins, 195
- packages for, 202, 203
- page breaks, 234, 235
- paper size options, 195
- paper size, specifying, 206
- parameter defaults, 196
- recto-verso layout, 43, 195, 199, 208, 209
- running headers/footers, 207, 209
- schematic page diagram, 194
- symmetrical, 208, 209
- text area, 207
- trimming marks, 212, 213, 214
- two-sided printing, 199, *see also* recto-verso layout
- visual formatting, 234–236
- white space, 198

## page numbers, 215, 216

- by chapters, 216, 217
- cross-references, 69
- current page, referencing, 215
- indexes

- composed (folio-by-chapter), 665
- duplicates, 650
- encapsulating, 652, 671, 672
- formatting, 651, 652
- makeindex options, 664, 665
- roman numerals, 666, 677
- sort order, 657, 664, 678, 679
- xindy options, 678, 679

- last page, referencing, 216, 226

- odd, forcing, 235
- referencing, 215
- resetting the counter, 216
- suppressing, 222

## page ranges

- disabling in bibliographies, 695
- indexes

- disabling, 657, 668, 672, 677
- limiting length, 677

## page styles (headers and footers), 221, 222

- customizing
  - by floating objects, 231
  - by page style, 225–227, 228–230
  - globally, 224, 225
  - saving a customization, 230
- dictionary type headers, 231, 232
- float pages, 231
- for two-sided printing, 223, 226
- mark commands, 217, 218, 219, 220, 221, 229, 230
- multiple text lines, 225
- named, 230
- rules (graphic lines), 224

- page styles (headers and footers) (*cont.*)
  - truncating text, 232, [233](#)
- page total field, bibliographies, 743
- page\_compositor keyword (makeindex), [660](#), [665](#)
- page\_precedence keyword (makeindex), [661](#), [665](#)
- \pagebreak, [102](#), 127, [234](#), [235](#), 480, 599, 930
  - (multicol), 188, 189
- \pagedesign (layouts), [200](#), [201](#), 202, [203](#)
- \pagediagram (layouts), [199](#), [200](#), 202
- \pagefootnoterule (footmisc), 119
- \PageIndex (doc), 817, 821
- \pagename (babel), 547
- \pagenumbering, [215](#), [216](#), [217](#), [888](#)
  - (chappg), [216](#), [217](#)
  - (varioref), 69
- \pageref, [66](#), 68, [69](#), 73, 74, [111](#), [215](#), 216, [876](#)
  - combining with \ref, *see* varioref package
  - warning using, 927
  - (lineno), 178
  - (prettyref), 75
  - (showkeys), 68
  - (xr), 78
- pages B<sub>A</sub>S<sub>E</sub>T<sub>E</sub>X field, [690](#), [763](#), [765](#), [772](#)
- \pagestyle, [221](#), [222](#), [224–233](#), [598](#), 599, [680](#), 887
  - forcing empty, 222, [235](#)
  - (fancyhdr), [230](#)
  - (nextpage), forcing empty, [236](#)
  - (rcs), 838
- \pagevalues (layouts), 202
- pagewise option (lineno), 181
- palatino package, 101, [371](#), 398, 399
- Palatino font
  - alternative support, 390, 391
  - description, 375
  - in math and text, [377](#), [378](#), [390](#), [391](#), [518](#), [519](#)
- Palatino Math font, [519](#)
- pamath package, 519
- paper key/option (geometry), [206](#), 210
- paper document class, 20
- paper size
  - and page layout, 203, [204](#), [205](#), 206
  - options, 195
  - specifying, 206
- \paperheight rigid length, [194](#), [196](#), [880](#)
  - (crop), 212
- paperheight key/option (geometry), [206](#), 208, [213](#), [214](#)
- papersize key/option (geometry), 211
- \paperwidth rigid length, [194](#), [196](#), [880](#)
  - (crop), 212
- paperwidth key/option (geometry), [206](#), 208, [213](#), [214](#)
- \par, 178, [250](#), 846, [848](#), 908
  - not allowed in argument, 846
  - (lineno), 177, 178
- para option
  - (footmisc), 117, [118–120](#), 122, [729](#)
  - (manyfoot), 122, [123](#), [124](#)
  - (threeparttable), [278](#), [279](#)
- para\* option (manyfoot), 122, [123](#)
- \paradescriptionlabel (paralist), [138](#)
- \paragraph, [23](#), [27](#)
  - (minitoc), 57
- paragraph counter, [24](#), [851](#)
- paragraph boxes, 860, [862](#), [863–866](#)
- paragraph break algorithm
  - adjusting, 849, 850
  - second-last line, [849](#), 850
  - tracing, 940–943
- paragraph breaks, troubleshooting, 939–943
- paragraph format, tables of contents, 62, [63](#), [64](#)
- paragraph options, in tables, [245](#), [246](#)
- paragraph separation, float captions, [311](#)
- \paragraph\*, 23
- \paragraphdesign (layouts), 202
- \paragraphdiagram (layouts), 202
- paragraphs
  - boxed, [600](#)
  - centered, 104
  - flush left, 103–105, [106](#)
  - flush right, 104
  - images in, [108](#), [109](#)
  - indentation after heading, multilingual documents, 565
  - interline spacing, *see* leading
  - interword spacing, 102, 103
  - justifying, 102, 103, [104](#), [105](#), 106
  - leading, 106, [107](#), 108, [343](#), 373
  - lengthening, 943
  - ragged right, 103–105, [106](#)
  - rectangular holes in, [108](#), [109](#)
  - shortening, 943
  - troubleshooting, 939–943
  - unjustified, 103–106
- paralist package, xxvi, [132–138](#)
- paralist.cfg file (paralist), 138
- Parallel env. (parallel), [181](#), [182](#), [183](#), 184
  - problems with large objects, [183](#)
- \parallel, 535
  - parallel package, xxvii, [181–184](#)
- \ParallelAtEnd (parallel), [183](#)
- \ParallelDot (parallel), [183](#)
- \ParallelLText (parallel), [182](#), [183](#)
- \ParallelPar (parallel), [182](#)
- \ParallelRText (parallel), [182](#), [183](#)
- \ParallelUserMidSkip rigid length (parallel), 181
- parameter stack size errors, 918, 919
- \parbox, 104, [629–631](#), [862](#), [863](#), 865, [866](#), 870
  - justification in, 104, 106
  - problems with optional s argument, [930](#)



- parens key value
  - (caption), [310](#), [311](#)
  - (subfig), [317](#), [320](#)
  - (tlc), [313](#)
- parensfirst key value (tlc), [314](#)
- parentequation counter (amsmath), [484](#)
- parentheses, bibliographies
  - number-only citation systems, [695](#)
  - short-title citation system, [735](#)
- `\parfillskip` length, [264](#), [311](#)
- `\parg` (ltxdoc), [834](#)
- `\parindent` rigid length, [133](#), [182](#), [245](#), [246](#), [679](#), [680](#), [867](#)
- `\parpic` (picins), [302](#), [303-306](#)
- `\parsep` length, [145](#)
- `\parskip` length, [28](#), [30](#), [679](#), [680](#), [934](#), [935](#), [937](#)
- `\parskip` key/option (caption), [311](#)
- `\part`, [22](#), [23](#), [25](#), [28](#), [32](#), [49](#)
  - producing unwanted page number, [222](#)
  - (minitoc), partial contents for, [57](#)
  - (titlesec), [37](#)
  - (titletoc), partial contents for, [64](#)
- part counter, [24](#), [25](#), [851](#), [853](#)
- `\part*`, [23](#), [32](#)
- `\partial`, [392](#), [490](#), [527](#)
- partial tables of contents, [64](#), [65](#), [66](#)
- `partial.toc` file (tlc), [60](#)
- `\partname`, [34](#)
  - (babel), [547](#)
- `\partoc` (minitoc), [57](#)
- `\partopsep` length, [145](#)
- Pascal key value (listings), [171-174](#)
- pass key/option (geometry), [211](#)
- `\PassOptionsToClass`, [835](#), [879](#), [886](#), [887](#)
- `\PassOptionsToPackage`, [879](#), [880](#), [881](#), [882](#), [883](#)
- `\path`
  - (eepicemu), [611](#)
  - (eepic), [609](#), [610](#)
  - (url), [93](#), [94](#), [95](#), [96](#)
- paths, drawing, [610](#)
- paths, typesetting, [93-95](#), [96](#)
- pattern memory errors, [919](#)
- `\pausing`, [945](#)
- pausing option (tracefmt), [369](#)
- Pazo font, [377](#), [378](#), [509](#), [518](#)
- `\pcharpath` (pst-char), [414](#)
- `\pcheck` (tlc), [876](#)
- `pctex32` option (graphics), [615](#)
- `pctex32` program, [615](#)
- `pctexhp` option (graphics), [615](#)
- `pctexhp` program, [615](#)
- `pctexps` option (graphics), [615](#)
- `pctexps` program, [615](#)
- `pctexwin` option (graphics), [615](#)
- `pctexwin` program, [615](#)
- `.pcx` file extension, [626](#)
- `.pdf` file extension, [7](#), [8](#), [9](#), [356](#)
- PDF (Portable Document Format), *see also* PostScript; SVG
  - definition, [642](#)
  - generating from TeX, [643](#)
  - links, [643](#)
  - navigation, [643](#)
  - searching, [356](#)
  - test files, [643](#), [644](#)
  - vs. PostScript, [642](#)
- PDF documents, searching, [356](#)
- `pdflatex` option (crop), [213](#)
- `pdftex` key/option (geometry), [210](#)
- `pdftex` option (graphics), [615](#)
- `pdftex` program, [615](#), [639](#)
- `\Peace` (bbding), [403](#)
- `\penalty`, [936](#), [937](#), [938](#)
  - period key value
    - (caption), [310](#), [311](#), [313](#), [324](#)
    - (subfig), [316](#)
  - period (`.`), shorthand character, [558](#)
  - periodical BibTeX entry type (jurabib), [719](#), [742](#)
  - periods, three consecutive (...), *see* ellipsis
  - perl program, [760](#), [775](#), [776](#), [955](#)
- `\perp`, [535](#)
  - perpage option
    - (footmisc), [116](#), [124](#), [729](#)
    - (manyfoot), [125](#)
  - perpage package, xxvi, [120](#), [121](#)
  - persistent errors, [892](#)
- `\Pfund` (marvosym), [412](#)
- `phaip` BibTeX style, [792](#), [796](#)
- `\phantom`, [473](#), [474](#), [505](#)
- `phapalik` BibTeX style (apalike), [792](#)
- `phcpc` BibTeX style, [792](#)
- `phdthesis` BibTeX entry type, [763](#), [765](#)
- `\Phi`, [527](#)
- `\phi`, [479](#), [527](#)
  - `phiaea` BibTeX style, [792](#)
  - `phjcp` BibTeX style, [792](#)
  - `phnf` BibTeX style, [792](#)
  - `phnfllet` BibTeX style, [792](#)
- `\phone` (wasysym), [401](#)
- `\PhoneHandset` (bbding), [403](#)
  - `phpf` BibTeX style, [792](#)
  - `phppcf` BibTeX style (apalike), [792](#)
  - `phreport` BibTeX style, [792](#)
  - `phrmp` BibTeX style, [792](#)
- `\Pi`, [527](#)
- `\pi`, [512](#), [527](#)
  - $\Pi$  font, [378](#), [379-382](#)
  - `Piautolist` env. (pifont), [381](#)
  - `pic` program, [637](#)
- `\piccaption` (picins), [305](#), [306](#)
- `\piccaptioninside` (picins), [305](#)
- `\piccaptionoutside` (picins), [305](#), [306](#)

- `\piccaptionside` (picins), 305
- `\piccaptiontopside` (picins), 305
- `\pichskip` (picins), [303](#), [304](#), 305
- picinpar package, 108, 109
- picins package, 299, [302–306](#)
  - combined with caption, 306
- `\picskip` (picins), [303](#), [304](#)
- `\picsquare` (epic), [602](#), 605
- .pict file extension, 626
- pict2e package, xxvii, 638
- picture env., 488, 600, 634
  - (pspicture), 638, [639–641](#)
  - (texpicture), 639, [640](#)
- `\Pifill` (pifont), [381](#)
- `\Pifont` (pifont), [380](#)
  - pifont package, [378–381](#), 401, 403
- `\Piline` (pifont), [381](#)
  - Pilist env. (pifont), [381](#)
- `\Pisymbol` (pifont), [380](#), [401](#), [403](#)
- `\pitchfork` (amssymb), 535
- .pk file extension, 327, 594
- placeins option (minitoc), 58
- placeins package, 288, 289
- plain L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X style, [691–693](#), 709, [791](#), [792](#), [793](#), [806](#), [807](#)
  - (bibtopic), 753, [754](#), [755](#)
  - (bibunits), 750
  - (cite), [693–697](#)
  - (natbib), [709](#), [714](#)
- plain key (float), 292
- plain page style, [33](#), [222](#), [223](#), 230, [679](#), [680](#)
  - (fancyhdr), 230
  - (rplain), 224
- plain text files, 6
- plainnat L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X style (natbib), 709, [710](#), 736, [793](#)
- plaintop key (float), 292
- plainyr L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X style, 793
- `\plitemsep` length (paralist), 132
- plotting scientific data, *see* graphs
- `\plparsep` length (paralist), 132
- `\plpartopsep` length (paralist), 132
- `\pltopsep` length (paralist), 132
- `\Plus` (bbling), [403](#)
- `\plus` (euro), [99](#)
  - plus syntax, [63](#), [91](#), 415, 695, [854](#), [855](#), 929, 935
- `\PlusOutline` (bbling), [403](#)
- `\pm`, 530
- pmatrix env. (amsmath), [486](#)
  - error using, 907
- `\pmb` (bm), 510
- `\pmod`, [492](#), [493](#)
  - .png file extension, 8, 642–644, 896
  - .png file extension, 626
- `\pod` (amsmath), 492, [493](#)
- `\pointedenum` (paralist), 134
  - pointedenum option (paralist), [134](#)
- `\pointlessenum` (paralist), 134
  - pointlessenum option (paralist), 134
  - points, font size, 335
  - Polish, [567](#)
    - polish option (babel), 543, [567](#)
- `\polishrz` (babel), [567](#)
- `\polishzx` (babel), [567](#)
  - polutoniko attribute (babel), 549, [550](#), [574](#), 585
  - polutonikogreek option (babel), 543, 585
- pool size errors, 919
- pop\$ L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X built-in function, 808
- `\poptabs`, error using, 908
- portability, commands, 842
- Portable Document Format (PDF), *see* PDF
- portable files, bibliographies, 775
- portrait key/option (geometry), 207
- portuges option (babel), 543
- portuguese option (babel), 543
- position key/option
  - (caption), [312](#), [318](#)
  - (subfig), 317, 318
- `\possessivecite`
  - (harvard), [700](#), 703
  - (tlc), [703](#)
- `\postamble` (docstrip), 829
  - postamble keyword (makeindex), [653](#), [660](#), [661](#)
  - postambles, creating, 829, 830
  - postbreak key (listings), [173](#)
- `\postdisplaypenalty`, 480
- `\postmulticol` rigid length (multicol), 185, 186
  - PostScript, 635, *see also* PDF; SVG
    - arrowhead length, 641
    - circles, 639
    - curves, 641
    - definition, 635
    - dvips driver, 637
    - encoding, 388, [389](#), [390](#)
    - extended picture env., 638, 639, [640](#)
    - extended or changed commands, 639–641
    - generating missing fonts, 637
    - line thickness, 640, [641](#)
    - lines, 639–641
    - OpenType fonts, 636, 637
    - ovals, [639](#)
    - test files, 643, 644
    - Type 1 fonts, 636, 637
    - vectors, 639–641
    - vs. PDF, 642
  - PostScript fonts, 354, 355
  - PostScript New Font Selection scheme (PSNFSS), *see* PSNFSS
- `\pounds`, 459, 527
- `\Pr`, 500
  - pre-notes, bibliographies, [721](#)

- preamble, *see also* commands
  - bibliography database, 771, 772
  - creating, 829, 830
  - database format, bibliographies, 771, 772
  - defining fonts, *see* font commands, low level
  - document, 16, 17
  - documentation commands, list of, 820–824
  - of tables, 244–248
  - options, in tables, 243, 244, 254
- `\preamble` (docstrip), 829, 830
- preamble keyword (makeindex), 653, 660, 661
- `preamble$`  $\TeX$  built-in function, 808
- prebreak key (listings), 173
- `\prec`, 532
- `\precapprox` (amssymb), 532
- `\preccurlyeq` (amssymb), 532
- `\preceq`, 532
- `\precnapprox` (amssymb), 532
- `\precneqq` (amssymb), 532
- `\precnsim` (amssymb), 532
- `\precsim` (amssymb), 532
- predefined layouts, document headings, 34, 35
- predefined text, document headings, 34
- `\predisplaypenalty`, 480
- `\prefacename` (babel), 547, 589
- preload.cfg file, 429
- `\premulticols` rigid length (multicol), 185
- `\pretolerance`, 941
  - (multicol), 186
- pretty-printing, bibliographies, 777, 779, 780
- `\prettyref` (prettyref), 75, 76
- prettyref package, 75, 76
- `\prevdepth` rigid length, 865, 945
  - error using, 865, 902, 914
- price  $\TeX$  field (BibTeXMng), 789
- `\prime`, 528
- primitives
  - displaying, 934
  - tracing, 945
  - troubleshooting, 934, 945
- `\primo` (babel), 563
- printbib program, 776
- `\printbibliography` (camel), 744
- `\PrintChanges` (doc), 817, 818, 821
- `\printcontents` (titletoc), 64, 65
- `\PrintDescribeEnv` (doc), 824
- `\PrintDescribeMacro` (doc), 824
- `\PrintEnvName` (doc), 824
- printer points, 335
- printheadings option (bibtopic), 753
- `\printheadingsfalse` (layouts), 201, 203
- `\PrintIndex` (doc), 817, 818, 821
- `\printindex`
  - (index), 682, 710, 721
  - (makeidx), 649, 669
- printing
  - bibliographies, 774, 775, 776, 777
  - computer code, *see* computer code, printing
  - doc package, 813, 814
  - parts, 816, 835
  - selected document versions, 21, 22
  - two-sided, *see also* recto-verso layout
    - page styles, 223, 226
    - turning on, 199
- `\PrintMacroName` (doc), 824
- `\printparametersfalse` (layouts), 201, 203
- `\printtime` (tlc), 871
- problem resolution, *see* troubleshooting
- proc document class, 467
- proceedings  $\TeX$  entry type, 690, 763
- process flow
  - bibliographies, 806–809
  - citations, 687–689
  - index generation, 648, 673
  - $\TeX$ , 9
- `\processdelayedfloats` (endfloat), 291
- processing errors, *see* troubleshooting
- `\ProcessOptions`, 879, 882, 886, 887
- `\ProcessOptions*`, 879, 882
- `\prod`, 491, 495, 496, 536
- `\Prog` (tlc), 654
- program code, printing, *see* computer code, printing
- program files, obtaining
  - CD-ROM, 948, 949
  - ftp, 948, 952–954
  - web access, 950
- programs, bibliographies
  - $\TeX++$ , 760
  - $\TeX8$ , 759
  - 8-bit version, 759
  - bibulus, 760
  - Java version, 760
  - M $\TeX$ , 761
  - multilingual version, 761
  - perl version, 760
  - XML aware, 760
- progress messages, suppressing during index generation, 657, 668, 674
- `\projlim` (amsmath), 500
- proof env. (amsthm), 143, 144
- `\proofmodetrue` (index), 681, 682
- `\proofname` (babel), 547
- proofs, *see* headed lists
- properties, *see* options
- proportional fonts, 331, 332
- `\propto`, 535
- `\protect`, 33, 46, 47, 48, 72, 130, 166, 468, 892, 893, 894, 895, 913
  - in `\index`, 654, 666
  - no help with `\url`, 94

- `\protect` (*cont.*)
    - (ifthen), 873
    - (textcase), 86
  - `\protected@edef`, 892
  - `\providecommand`, 749, 847
    - ( $\LaTeX$ ), 771
  - `\providecommand*`, 847
  - `\providehyphenmins` (babel), 586
  - `\ProvidesClass`, 877, 878, 879, 886, 888
    - warning using, 920
  - `\ProvidesFile`, 432, 437, 438, 446, 450, 878, 879
    - warning using, 922
    - (inputenc), 446, 447
  - `\ProvidesLanguage` (babel), 583
  - `\ProvidesPackage`, 878, 879, 883
    - warning using, 926
    - (babel), 583
  - `\ProvideTextCommandDefault`, 446, 454
    - (inputenc), 446
  - `\PS` (tlc), 843, 844
  - `.ps` file extension, 8, 9, 625
  - `.ps.bb` file extension (graphics), 626
  - `.ps.gz` file extension, 625, 626
    - (graphics), 626
  - `\ps@{style}`, 223
  - `\ps@plain`, 223, 886
  - `\ps@titlepage` (doc), 824
    - psamsfonts option
      - (amssymb), 468
      - (amssymb), 468
      - (eucal), 468
      - (eufrak), 468
    - psfrag program, 594
  - `\Psi`, 527
  - `\psi`, 497, 527
    - PSNFSS (PostScript New Font Selection scheme), 370, 371,
      - 372, 373, *see also* NFSS
      - Avant Garde Gothic, 374
      - Bitstream Charter, 374
      - classification of font families, 372
      - Courier, 374
      - fonts used, 371
      - Helvetica, 370, 375
      - ITC Bookman, 374
      - leading, 373
      - New Century Schoolbook, 375
      - Palatino
        - alternative support, 390, 391
        - description, 375
        - in math and text, 377, 378, 390, 391, 518
      - Pi, 378–381
      - sans serif fonts, 373
      - Times Roman
        - alternative support, 388–390
        - description, 375
    - PSNFSS (PostScript New Font Selection scheme) (*cont.*)
      - in math and text, 376, 377, 516
      - text symbol alternatives, 388, 389, 390
      - Utopia, 375
      - Zapf Chancery, 376
    - pspicture package, 638–641, 955
    - pspicture.ps file (dvips), 639
    - psprint option (graphics), 615
    - psprint program, 615
    - pstoedit program, 646
    - pstricks package, 594, 643, 969, 970
    - .ptc file extension (titletoc), 64
    - `\ptcCfont` (minitoc), 57
    - publisher  $\LaTeX$  field, 690, 717, 763, 765, 772
    - pubps option (graphics), 615
    - punctuation
      - bibliographies
        - number-only citation systems, 694, 696, 697
        - short-title citation system, 738
      - headed lists, 141
      - math symbols, 535, 536
      - multilingual documents
        - spacing after, 564
        - special cases, 591
      - number-only citations, 694, 696, 697
      - short-title citations, 738
    - purify\$  $\LaTeX$  built-in function, 808
  - `\pushtabs`, error using, 908
  - `\put`, 605, 606
    - (epic), 604, 605, 606, 607
    - (pspicture), 641
  - `\putbib` (bibunits), 750, 751, 752
  - `\putfile` (epic), 605
    - PXfonts, 518
  - pxfonts package, 390, 391, 511, 519
    - tight letters with, 391
  - pybcheck program, 787
  - pybconvert program, 787
  - pybliographer program, 784–787
  - pybliographic program, 784–786
  - pycompact program, 787
  - .pz file extension, 626
- ## Q
- `\qauthor` (quotchap), 35, 36
  - `\qed` (amsthm), 144
    - QED (□) symbol, 143, 144
  - `\qedhere` (amsthm), 144
  - `\qedsymbol` (amsthm), 143
  - `\qqquad`, 508, 856
  - `\QU` (tlc), 877
  - `\quad`, 508, 849, 850, 856
    - quad key value (caption), 311
    - quarter-circles, *see* epic package; eepic package
  - `\quarto` (babel), 563

- question mark (?), shorthand character, [554](#)
  - quiet mode, index generation, 657, 668, 674
  - quotation env., 146, 810
    - (lino), 180
  - quotations, 146, [147](#)
  - quotations (mottos), on chapter headings, 35, [36](#)
  - quotchap package, 35, 36
  - Quote env. (tlc), 146, [147](#)
  - quote env., 146, [848](#)
    - (lino), [180](#)
  - quote keyword (makeindex), 660, [662](#)
  - quote\$ B<sub>B</sub>T<sub>E</sub>X built-in function, 808
  - \quotechar (doc), 822
  - \quotedblbase, 459
  - \quotesinglbase, 459
  - quoting characters, inserting in multilingual documents, [552](#), [553](#)
- R**
- R syntax
    - (fancyhdr), 225, [226-230](#)
    - (tabulary), 254
    - (tlc), [248](#)
  - \R (babel), [568](#)
  - \r, 459
    - (pxfonts), problems with, 390
    - (tipa), [406](#)
    - (txfonts), problems with, [389](#)
  - r syntax, 243
    - (array), 249
  - \Radiation (ifsym), [405](#)
  - radicals, math symbols, 504, [505](#)
  - ragged option
    - (footmisc), [119](#), [123](#), [726](#), [730](#)
    - (sidecap), 323, [324](#), [325](#)
  - ragged right paragraphs, 103-105, [106](#)
  - ragged2e package, xxvii, [105](#), [106](#)
  - \raggedbottom, 120
  - \raggedcolumns (multicol), 186
  - RaggedLeft key value (caption), 311
  - \RaggedLeft (ragged2e), 105
  - \raggedleft, [104](#), [121](#)
    - in headings, [31](#)
    - (array), in tables, [247](#), [249](#)
    - (ragged2e), 105
    - (titlesec), discouraged inside \titleformat, 40
  - raggedleft key value (caption), 311
  - raggedleft option
    - (sidecap), 323
    - (titlesec), [37](#)
  - \RaggedLeftLeftskip length (ragged2e), 106
  - \RaggedLeftParfillskip length (ragged2e), 106
  - \RaggedLeftParindent rigid length (ragged2e), 106
  - \RaggedLeftRightskip length (ragged2e), 106
  - RaggedRight key value (caption), 311
    - \RaggedRight (ragged2e), [105](#), [106](#), [142](#), [186](#), [187](#), 739
  - \raggedright, [104](#), [121](#), [127](#), [182](#), 183, [341](#), [345](#), 739, [935](#)
    - in headings, [31](#)
    - in tables, 246, 247, [251](#), 261, [276](#)
    - (array), in tables, [247](#), [249](#)
    - (multirow), in tables, 273
    - (natbib), 707
    - (ragged2e), 105
    - (titlesec), discouraged inside \titleformat, 40
  - raggedright key value
    - (caption), 311, [313](#)
    - (jurabib), [739](#)
    - (subfig), [316](#), [318](#)
  - raggedright option
    - (sidecap), 323
    - (titlesec), 37
  - raggedrightboxes option (ragged2e), 106
  - \RaggedRightLeftskip length (ragged2e), 105, 106
  - \RaggedRightParfillskip length (ragged2e), 105, 106
  - \RaggedRightParindent rigid length (ragged2e), 105, [106](#)
  - \RaggedRightRightskip length (ragged2e), 105, [106](#)
  - \Rain (ifsym), [405](#)
  - \raisebox, [150](#), [272](#), 273, [862](#)
    - RaiseNums option (parallel), 183
  - \raisetag (amsmath), [484](#)
  - range\_close keyword (makeindex), 660
  - range\_open keyword (makeindex), 660
  - \rangle, 498, [511](#), 537
  - \ratio (calc), [872](#), [876](#)
  - raw index, generating, 649
  - rawfonts package, 464
  - \Rbag (stmaryrd), 537
  - \rbag (stmaryrd), 530
  - \rbrace, [472](#), [498](#), [509](#), 537
  - \rbrack, 498, 537
  - \rceil, 498, 537
  - \RCS (rcs), [837](#), [838](#)
    - rcs package, 837, 838
    - RCS (Revision Control System), 836
    - rcs-user.tex file (rcs), 838
  - \RCSAuthor (rcs), [837](#)
  - \RCSDate (rcs), [837](#), [838](#)
  - \RCSdate (rcs), 838
  - \RCSdef (rcs), 837
  - \RCSID (rcs), 838
  - \rcsInfo (rcsinfo), [838](#), [839](#)
    - rcsinfo package, 838, 839
    - rcsinfo.perl file (rcsinfo), 839
  - \rcsInfoDate (rcsinfo), [839](#)
  - \rcsInfoDay (rcsinfo), [839](#)
  - \rcsInfoFile (rcsinfo), [839](#)
  - \rcsInfoLocker (rcsinfo), [839](#)
  - \rcsInfoLongDate (rcsinfo), 838, [839](#)
  - \rcsInfoMonth (rcsinfo), [839](#)
  - \rcsInfoOwner (rcsinfo), [839](#)

- `\rcsInfoRevision` (rcsinfo), [839](#)
- `\rcsInfoStatus` (rcsinfo), [839](#)
- `\rcsInfoTime` (rcsinfo), [839](#)
- `\rcsInfoYear` (rcsinfo), [839](#)
- `\RCSRawDate` (rcs), [838](#)
- `\RCSRCSfile` (rcs), [837](#)
- `\RCSRevision` (rcs), [837](#)
- `\RCSTime` (rcs), [837](#)
- `\Re`, [527](#)
- READ B<sup>B</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X command, [805–807](#), [809](#)
- read key (graphicx), [620](#), [625](#)
- reading data verbatim, [163](#)
- readme-tlc2.html file, [959](#)
- `\real` (calc), [872](#)
- `\RecordChanges` (doc), [817](#), [818](#), [821](#)
- recto-verso layout, [43](#), [195](#), [199](#), [208](#), [209](#), *see also* two-sided printing
- `\RecustomVerbatimCommand` (fancyvrb), [165](#)
- `\RecustomVerbatimEnvironment` (fancyvrb), [165](#)
- redefining
  - commands, [844](#), [845](#), [847](#)
  - environments, [847–850](#)
- reducedifibidem key value (jurabib), [729](#), [730](#)
- `\Ref` (varioref), [72](#)
- `\ref`, [26](#), [66](#), [68](#), [69](#), [71–73](#), [75](#), [111](#), [130](#), [307](#)
  - combining with `\pageref`, *see* varioref package
  - problems using, [26](#), [67](#), [852](#)
  - strange results with, [26](#)
  - warning using, [927](#)
  - (amsmath), [482](#), [485](#)
  - (fltpage), [326](#)
  - (lineno), [178](#), [179](#)
  - (paralist), [132](#), [133](#)
  - (prettyref), [75](#), [76](#)
  - (showkeys), [68](#)
  - (subfig), [316](#), [318](#), [319](#)
  - (subfloat), [322](#), [323](#)
  - (textcase), [86](#)
    - problems using, [85](#)
  - (titleref), [77](#)
  - (upref), [467](#)
  - (varioref), [71](#), [72](#)
  - (wrapfig), [300](#)
  - (xr), [78](#)
- ref option (cite), [697](#)
- reference keys, *see* keys
- referencing subsections, document headings, [25](#), [26](#)
- `\reflectbox`
  - (graphics), [629](#)
  - (graphicx), [629](#)
- `\refname`, [34](#), [726](#), [749](#)
  - (babel), [545](#), [547](#)
  - (bibunits), [751](#)
  - (multibib), [756](#)
- `\refstepcounter`, [33](#), [121](#), [851](#), [852](#), [853](#)
  - problems using, [852](#)
- `\reftextafter` (varioref), [73](#), [74](#), [357](#)
- `\reftextbefore` (varioref), [73](#), [74](#)
- `\reftextcurrent` (varioref), [69](#), [71](#), [74](#)
- `\reftextfaceafter` (varioref), [73](#), [74](#)
- `\reftextfacebefore` (varioref), [73](#), [74](#)
- `\reftextfaraway` (varioref), [73](#), [74](#)
- `\reftextlabelrange` (varioref), [74](#)
- `\reftextpagerange` (varioref), [74](#)
- `\reftextvario` (varioref), [74](#), [75](#)
  - register values, displaying, [934](#), [935](#)
  - Rejne option (fncychap), [34](#)
  - relation symbols, math symbols, [531](#), [532](#), [533](#)
- `\relax`, [162](#), [446](#), [501](#), [867](#), [868](#)
  - release information, language definition files, [583](#)
- `\relphantom` (tlc), [474](#)
- `\relscale` (relsize), [84](#)
- `\relsize` (relsize), [84](#), [156](#)
- relsize package, xxvi, [83–85](#), [156](#)
- rem env. (tlc), [140](#)
- remreset package, [851](#)
- `\renewcommand`, [844](#), [846](#)
  - error using, [895](#), [897](#), [904](#)
- `\renewcommand*`, [908](#)
- `\renewenvironment`, [847](#), [848](#)
  - error using, [898](#), [901](#)
- `\renewindex` (index), [682](#)
  - repeat data across pages, [599](#), [600](#)
  - repeatindex package, [680](#)
  - report document class, [6](#), [13](#), [115](#), [120](#), [147](#), [195](#), [223](#), [679](#)
    - footnote numbering, [112](#)
    - heading commands, [22–25](#), [51](#)
    - release information, [878](#)
    - replacement for, [236](#)
    - TOC entries, [50](#), [52](#)
  - reqno option (amsmath), [466](#), [469](#), [472](#)
  - require function (xindy), [675](#)
  - required fields, bibliography database, [762](#), [763](#)
- `\RequirePackage`, [14](#), [356](#), [438](#), [682](#), [852](#), [879](#), [880](#), [881](#), [882](#), [883](#), [886](#), [913](#)
  - error using, [908](#)
  - premature loading, [908](#)
  - warning using, [931](#)
- `\RequirePackageWithOptions`, [883](#)
- reset key/option (geometry), [211](#)
- reseteqn.sty file (tlc), [14](#)
- resetlabels option (multibib), [756](#)
- resetmargin key (listings), [172](#)
- resetmargins key (fancyvrb), [157](#)
- `\resetul` (soul), [92](#)
- `\resizebox`
  - (graphics), [617](#), [618](#), [629](#), [630](#)
  - error using, [909](#)

- `\resizebox` (*cont.*)
  - (`graphicx`), [629](#), [630](#)
  - error using, [909](#)
- `\resizebox*`
  - (`graphics`), [629](#), [630](#)
  - (`graphicx`), [630](#)
- resizing
  - fonts, relative to original, [83](#), [84](#), [85](#)
  - graphic objects, [629](#), [630](#)
- resolving problems, *see* troubleshooting
- restore values, displaying, [944](#)
- `\restriction` (`amssymb`), [534](#)
- `\restylefloat`
  - (`float`), [294](#), [309–311](#)
  - (`rotfloat`), [298](#)
- result file, specifying, [826](#), [827](#)
- `\resumecontents` (`titletoc`), [65](#), [66](#)
- REVERSE B<sub>B</sub>T<sub>E</sub>X command, [807](#)
- `\reversemarginpar`, [127](#), [200](#)
- `\reversemarginpartrue` (`layouts`), [200](#)
- `reversemp` key/option (`geometry`), [209](#), [210](#)
- revision bars, [189](#), [190](#), [191](#)
- Revision Control System (RCS), [836](#)
- `\RewindToStart` (`marvosym`), [401](#)
- `rewrite.rule` function (`bibtool`), [780](#), [781](#)
- rewriting, bibliographies, [780](#), [781](#)
- `\rfloor`, [498](#), [537](#)
- `\rfoot` (`fancyhdr`), [221](#), [224](#), [225](#)
- `\rgroup`, [489](#), [498](#), [537](#)
- `\rhd` (`latexsym`), [464](#)
- `\rhead` (`fancyhdr`), [224](#), [225](#), [598](#)
- `\rho`, [527](#)
- `\rhohook`, [535](#)
- `\right`, [478](#), [483](#), [487](#), [498](#), [504](#), [525](#), [526](#), [537](#), [906](#)
  - error using, [899](#), [905](#)
- right key value
  - (`fancyvrb`), [159](#)
  - (`listings`), [172](#)
- right key/option (`geometry`), [208](#), [211](#)
- right option
  - (`eurosym`), [409](#)
  - (`lineno`), [180](#), [181](#)
- right-to-left typesetting, multilingual documents, [566](#), [577](#)
- `\Rightarrow`, [534](#)
- `\rightarrow`, [173](#), [500](#), [534](#)
- `\rightarrowtail` (`amssymb`), [534](#)
- `\rightarrowtriangle` (`stmaryrd`), [534](#)
- `rightbars` option (`changebar`), [190](#)
- `rightbody` option (`sidecap`), [323](#)
- `rightcaption` option (`sidecap`), [323](#)
- `\RightDiamond` (`ifsym`), [405](#)
- `rightFloats` option (`ftpage`), [325](#)
- `\rightharpoondown`, [534](#)
- `\rightharpoonup`, [534](#)
- `\righthypenmin`, [586](#)
  - `rightlabels` option (`titletoc`), [60](#)
- `\rightleftarrows` (`amssymb`), [534](#)
- `\rightleftharpoons` (`amssymb`), [534](#)
- `\rightmargin` rigid length, [145](#), [147](#)
  - `rightmargin` key (`titlesec`), [38](#), [43](#)
- `\rightmark`, [218](#), [227](#), [228](#), [229](#)
  - (`extramarks`), [220](#)
- `\rightpointleft` (`dingbat`), [401](#)
- `\rightrightarrows` (`amssymb`), [534](#)
- `\rightskip` length, [103](#), [104](#), [105](#), [936](#), [937](#)
  - (`ragged2e`), [105](#)
- `\rightslice` (`stmaryrd`), [530](#)
- `\rightsquigarrow` (`amssymb`), [534](#)
- `\rightthreetimes` (`amssymb`), [530](#)
- `\rightthumbsdwn` (`dingbat`), [401](#)
- `\rightthumbsup` (`dingbat`), [401](#)
- rigid lengths, [854](#)
- `\risingdotseq` (`amssymb`), [532](#)
- `\rlap`, [180](#), [181](#), [183](#), [489](#)
- `\rm`, [347](#), [349](#)
  - used in math, [349](#), [464](#)
  - (`custom-bib`), [803](#)
- `rm` key value
  - (`caption`), [310](#), [311](#), [313](#)
  - (`subfig`), [316](#)
- `rm` option (`titlesec`), [37](#)
- `rmargin` key/option (`geometry`), [208](#)
- `\rmdefault`, [346](#), [347](#), [438](#)
- `\rmfamily`, [339](#), [344](#), [346](#), [351](#), [409](#), [464](#)
  - used in math, [348](#), [350](#)
- `\rmoustache`, [498](#), [537](#)
- Roman folio style, [216](#)
- `\Roman`, [129](#), [133](#), [852](#), [853](#)
- `\roman`, [130](#), [133](#), [852](#), [853](#)
  - roman folio style, [216](#)
  - Roman font shape, [333](#)
  - roman numerals, indexes
    - sort order, [666](#)
    - suppressing page ranges, [677](#)
- `romanian` option (`babel`), [543](#)
- `rootbib` option (`chapterbib`), [747](#)
- `rotate` env. (`rotating`), [297](#), [634](#)
- `rotate` option (`crop`), [214](#)
- `\rotatebox`
  - (`graphics`), [618](#), [628](#), [630](#), [631](#)
    - error using, [908](#)
  - (`graphicx`), [614](#), [624](#), [631](#), [632](#), [633](#)
    - error using, [908](#)
- rotated material, hiding, [615](#)
- rotating
  - floats, [296](#), [297](#), [298](#)
  - graphic objects, [630–634](#)
  - image files, [620](#)
- rotating package, [212](#), [296–298](#), [633](#), [634](#)
  - combined with `endfloat`, [291](#)

- `\rotcaption` (rotating), 298, 308
  - rotfloat package, 298
  - `\round` (euro), 98, 99
  - round key/option (jurabib), 721, 735
  - round option (natbib), 706, 712, 715
  - rounded corner, boxes, 596, 597
  - `\rowcolor` (colortbl), 265
  - rows, table
    - commands, 261
    - laying out, 242, 243
    - spacing, 244, 245, 269, 271
    - spanning, 272, 273, 274, 282
  - rplain package, 224
  - `\rrbracket`
    - (fourier), 392
    - (stmaryrd), 498, 537
  - `\rrceil` (stmaryrd), 537
  - `\rrffloor` (stmaryrd), 537
  - `\Rrightarrow` (amssymb), 534
  - `\rrparenthesis` (stmaryrd), 537
  - .rsc file extension (bibtool), 780
  - `\Rsh` (amssymb), 534
  - `\RSPercentTolerance` (relsize), 84
  - `\rsquare` (tlc), 528
  - `\Rsub` (tlc), 31
  - `\rtimes` (amssymb), 530
  - rubber lengths, 854
  - rubibtex program, 573, 574
  - rubibtex.bat program, 574
  - `\rule`, 41, 112, 242, 266, 326, 858, 863–865, 866, 867
  - rule boxes, 860, 866–868
  - rulecolor key (fancyvrb), 158
  - ruled key (float), 292, 293, 294
  - ruled key value (float), 310
  - ruled option (manyfoot), 124
  - rules (graphic lines)
    - around code listings, 173
    - color, 265
    - document headings, 41, 42
    - double, 269
    - floats, 285
    - footnotes, 112, 119, 120
    - formal, 269, 270, 271, 272
    - frame, color, 158
    - in tables
      - colored, 265
      - combining horizontal and vertical, 266, 267
      - dashed, 267, 268
      - double, 269
      - formal, 269, 270, 271, 272
      - variable width, 266
      - vertical, 266, 267, 269
    - page styles, 224
  - rulesep key (listings), 173–175
  - rumakeindex program, 573
  - rumkidxd.bat program, 573
  - rumkidxw.bat program, 573
  - run-in style document headings, 27, 29, 30
  - runin key (titlesec), 38, 39
  - running headers and footers, *see* headers and footers, running
  - russian option (babel), 358, 543, 568, 570, 571
  - russianb option (babel), 975
  - russianb.lfd file (babel), 589
  - `\rVert` (amsmath), 498, 501, 537
  - `\rvert` (amsmath), 498, 500, 501, 537
- ## S
- `\S`, 39, 64, 130, 527
    - (textcomp), 457
  - s size function, 424
  - s: syntax (yfonts), 395
  - safe option
    - (textcomp), 362, 364, 365, 367, 388
    - has no effect, 367
    - (tipa), 406
  - `\samepage`, 234
    - samepage key (fancyvrb), 159
    - samin option (babel), 543
  - `\sample` (tlc), 13, 221, 224, 293, 303, 598
  - sans serif fonts, 332, 339
    - as default, 373
  - `\sAppendix` (tlc), 32, 33
  - save size errors, 919
  - `\savebox`, 868, 869, 904, 944
    - error using, 895
    - savequote env. (quotchap), 35, 36
  - `\SaveVerb` (fancyvrb), 165, 166, 167
  - `\SaveVerbatim` env. (fancyvrb), 167
  - `\sbox`, 307, 849, 868, 869, 870, 904, 944
    - error using, 895
  - `\sboxrule` rigid length (shadow), 595
  - `\sboxsep` rigid length (shadow), 595
  - `\sc`, 347
    - used in math, 464
  - sc key value (caption), 310
  - sc option
    - (mathpazo), 378
    - (titlesec), 37
  - Scalable Vector Graphics (SVG), *see* SVG
  - scale key (graphicx), 619, 621
  - scale key/option (geometry), 211
  - `\scalebox`
    - (graphics), 617, 628, 629
    - (graphicx), 628, 629
  - scaled option
    - (eurosans), 410
    - (helvet), 370
    - (luximono), 154, 387
  - scaled material, hiding, 615



- scaling
  - graphic objects, [628](#), [629](#)
  - image files, [620](#)
  - large operators, [368](#)
- `\scdefault`, [346](#)
- `SCfigure` env. (sidecap), [323](#), [324](#)
- school  $\LaTeX$  field, [763](#), [765](#)
- Schwabacher font, [394](#)–[396](#)
- Scientific Word program, [615](#)
- scottish option (babel), [543](#)
- scrartcl document class, [236](#)
- screen key/option (geometry), [206](#)
- script commands, `docstrip`, [826](#)–[830](#)
- `\scriptscriptstyle`, [432](#), [494](#), [502](#)
- `\scriptsize`, [342](#)
  - `scriptsize` key value
    - (caption), [310](#)
    - (subfig), [319](#)
- `\scriptstyle`, [432](#), [489](#), [494](#), [502](#)
- `\scrollmode`, [944](#)
- `scrpage` package, [237](#)
- `\scshape`, [30](#), [63](#), [340](#), [341](#), [342](#), [344](#), [346](#), [853](#)
  - used in math, [348](#), [350](#)
  - (letrine), [100](#)
  - (soul), [91](#)
- `SCTable` env. (sidecap), [323](#), [324](#), [325](#)
- `\sdim` rigid length (shadow), [595](#)
- searching, bibliographies, [775](#), [777](#), [778](#), [784](#), [785](#), [787](#)
- searching, PDF documents, [356](#)
- `\searrow`, [173](#), [534](#)
- `\sec`, [500](#)
- `\secdef`, [27](#), [32](#)
- `\secformat` (tlc), [41](#)
- `secnumdepth` counter, [23](#), [24](#), [27](#), [30](#), [33](#)
- `\sectfont` (quotchap), [35](#), [36](#)
- `\section`, [22](#), [23](#), [24](#), [25](#), [26](#), [30](#)–[33](#), [39](#), [47](#), [49](#), [217](#), [218](#), [223](#), [937](#)
  - cross-reference to, [66](#)
  - error using, [893](#)
  - suppressing floats, [287](#)
  - with float barrier, [288](#)
  - (bibunits), [751](#), [752](#)
  - (minitoc), [57](#), [58](#)
    - partial contents for, [57](#)
  - (soul), with letter spacing, [91](#)
  - (titleref), textual reference to, [77](#)
  - (titlesec), [37](#), [39](#)–[42](#), [44](#)
  - (titletoc), partial contents for, [65](#)
- section counter, [24](#), [25](#), [32](#), [33](#), [219](#), [851](#), [853](#)
- section key value (jurabib), [724](#), [731](#)
- section option (placeins), [58](#), [288](#)
- section commands, [22](#), [23](#)
  - default behavior, [31](#)
  - redefining, [29](#), [30](#)
- `\section*`, [23](#), [47](#), [707](#), [747](#)
  - listed in TOC, [47](#)
  - (titlesec), [44](#)
- section-level tables of contents, [57](#), [58](#)
- `sectionbib` option
  - (bibunits), [752](#)
  - (chapterbib), [747](#), [748](#), [749](#)
  - (natbib), [707](#), [747](#)
- `\sectionbreak` (titlesec), [42](#), [43](#)
- `\sectionmark`, [33](#), [219](#), [230](#)
  - (fancyhdr), [229](#)
- `\sectlof` (minitoc), [58](#)
- `\sectlot` (minitoc), [58](#)
- `\secttoc` (minitoc), [58](#)
  - `secttocdepth` counter (minitoc), [58](#)
- `\secundo` (babel), [563](#)
- security, `docstrip`, [832](#)
- `sed` program, [573](#), [574](#), [775](#), [778](#)
- `\see` (makeidx), [652](#)
  - see key/option (jurabib), [721](#)
- `\seename` (babel), [547](#)
- `select` function (bibtool), [782](#)
- `select.non` function (bibtool), [782](#)
- `\selectfont`, [345](#), [355](#), [410](#), [412](#), [413](#), [415](#), [417](#), [419](#), [454](#)
- `\selectlanguage` (babel), [544](#), [545](#), [546](#), [571](#)
- semantic nest size errors, [919](#)
- semicolon (;), shorthand character, [554](#)
- seminar package, [596](#)
- `SeparatedFootnotes` option (parallel), [183](#)
- separator character, bibliography database, [761](#)
- serbian option (babel), [543](#)
- `Series` env. (tlc), [293](#)
- `series`  $\LaTeX$  field, [690](#), [763](#), [765](#)
- series, fonts, see fonts, series
- `\seriesdefault`, [346](#), [417](#)
- serifed fonts, [332](#), [339](#)
- `\setboolean` (ifthen), [680](#), [875](#), [886](#)
- `\setbox`, [870](#)
  - problems using, [870](#)
- `\setcounter`, [130](#), [131](#), [852](#), [853](#), [876](#)
  - error using, [844](#), [906](#), [907](#)
  - (calc), [871](#), [873](#)
  - error using, [895](#)
- `\setdefaulttenum` (paralist), [137](#)
- `\setdefaultitem` (paralist), [136](#), [137](#)
- `\setdefaultleftmargin` (paralist), [137](#)
- `\setdepth` (bar), [613](#)
- `\setfnsymbol` (footmisc), [116](#), [117](#)
- `\setfootbox` (layouts), [201](#)
- `\sethebrew` (babel), [568](#)
- `\sethlcolor` (soul), [92](#)
- `\setkeys`
  - (graphicx), [623](#), [624](#)
  - (keyval), [623](#)
- `\setlabelfont` (layouts), [201](#), [203](#)

- `\setlayoutscales` (layouts), [200](#), [201](#), [203](#)
- `\setlength`, [855](#), [872](#)
  - error using, 907
  - problems with, 507
  - (calc), [871](#), [872](#), [876](#)
    - error using, 895
- `\setmarginsrb` (vmargin), [203](#)
- `\SetMathAlphabet`, [352](#), [353](#), [436](#), [439](#), [903](#)
  - error using, 897
- `\setminus`, 530
- `\setnumberpos` (bar), [613](#)
  - `setpage_prefix` keyword (makeindex), 661
  - `setpage_suffix` keyword (makeindex), 661
- `\setpapersize` (vmargin), [203](#)
- `\setparametertextfont` (layouts), [200](#), [201](#)
- sets and inclusion, math symbols, [533](#)
- sets and inclusion—negated, math symbols, [533](#)
- setspace package, [106–108](#), 204
- `\setstcolor` (soul), [92](#)
- `\setstretch`
  - (bar), [613](#)
  - (setspace), 107
- `\SetSymbolFont`, [433](#), [435](#), [436](#), [437](#), [439](#)
  - warning using, 926
- `\settodepth`, [855](#), [856](#)
- `\settoheight`, [855](#), [856](#)
- `\settowidth`, [52](#), [280](#), [282](#), [850](#), [855](#), [856](#)
- `\setul` (soul), [92](#)
- `\setulcolor` (soul), [92](#)
- `\setuldepth` (soul), [92](#)
- `\setxaxis` (bar), [613](#)
- `\setxname` (bar), [613](#)
- `\setxvaluetype` (bar), [613](#)
- `\setyaxis` (bar), [613](#)
- `\setyname` (bar), [613](#)
- `\sf`, [328](#), [347](#), [464](#)
  - used in math, [349](#), [464](#)
- `sf` key value
  - (caption), [301](#), [306](#), [310](#), [311](#), [313](#), [316](#), [324](#)
  - (subfig), 317
  - `sf` option (titlesec), [37](#)
- `\sfdefault`, [346](#), [373](#)
- `\sffamily`, [339](#), [341](#), [343](#), [344](#), [346](#), [351](#), [409](#), [464](#)
  - problem with EC fonts, [355](#)
  - used in math, [348](#), [350](#)
  - (lucidabr), [410](#)
- `sfixed` size function, 426
- `sgen` size function, 425
- `sgenb` size function, 425
- `\sh` (babel), 564
- `\shabox` (shadow), [595](#), [596](#)
- shaded fonts, 334
- shadow package, 595
- shadow boxes, [595–597](#)
- `\shadowbox` (fancybox), [596](#), [597](#), [598](#)
- `\shadowsize` rigid length (fancybox), [596](#), [598](#)
- `\shadowthickness` (picins), [304](#), [305](#)
  - shalom fonts, 577
  - shape, document headings, 38
- `\shapedefault`, [346](#), [417](#)
  - shapes, fonts, *see* fonts, shapes
- `\sharp`, 528
- `\Shilling` (marvosym), [412](#)
  - short key value (jurabib), 732
  - short option (rcsinfo), 839
  - short-title citations, 684, [715–745](#), *see also* citation systems
    - annotations, [721](#), [740](#), [741](#), [742](#)
    - author gender, [734](#), [735](#), [742](#)
    - author information field, 743
    - author list separator, [736](#), [738](#)
    - author-date format, combining, [732](#), [733](#)
    - back reference information, 742
    - collections, 742
    - column layout, [739](#)
    - configuration files, external, 741
    - cross-references, [732](#)
    - customizing bibliography, [736](#), [737](#), [738](#), [739–741](#)
    - customizing citations, [735](#), [736](#)
    - definition, 684
    - description, 715, 716
    - dissertation year, 742
    - edition information, 742
    - editor information, 742
    - endnote citations, [726](#), [727](#), [728](#)
    - fonts, [736](#), [737](#)
    - footnote citations, [726](#), [727](#), [728](#)
    - founder information, 742
    - full citations in running text, [723](#), [724–726](#)
    - ibidem citations, [728–731](#), [740](#)
    - indentation, [738](#), [739](#)
    - indexing citations automatically, [720](#), [721](#)
    - last update field, 743
    - law support, [743](#), [744](#), [745](#)
    - multi-language support, [733](#), [734](#), [735](#)
    - page boundaries, ignoring, 729
    - page total field, 743
    - parentheses, 735
    - pre-notes, [721](#)
    - punctuation, [738](#)
    - sort order, 743
    - style files, 742, 743
    - superscripts, [735](#), [736](#), [743](#)
    - title format, [719](#), [720](#)
    - title information field, 743
    - title, mapping short to full, [721](#), [722](#), [723](#)
    - translated works, 742
    - translator information, 743
    - URLs, 742, 743
    - volume title, 743

- shortauthor BibTeX field (jurabib), [717](#), [718](#), [732](#), [743](#)
- \shortcite
  - (authordate1-4), [700](#)
  - (chicago), [684](#), [699](#)
- \shortciteA (chicago), [699](#)
- \shortciteN (chicago), [699](#)
- \shortcites (natbib), [705](#)
- \shortdownarrow (stmaryrd), [534](#)
- shorttext option (minitoc), [56](#)
- \shorthandoff (babel), [548](#), [549](#), [554](#), [557](#)
- \shorthandon (babel), [548](#)
  - error using, [911](#)
- shorthands
  - language definition files, [589](#)–[591](#)
  - language options, babel package, [550](#)–[558](#)
  - multilingual documents, [547](#), [548](#), [549](#)
- \shortindexingoff (index), [681](#)
- \shortindexingon (index), [681](#)
- \shortleftarrow (stmaryrd), [534](#)
- \shortmid (amssymb), [535](#)
- \shortpage (tlc), [234](#)
- \shortparallel (amssymb), [535](#)
- \shortrightarrow (stmaryrd), [534](#)
- \shortstack, [108](#), [596](#), [601](#)
  - (pspicture), [640](#)
- \shorttableofcontents (shorttoc), [55](#)
- shorttitle BibTeX field (jurabib), [690](#), [717](#), [718](#), [719](#), [722](#), [732](#), [743](#)
- \shorttoc (shorttoc), [55](#)
  - shorttoc package, [55](#)
- \shortuparrow (stmaryrd), [534](#)
- shortvrb package, [152](#), [153](#), [816](#), [885](#)
- shortvrb.sty file (shortvrb), [827](#)
- \shoveleft (amsmath), [471](#), [472](#)
- \shoveright (amsmath), [471](#), [472](#)
- \show, [907](#), [932](#), [933](#), [934](#), [935](#)
  - output produced from, [932](#)–[934](#)
- \showbox, [907](#), [944](#)
  - output produced from, [944](#)
- \showboxbreadth, [943](#)–[945](#)
- \showboxdepth, [943](#)–[945](#)
- \showclock (ifsym), [404](#)
- \showcols (array), [249](#)
  - showframe key/option (geometry), [210](#)
- \showgroups, available with eTeX, [906](#), [917](#)
  - output produced from, [917](#)
- \showhyphens, [940](#)
  - output produced from, [940](#)
- showidx package, [656](#), [680](#), [681](#)
- showkeys package, [68](#), [701](#)
- \showlists, [907](#), [919](#), [944](#), [945](#)
  - output produced from, [944](#)
- \showoutput, [935](#), [937](#), [943](#), [944](#), [945](#)
  - output produced from, [936](#), [937](#)
- \showpage (tlc), [203](#)
- \showprogress (docstrip), [828](#)
- showspaces key
  - (fancyvrb), [160](#), [164](#), [165](#)
  - (listings), [171](#), [173](#)
- showstringspaces key (listings), [171](#)
- showtabs key
  - (fancyvrb), [160](#), [161](#)
  - (listings), [171](#)
- showtags package, [778](#)
- \showthe, [907](#), [934](#), [935](#)
  - error using, [902](#)
  - output produced from, [934](#)
- \shrinkheight (supertabular), [257](#)
- si960 option (inputenc), [578](#)
- siam BibTeX style, [793](#)
- side option (footmisc), [118](#), [119](#), [123](#)
- sidecap package, xxvii, [323](#)–[325](#)
  - combined with caption, [323](#)
- \sidecaptionrelwidth (sidecap), [324](#)
- \sidecaptionsep (sidecap), [324](#)
- \sidecaptionvpos (sidecap), [324](#)
- \sideset (amsmath), [495](#)
- sideways env. (rotating), [297](#)
- sidewaysfigure env. (rotating), [291](#), [297](#), [298](#), [308](#)
- sidewaysfigure\* env. (rotating), [297](#)
- sidewaystable env.
  - (rotating), [291](#), [297](#), [298](#), [308](#)
  - (rotfloat), [298](#)
- sidewaystable\* env.
  - (rotating), [297](#)
  - (rotfloat), [298](#)
- sidewaysXMLexa env. (tlc), [298](#)
- sidewaysXMLexa\* env. (tlc), [298](#)
- \Sigma, [527](#)
- \sigma, [527](#)
- \sim, [531](#), [532](#)
- \simeq, [532](#)
- simple key value
  - (caption), [310](#)
  - (subfig), [320](#)
- \sin, [500](#), [506](#)
- single key value
  - (fancyvrb), [157](#)–[159](#)
  - (listings), [173](#), [174](#)
- single-byte characters, encoding, [359](#), [360](#)
- singlelinecheck key/option
  - (caption), [309](#), [311](#)
  - (subfig), [318](#)
- singlespace env. (setspace), [107](#)
- \singlespacing (setspace), [107](#)
- \sinh, [500](#)
- \SixFlowerOpenCenter (bbding), [403](#)
- size BibTeX field (BibTeXMng), [789](#)
- size of image, [620](#), [626](#)
- size11.clo file, [144](#)

- sizing fonts, [342](#), [343](#)
- sizing, mathematical typesetting, [502](#), [503](#)
- `\skip`, [934](#)
- `\skip23` length, [934](#)
- `skip`  $\TeX$  built-in function, [808](#), [810](#)
- `\skip\footins` length, [112](#), [113](#)
  - (`footmisc`), [119](#), [120](#)
  - (`manyfoot`), [124](#)
- `\skip\footins<suffix>` length (`manyfoot`), [124](#)
- `\sl`, [347](#)
  - used in math, [464](#)
- `sl` key value
  - (`caption`), [310](#)
  - (`fancyvrb`), [156](#)
  - (`subfig`), [319](#)
- `sl` option (`titlesec`), [37](#)
- slanted font, [333](#), [340](#)
- `slantedGreek` option
  - (`ccfonts`), [385](#)
  - (`cmbright`), [386](#)
  - (`mathpazo`), [378](#)
  - (`mathptmx`), [376](#)
- `\slash` (`soul`), [90](#)
- `\slashint` (`fourier`), [392](#)
- `\sldefault`, [346](#)
- slides document class, [6](#)
- slope key (`lettrine`), [101](#)
- sloped option (`fourier`), [392](#), [393](#)
- sloped font, [333](#)
- `\sloppy`, [103](#)
- `slovak` option (`babel`), [543](#)
- `slovene` option (`babel`), [543](#)
- `\slshape`, [340](#), [341](#), [344](#), [346](#)
  - used in math, [348](#), [350](#)
- `\small`, [144](#), [146](#), [342](#), [343](#), [480](#)
- `small` key value
  - (`caption`), [310](#), [311](#)
  - (`subfig`), [318](#)
- `small` option
  - (`eulervm`), [398](#)
  - (`titlesec`), [37](#)
- `small caps`
  - description, [334](#)
  - French names, [563](#)
  - in headings, [341](#)
- `smallcaps` key value (`jurabib`), [718](#), [719](#)
- `\smaller` (`resize`), [84](#)
- `\smallfrown` (`amssymb`), [535](#)
- `\smallint`, [536](#)
- `smallmatrix` env. (`amsmath`), [487](#)
- `\smallpencil` (`dingbat`), [401](#)
- `\smallsetminus` (`amssymb`), [530](#)
- `\smallskip`, [857](#)
- `\smallskipamount` length, [857](#)
- `\smallsmile` (`amssymb`), [535](#)
- `\smash` (`amsmath`), [505](#), [506](#), [507](#)
  - smashing, mathematical typesetting, [506](#), [507](#)
- `\smile`, [535](#)
- `\Smiley` (`marvosym`), [401](#)
- `\Snow` (`ifsym`), [405](#)
- `\so` (`soul`), [88](#), [89](#), [90](#), [91](#)
- `\sobf` (`tlc`), [91](#)
- `\sodef` (`soul`), [90](#), [91](#)
  - software information, *see* help resources
  - software release control, [836](#)
  - Sonny option (`fnchyp`), [34](#)
  - `SORT`  $\TeX$  command, [807](#)
- `sort` option
  - (`cite`), [695](#)
  - (`natbib`), [704](#), [714](#)
- `sort order`
  - bibliographies, [764](#), [806](#)
  - citations in bibliographies
    - author-number citation system, [714](#)
    - number-only citation systems, [693](#), [694](#), [695](#), [714](#)
    - short-title citation system, [743](#)
- indexes
  - French words, [670](#)
  - German words, [657](#), [668](#), [670](#)
  - letter-by-letter, [657](#), [668](#)
  - non-English words, [670](#)
  - page numbers, [657](#), [664](#), [678](#), [679](#)
  - roman numerals, [666](#)
  - spaces, [666](#)
  - Spanish words, [670](#)
  - special cases, [667](#)
  - symbols, [666](#), [667](#)
  - troubleshooting, [665](#), [666](#)
  - xindy rules, [673](#), [677](#)
- `sort-rule` function (`xindy`), [675](#)
- `sort.format` function (`bibtool`), [779](#)
- `sort.key`  $\TeX$  built-in function, [807](#)
- `sort&compress` option (`natbib`), [714](#)
- `\SortIndex` (`doc`), [822](#)
  - sorting, bibliographies, [779](#), [780](#)
- `sortkey`  $\TeX$  field, [772](#)
  - (`jurabib`), [743](#), [764](#)
- `\SortNoop`, [769](#), [772](#)
  - (`tlc`), [771](#), [772](#)
- `soul` package, xxvi, [88–92](#)
  - combined with `color`, [88](#), [92](#)
  - error using, [902](#)
  - nesting commands, [90](#)
- `\soulaccent` (`soul`), [89](#)
- `\soulomit` (`soul`), [90](#)
- `\soulregister` (`soul`), [89](#)
- `\source` (`camel`), [744](#)
  - source control, [836](#), [837](#), [838](#), [839](#)

- source files, *see also* documents
  - specifying, 826, 827
  - splitting, 18, [19](#), 20
- source line, finding, 890–894
- source2e.tex file, 834–836
- `\sout` (ulem), [87](#)
- `\space`
  - use in .fd file, 432
  - use in `\DeclareFontShape`, 422
  - use in `\DeclareFontEncoding`, 430
- space key value (caption), 310
- space option (cite), [695](#), 696
- space compression, indexes, [650](#), 655, 666, 669
- space parameters
  - defining new, 854
  - description, 854
  - horizontal space commands, [856](#), [857](#)
  - setting, [855](#), [856](#)
  - vertical space commands, [857](#), [858](#), 859, 860
- `\spacefactor`, 944
  - error using, [902](#), 914
- spaces
  - around/within citations, 695
  - doc package, 815
  - in bibliography databases, 761
  - in indexes, 666
- spaces option (url), 95
- `\spaceskip` length, [105](#), 429
  - (ragged2e), 105
- spacing
  - after macro names, [80](#), [81](#)
  - after punctuation, multilingual documents, 564
  - columns, [247](#), [248](#)
  - document headings, *see* document headings, spacing
  - equations, 479, [480](#), 481
  - float captions, [312](#), 317
  - floats, 285
  - footnotes from text, 112
  - headed lists, 141
  - horizontal, mathematical typesetting, 507, 508
  - interword, 102, 103
  - leading, 106, [107](#), 108, [343](#), 373
  - letterspacing, [88–92](#)
  - math symbols, [525](#), [526](#), [528](#), [529](#)
  - mathematical typesetting, 502, [503](#), [505](#), [506](#), 507
  - multipage tables, 261
  - table rows, 244, [245](#), [269](#), 271
  - tables of contents, 48
  - typed text, [159](#)
- spacing env. (setspace), [107](#)
- `\spadesuit`, 528
- spanish option (babel), [543](#), [554](#), [557](#), [558](#)
- Spanish words, index sort order, 670
- spanning, table rows, [272](#), [273](#), [274](#), [282](#)
- `\spbreve` (amxtra), [495](#)
- `\spcheck` (amxtra), [495](#)
- `\spdddot` (amxtra), [495](#)
- `\spddot` (amxtra), [495](#)
- `\spdot` (amxtra), [495](#)
- `\special`, 8, 9, 593, 594, 608, 626, 638, 639, [979](#), 980
  - (hyperref), 78
  - special characters, [345](#), *see also* entries for specific characters; math symbols; text symbols
    - cross-reference restrictions, 66
    - in bibliography database, 768, 769
    - in URLs, e-mail addresses, etc., 93
    - index sort order, 666, 667
    - indexes, [652](#), [653](#), 654, 662
    - multilingual documents, [552](#)
    - typed text, [152](#), [153](#)
- `\SpecialEnvIndex` (doc), 823
- `\SpecialEscapechar` (doc), 822
- `\SpecialIndex` (doc), 823
- `\SpecialMainEnvIndex` (doc), 823
- `\SpecialMainIndex` (doc), 823
- `\specialrule` (booktabs), [271](#), [272](#)
- `\SpecialUsageIndex` (doc), 823
- `\sphat` (amxtra), [495](#)
- `\sphericalangle` (amssymb), 528
- `\SpinDown` (ifsym), [405](#)
- `\SpinUp` (ifsym), [405](#)
- `\spline`
  - (eepicmu), 611
  - (eepic), 610
  - split env. (amsmath), [469](#), [473](#), [474](#), 478
    - error using, 895–898
- `\splitfootnoterule` (footmisc), 119
- `\SplitNote` (manyfoot), [123](#), [124](#)
- `\splitrule` option (footmisc), 119
- splitting material across pages, *see* floats
- splitting, document headings, 23
- `\sptilde` (amxtra), [495](#)
- `\sqcap`, 530
- `\sqcup`, 530
- `\sqrt`, [493](#), [499](#), [505](#), [506](#)
  - (amsmath), [476](#), [477](#), 504
- `\sqrtsign`, 498, [499](#)
  - (bm), [512](#)
- `\sqsubset`
  - (amssymb), 533
  - (latsym), [464](#)
- `\sqsubseteq`, 533
- `\sqsupset`
  - (amssymb), 533
  - (latsym), [464](#)
- `\sqsupseteq`, 533
- `\square` (amssymb), [528](#), 529
  - square key/option (jurabib), [735](#)
  - square option (natbib), [706](#), 712
- `\SquareShadowC` (ifsym), [405](#)

- squiggle program, 646
- \SS, 457
- \ss, 345, 459
  - shape in EC fonts, 355
  - (yfonts), 395
- \ssearrow (stmaryrd), 534
- \ssedition  $\LaTeX$  field (jurabib), 736, 743
- \sslash (stmaryrd), 530
- \ssub size function, 426
- \ssubf size function, 426
- \sswarrow (stmaryrd), 534
- \st (soul), 88, 89, 92
- stable option (footmisc), 120
- stack\$  $\LaTeX$  built-in function, 808
- \stackrel, 489, 495
- stacks
  - list stack, displaying, 944
  - macro stack, displaying, 892
  - parameter stack size errors, 918, 919
- stand-alone indexes, 659–662
- standard input/output files, indexes, 655, 668
- standard-baselineskips option
  - (ccfonts), 385
  - (cmbright), 386
- \StandardLayout (babel), 565
- StandardModuleDepth counter (doc), 824
- \star, 136, 495, 530
- \startcontents (titletoc), 64, 65, 66
- \StartFinalBibs (chapterbib), 748, 749
- starting page number, setting for index, 657, 662
- \StartShownPreambleCommands (tlc), 163
- \STATE (algorithmic), 168
- \stcfont (minitoc), 58
- \stcindent (minitoc), 58
- \stctitle (minitoc), 58
- stealing sheep, *see* letterspacing
- \stepcounter, 748, 849, 851, 852, 876
- stepnumber key
  - (fancyvrb), 160
  - (listings), 172
- stepping through documents, 945, *see also* troubleshooting
- stmaryrd package, 498, 524–537
- \stockdesign (layouts), 202
- \stockdiagram (layouts), 202
- \stop, 894, 914, 921
  - (nfssfont.tex), 369
- \stopcontents (titletoc), 65
- \StopEventually (doc), 816, 817, 822, 835
- \StopShownPreambleCommands (tlc), 163
- \StopWatchEnd (ifsym), 404
- \StopWatchStart (ifsym), 404
- straight key (titlesec), 44, 45
- \stretch, 856, 857, 858
- strict key value (jurabib), 728, 730, 731, 735
- strictdoublepage key value (jurabib), 729, 730
- \string, 591, 833, 933
  - (docstrip), 829
- STRINGS  $\LaTeX$  command, 805, 807
- strings, bibliographies
  - creating, 769, 770
  - defaults, 771
  - searching all entries for, 775, 777, 778
  - searching keys for, 775
- stringstyle key (listings), 170
- stripping comments from source file, *see* comments, stripping
- \StrokeFive (ifsym), 405
- \strut, 273, 506, 507
  - (sidecap), 325
- .sty file extension, 6, 8, 16
- style key/option (caption), 312, 313
- style files, *see also* configuration files
  - indexes
    - makeindex, 658–665
    - specifying, 658
    - xindy, 673–679
  - short-title citation system, 742, 743
- style files, bibliographies
  - citation scheme, selecting, 800, 801
  - creating, 798–804
  - description, 790
  - editing, 805–812
  - extensions supported, determining, 802, 803
  - fields, adding new, 810, 811
  - formatting, specifying, 803, 804
  - initializing the system, 799, 800
  - list of, 791–793
  - modifying, 805–812
  - multi-language support, adding, 811, 812
  - style language, 805–812
- style language, bibliographies
  - blanks, 805
  - built-in functions, 805, 807, 808
  - case changes, disabling, 809, 810
  - commands, 805, 807, 808
  - entry variables, 805
  - field variables, 805
  - fields, adding new, 810, 811
  - global variables, 805
  - multi-language support, adding, 811, 812
  - process flow, 806–809
  - sort order, 806
  - variables, types of, 805
- styles, author-date citation system, 710
- sub size function, 425
- sub-captions, 315, 316–319, 320, 321
- sub-figures, 316, 319, 321
- sub-formulas, mathematical typesetting, 503, 504
- sub-numbering float captions, 321, 322, 323
- sub-tables, 316, 318

- sub(*type*) counter (subfig), 318
- subarray env. (amsmath), 487, 488
- \subchapter (tlc), 44, 45
- subequations env. (amsmath), 484, 485
- subf size function, 426
- subfig package, xxvi, 309, 315–321
- subfigure counter (subfig), 318
- subfigure package, 315
- subfigures env. (subfloat), 321, 322
- \subfiguresbegin (subfloat), 321
- \subfiguresend (subfloat), 321
- \subfloat (subfig), 315, 316, 318, 319, 320
- subfloat package, xxvi, 321–323
- subfloatfigure counter (subfloat), 322
- subfloatfiguremax counter (subfloat), 322
- subfloatable counter (subfloat), 322
- subfloatablemax counter (subfloat), 322
- \subitem, 679, 680
- \subparagraph, 23, 24, 25
  - (minitoc), 57
- subparagraph counter, 24, 851
- \subparagraph\*, 23
- subparens key value (subfig), 320
- \subref (subfig), 318, 319, 320
- \subref\* (subfig), 319
- subscripts, limiting positions, 491, 492
- \subsection, 22, 23, 24, 25, 26, 29, 47, 223
  - (minitoc), 57, 58
  - (titleref), textual reference to, 77
  - (titlesec), 37
- subsection counter, 24–26, 851, 853
- \subsection\*, 23
- subsectionbib option (bibunits), 752
- \subsectionmark, 230
  - (fancyhdr), 229
- subsections, referencing, 25, 26
- \Subset (amssymb), 533
- \subset, 533
  - subset  $\LaTeX$  style (aux2bib), 775
  - subset.bib file (makebib), 776
- \subseteq, 491, 533
- \subseteqq (amssymb), 533
- \subsetneq (amssymb), 533
- \subsetneqq (amssymb), 533
- \subsetplus (stmaryrd), 533
- \subsetpluseq (stmaryrd), 533
- subsimple key value (subfig), 320
- \substack (amsmath), 487, 488
- substring\$  $\LaTeX$  built-in function, 808, 812
- \subsubitem, 679
- \subsubsection, 23
  - (minitoc), 57, 58
  - (titlesec), 37
- subsubsection counter, 24, 851, 853
- \subsubsection\*, 23
  - subtables env. (subfloat), 321, 322
- \subtablesbegin (subfloat), 321
- \subtablesend (subfloat), 321
- \succ, 532
- \succapprox (amssymb), 532
- \succcurlyeq (amssymb), 532
- \succeq, 531, 532
- \succnapprox (amssymb), 532
- \succneqq (amssymb), 532
- \succnsim (amssymb), 532
- \succsim (amssymb), 532
- \sum, 398, 496, 536
  - sub/superscript placement on, 491, 492
  - (relsize), using larger symbol, 85
- sumlimits option (amsmath), 491
- summary tables of contents, 55
- \Summit (ifsym), 405
- \Sun (ifsym), 405
- \SunCloud (ifsym), 405
- \sup, 500
- super key/option (jurabib), 726, 727–731, 734, 735
- super option
  - (cite), 696, 697, 756
  - problems using, 697
  - (natbib), 713, 714
- superscript option (cite), 696, 697
- superscript footnote marks, 113, 114
- superscriptedition key/option (jurabib), 735, 736, 743
- superscripts
  - above Relation symbols, 495
  - limiting positions, 491, 492
  - number-only citation systems, 696, 697
  - short-title citation system, 735, 736, 743
- supertabular env. (supertabular), 256, 257, 258–261, 263
- supertabular package, 256–259, 261
  - combined with caption, 257, 262
- supertabular\* env. (supertabular), 256, 258, 261
- \supminus (tlc), 501
- \suppressfloats, 287
- suppressing numbers, document headings, 22, 23, 24
- \Supset (amssymb), 533
- \supset, 533
- \supseteq, 533
- \supseteqq (amssymb), 533
- \supsetneq (amssymb), 533
- \supsetneqq (amssymb), 533
- \supsetplus (stmaryrd), 533
- \supsetpluseq (stmaryrd), 533
- \surd, 528
- SVG (Scalable Vector Graphics), 646, *see also* PDF;
  - PostScript
  - portable Web graphics, 644, 645
  - transforming  $\LaTeX$  documents to, 645
- svgview program, 646
- \swabfamily (yfonts), 394, 395

- swap\$  $\BTeX$  built-in function, 808
  - `\swapnumbers` (amsthm), 140
  - `\swarrow`, 534
  - swedish option (babel), 543, 559
  - switch key value (jurabib), 736, 743
  - switch option (lineno), 181
  - switch\* option (lineno), 181
  - `\sym` (euro), 98
  - `\symbol`, 345, 408, 654
    - warning using, 925, 945
  - symbol option (footmisc), 116, 117, 726
  - symbol classes, 524–526, 528, 529
  - symbol\* option (footmisc), 116, 121
  - symbols, *see* math symbols; special characters; text symbols
  - symmetrical page layout, 208, 209
  - syntax diagrams, creating, 834
  - syntax, error messages, 890
  - sz syntax (yfonts), 395
- T**
- `\t`, 362, 459
    - problem with textcomp, 364
    - (textcomp), 363
  - t syntax
    - (array), 249
    - (delarray), 489
    - (hhline), 266, 267
  - T1 font encoding, 337, 345, 353–357, 366, 416, 417, 420, 421, 430, 442, 449, 450–452, 902
    - comparison with OT1, 346
    - extensions, 566, 567
    - hyphenation in, 427, 902
    - list of LICR objects, 455–463
    - problem with EC fonts, 355
    - shape of  $\mathbb{I}$ , 355
    - (avant), 372
    - (babel), 552, 557, 566, 567, 590
    - (bookman), 372
    - (ccfonts), 383, 384
    - (chancery), 372
    - (charter), 372
    - (cmbright), 385, 386
    - (courier), 372
    - (fontenc), 361
    - (fourier), 391, 392
    - (helvet), 372
    - (luximono), 387, 388
    - (newcent), 372
    - (nfssfont.tex), 369
    - (palatino), 372
    - (pxfonts), 391
    - (textcomp), 362, 365
    - (times), 372
    - (txfonts), 388, 389
  - T1 font encoding (*cont.*)
    - (url), 95
    - (utopia), 372
  - T1 option (fontenc), 361, 365, 386, 387, 417, 438, 567, 902
  - `\T1/cmr/m/it/10`, 900
  - `\T1/cmr/m/n/10`, 936
  - t1enc.def file, 450–452
  - t1put.fd file, 420
  - T2A font encoding, 355, 366, 416, 417, 569, 571, 572, 906
    - (babel), 571
    - (fontenc), 361
  - T2A option (fontenc), 361, 417, 570
  - T2B font encoding, 355, 416, 569, 573, 906
  - T2C font encoding, 355, 416, 569, 573
  - T3 font encoding, 416
    - (tipa), 405, 406
  - T4 font encoding, 416
  - T5 font encoding, 416
  - T7 font encoding, 416, 574
  - `\TAB'` (Tabbing), 242
  - `\TAB=` (Tabbing), 242
  - `\TAB>` (Tabbing), 242
  - Tabbing env. (Tabbing), 242
  - Tabbing package, 242
  - tabbing env., 240, 241, 242, 445
    - error using, 895, 908, 910, 912
  - `\tabbingsep` rigid length, 241
  - `\tabcolsep` rigid length, 243, 247, 248, 250, 280, 282
  - thead option (endfloat), 290
  - `\table` (nfssfont.tex), 369
  - table counter, 851
    - (longtable), 259
  - table env., 109, 262, 291, 306, 308
    - cross-reference to, 66, 67
    - error using, 899, 902, 907
    - floats to end of document, 289
    - labels in, 67
    - style parameters, 284–286
    - warning using, 925
    - (float), 294, 295
    - (multicol), not supported, 189
    - (rotfloat), 298
    - (subfig), 318, 320
  - table option (euro), 97
  - table lists
    - in tables of contents, 48
    - options, 290
    - placing at end of document, 289–291
  - table\* env. (multicol), 189
  - `\tablecaption` (supertabular), 257, 258
  - `\tablefirsthead` (supertabular), 256, 257, 258
  - `\tablehead` (supertabular), 256, 257, 258
  - `\tablelasttail` (supertabular), 257, 258
  - `\tablename` (babel), 547
  - tablenotes env. (threeparttable), 278, 279



- `\tableofcontents`, 22, [46](#), [47](#), 52, 54, [55](#), 166, 222
  - (minitoc), 56
  - (shorttoc), 55
  - (titletoc), 60
- `\tableplace` (endfloat), [290](#)
- tables
  - accents, [241](#), [242](#)
  - across page boundaries, 255, 256, [257](#), [258](#), 259, [260](#), 261, 262, [263](#), [264](#)
  - alignment, horizontal, 261
  - alignment, vertical, 246, [273](#), [274](#)
  - balancing white space, [279](#), [280](#)
  - coloring, [264](#), [265](#)
  - column specifiers, defining, 248, 249
  - columns
    - global changes, 245, 248, [249](#)
    - laying out, 240–243
    - modifying style, 248, [249](#)
    - narrow, 246, 247
    - one-off, 248, [249](#)
    - spacing, [247](#), [248](#)
    - width, calculating automatically, [251–254](#), 255, [282](#)
    - width, calculating explicitly, 249, [250](#), 251
  - decimal data, aligning, [272](#), 274, [275](#), [276](#)
  - floats, 315–321
  - fonts, specifying, [244](#), 245
  - footnotes, 263, [277](#), [278](#), [279](#)
  - hyphenation, [246](#)
  - inside tables, [280](#), [281](#)
  - line breaks, [247](#)
  - multipage
    - and floats, [262–264](#)
    - captions, 257, [262](#)
    - creating with longtable, 259, [260](#), 261, [262–264](#)
    - creating with supertabular, 256, [257](#), [258](#), 259
    - footnotes, 263
    - headers and footers, 256, 257, 261
    - horizontal alignment, 261
    - page breaks, 257
    - problems with, [263](#), [264](#)
    - reducing run numbers, 263
    - row commands, 261
    - spacing around, 261
    - width, 258, 259, [260](#), 261, 262, [263](#), 264
  - paragraph options, [245](#), [246](#)
  - preamble commands/options, 243–248, 254
  - rows
    - laying out, 242, 243
    - spacing, 244, [245](#), [269](#), 271
    - spanning, [272](#), [273](#), [274](#), [282](#)
  - rules (graphic lines)
    - colored, [265](#)
    - combining horizontal and vertical, 266, [267](#)
    - dashed, 267, [268](#)
- tables (*cont.*)
  - double, 269
  - formal, 269, [270](#), 271, [272](#)
  - variable width, [266](#)
  - vertical, [266](#), [267](#), 269
  - standard environments, 240–243
  - style parameters, 243
  - `\verb` support, 255
  - visual appearance, 243
  - width
    - balancing white space, [279](#), [280](#)
    - calculating automatically, [251–254](#), 255, [282](#)
    - calculating explicitly, 249, [250](#), 251
    - multipage, 258, 259, [260](#), 261, 262, [263](#), 264
    - stretching, 246
- tables of contents, *see also* minitoc package; titlesec package
  - adding bibliography to, 48
  - adding index to, 48, 681
  - adding lists of figures/tables to, 48
  - at part or section level, 57, [58](#)
  - combining, 52, [53](#), [54](#)
  - description, 45
  - entering information into, 46, [47](#), 48, 49
  - formatting, 59–64
  - generating, 46
  - indentation, 51, 59
  - leaders, 59
  - multiple, 54, [55](#), 56–58
  - nesting levels, 50
  - number width, 51
  - numberless, 59
  - optional code execution, 59, 60
  - paragraph format, 62, [63](#), [64](#)
  - partial, 64, [65](#), 66
  - spacing, 48
  - summary, 55
  - text alignment, 60, [61](#), 62
  - typesetting, 49, [50](#), 51, 52
  - unusual number formats, 52
- `\tablesection` (endfloat), 290
  - `tablesfirst` option (endfloat), 290
- `\tabletail` (supertabular), [257](#), [258](#)
- `\tablinesep` rigid length (tabs), [269](#)
- `tablist` option (endfloat), 290
- tabls package, 269
  - incompatible with array, 269
- tabs, displaying, 160, [161](#)
- `tabsize` key (`fancyvrb`), 160, [161](#)
- tabular env., 103, 104, 106, [240](#), [242](#), 243–251, 264–282, 863, 929
  - error using, [893](#), 898, 901, 904–906
  - footnotes in, 277
  - style parameters, 243

- tabular env. (*cont.*)
  - (array), [244–249](#), [266](#), [274](#), [280](#), [281](#)
    - with color, [264](#)
  - (arydshln), [268](#)
  - (booktabs), [270](#), [272](#)
  - (colortbl), [265](#)
  - (dcolumn), [275](#), [276](#)
  - (hhline), [267](#)
  - (multirow), [273](#), [274](#)
  - (sidecap), [325](#)
  - (tabs), [269](#)
  - (threeparttable), [278](#)
- tabular key value (jurabib), [739](#)
- tabular\* env., [242](#), [255](#), [273](#), [279](#)
  - (array), [246](#), [250](#), [280](#)
- tabularc env. (tlc), [250](#)
- \tabularnewline, [104](#), [246](#), [247](#), [249](#), [250](#), [252](#), [261](#)
- tabularx env. (tabularx), [251](#), [252](#), [253](#), [255](#), [277](#), [279](#), [282](#)
- tabularx package, [250](#), [251–253](#)
- \tabularxcolumn (tabularx), [252](#)
- tabulary env. (tabulary), [253](#), [254](#), [255](#)
- tabulary package, [251](#), [253–255](#)
- tabwindow env. (picinpar), [108](#)
- \tag (amsmath), [472](#), [482](#)
  - error using, [906](#), [910](#)
- \tag\* (amsmath), [482](#)
- \tagcurve (curves), [612](#)
- tags (equation), [469](#)
  - definition, [468](#)
  - numbering equations, [482](#)
  - placement, [483](#), [484](#)
- \tala (babel), [562](#), [563](#)
- \talloblong (stmaryrd), [530](#)
- \tan, [500](#)
- \tanh, [500](#)
- .tar file extension, [954](#)
- \Taschenuhr (ifsym), [404](#)
- \tau, [527](#)
- \tbinom (amsmath), [493](#)
- tbtags option (amsmath), [473](#), [474](#)
- tcidvi option (graphics), [615](#)
- TDS conforming installation, ensuring, [830–833](#)
- technical indexes, [667](#)
- techreport BibTeX entry type, [763](#)
- \Telephone (ifsym), [405](#)
- \Tent (ifsym), [405](#)
- terminal trace display, [943](#)
- \tertio (babel), [563](#)
- testpage.tex file, [197](#)
- .tex file extension, [6](#), [8](#)
- TeX and L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X, summary list files, [8](#)
- TeX capacity exceeded errors, [915–919](#)
- TeX files, obtaining
  - CD-ROM, [948](#), [949](#)
  - ftp, [948](#), [952–954](#)
  - T<sub>E</sub>X files, obtaining (*cont.*)
    - web access, [950](#)
  - T<sub>E</sub>X font metric files, [7](#)
  - T<sub>E</sub>X, encoding, [353](#)
  - tex.bib file (tlc), [690](#), [691](#), [777](#)
  - tex.define function (bibtool), [783](#)
  - tex\_def.rsc file (bibtool), [783](#)
  - texdoc program, [954](#), [955](#)
  - texdoctk program, [954](#), [955](#)
  - texindy program, [668–672](#), [673](#)
  - texmf.cnf file, [915](#)
  - texpicture package, [639](#), [640](#)
  - text, *see also* fonts
    - alignment, tables of contents, [60](#), [61](#), [62](#)
    - case, changing, [85](#), [86](#), [87](#)
    - emphasizing, *see* italic; underlining
    - mathematical typesetting, [499–501](#)
    - style, document headings, [28](#), [30](#), [31](#), [37](#)
    - typed, *see* typed text
    - wrapping around images, [108](#), [109](#)
  - \text
    - (amsmath), [467](#), [472](#), [476–478](#), [484](#), [486](#), [499](#), [508](#)
    - (amstext), [351](#), [529](#)
    - (nfssfont.tex), [369](#)
  - text area, [207](#)
  - text fragments, typesetting, [467](#)
  - text input levels errors, [919](#)
  - text input, encoding, [445–447](#)
  - text length, *see* space parameters
  - text markers, floats, [290](#), [291](#)
  - text symbols, *see also* math symbols; special characters
    - € (euro symbol), [407–412](#)
    - backward compatibility, [463](#), [464](#)
    - clocks, [403](#), [404](#), [405](#)
    - clouds, [403](#), [404](#), [405](#)
    - encoding
      - Pi fonts, [378](#), [379–381](#)
      - PostScript, [388](#), [389](#), [390](#)
      - TS1, [362](#), [363–368](#)
    - hands, [400](#), [401](#)
    - IPA, [406](#), [407](#)
    - L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X 2.09, [464](#)
    - MarVoSym font, [401](#), [403](#)
    - mountains, [403](#), [404](#), [405](#)
    - setting up, [433–437](#)
    - TIPA, [405–407](#)
    - Waldi's font, [401](#)
    - Zapf Dingbats, [378–380](#)
      - an alternative, [403](#), [404](#)
  - text.length\$ BibTeX built-in function, [808](#)
  - text.prefix\$ BibTeX built-in function, [808](#)
  - \textacutedbl (textcomp), [364](#), [459](#)
  - \textascendercompwordmark (textcomp), [365](#), [459](#)
  - \textasciicute (textcomp), [364](#), [459](#)
  - \textasciibreve (textcomp), [364](#), [459](#)

- `\textasciicaron` (textcomp), 364, 459
- `\textasciicircum`, 459
- `\textasciidieresis` (textcomp), 364, 459
- `\textasciigrave` (textcomp), 154, 364, 459
- `\textasciimacron` (textcomp), 364, 459
- `\textasciitilde`, 459
- `\textasteriskcentered`, 128
  - (textcomp), 363, 459
- `\textbackslash`, 339, 459, 654
- `\textbaht` (textcomp), 363, 459
- `\textbar`, 459
- `\textbardbl` (textcomp), 363, 459
- `\textbf`, 340, 344, 346, 407, 408, 438, 874
  - used in math, 351
  - (cmbright), 408
  - (lucidabr), 410
  - (soul), 89
  - (ulem), replaced by `\uwave`, 87
  - (yfonts), 394
- `\textbigcircle` (textcomp), 364, 459
- `\textblack` (fourier), 393
- `\textblank` (textcomp), 364, 459
- `\textborn` (textcomp), 364, 366, 367, 384, 389, 390, 459
- `\textbraceleft`, 459
- `\textbraceright`, 459
- `\textbrokenbar` (textcomp), 363, 459
- `\textbullet`, 63, 128, 136, 364, 365
  - (textcomp), 363, 364, 365, 459
- `\textcapitalcompwordmark` (textcomp), 365, 459
  - textcase package, 85–87
- `\textcelsius` (textcomp), 363, 459
- `\textcent`, 446
  - (textcomp), 363, 459
- `\textcentoldstyle` (textcomp), 363, 459
- `\textcircled`, 362, 453
  - problem with textcomp, 364
  - (textcomp), 363, 459
- `\textcircledP` (textcomp), 363, 459
- `\textcolonmonetary` (textcomp), 363, 460
- `\textcolor` (color), 157, 264, 599, 695, 696
  - textcomp package, 89, 362–368, 388, 453–455
  - error using, 889, 895, 910
  - unusable with ae, 356
  - textcomp.cfg file (textcomp), 367
- `\textcompsubstdefault` (textcomp), 366, 367, 910
- `\textcompwordmark`, 365, 460
  - (textcomp), 365
- `\textcopyleft` (textcomp), 363, 367, 460
- `\textcopyright` (textcomp), 363, 460
- `\textcurrency` (textcomp), 362, 363, 460
- `\textcyrillic` (babel), 568
- `\textdagger` (textcomp), 363, 364, 460
- `\textdaggerdbl` (textcomp), 363, 460
- `\textdblhyphen` (textcomp), 364, 460
- `\textdblhyphenchar` (textcomp), 364, 460
- `\textdegree` (textcomp), 363, 460
- `\textdied` (textcomp), 364, 384, 389, 390, 460
- `\textdiscount` (textcomp), 363, 460
- `\textdiv` (textcomp), 363, 460
- `\textdivorced` (textcomp), 364, 460
- `\textdollar`, 366, 454, 460
  - (pxfonts), problems with, 390
  - (textcomp), 363
  - (txfonts), problems with, 389
- `\textdollaroldstyle` (textcomp), 363, 366, 384, 389, 390, 460
- `\textdong` (textcomp), 363, 460
- `\textdownarrow` (textcomp), 363, 460
- `\teightoldstyle` (textcomp), 363, 460
- `\textellipsis`, 81, 460
- `\textemdash`, 460
- `\textendash`, 128, 443, 460
- `\textepsilon` (tipa), 406
- `\textestimated` (textcomp), 363, 460
- `\texteuro`, 408, 453
  - faked, 922
  - (luximono), 387
  - (textcomp), 97, 362, 363, 368, 384, 389, 390, 407, 408, 460
- `\textexclamdown`, 443, 460
- `\textfiveoldstyle` (textcomp), 363, 460
- `\textfloatsep` length, 285, 286
- `\textflorin` (textcomp), 363, 460
  - textfont key/option
  - (caption), 310, 311, 313, 324
  - (subfig), 316
- `\textfouroldstyle` (textcomp), 363, 460
- `\textfraction`, 284, 287
- `\textfractionsolidus` (textcomp), 364, 460
- `\textfrak` (yfonts), 90, 394
- `\textgoth` (yfonts), 394
- `\textgravedbl` (textcomp), 364, 460
- `\textgreater`, 460
- `\textgreek` (babel), 568
- `\textguarani` (textcomp), 363, 460
- `\textheight` rigid length, 16, 194–196, 197, 198, 208, 234, 287, 326, 373, 872, 888, 930
  - (fancybox), 597
  - (geometry), 207
  - (lscap), 212
  - (supertabular), 256
  - textheight key/option (geometry), 207, 211
- `\textifsym` (ifsym), 405
- `\textifsymbol` (ifsym), 405
- `\textinit` (yfonts), 396
- `\textinterrobang` (textcomp), 364, 460
- `\textinterrobangdown` (textcomp), 364, 460
- `\textipa` (tipa), 406
- `\textit`, 340, 344, 346, 407
  - used in math, 351

- `\textit` (*cont.*)
  - (`lucidabr`), [410](#)
  - (`yfonts`), [394](#)
- `\textlangle` (`textcomp`), [363](#), [460](#)
- `\textlarger` (`relsize`), [84](#)
- `\textlatin` (`babel`), [568](#)
- `\textlbrackdbl` (`textcomp`), [363](#), [460](#)
- `\textleaf` (`textcomp`), [364](#), [460](#)
- `\textleftarrow` (`textcomp`), [363](#), [460](#)
- `\textless`, [460](#)
- `\textlira` (`textcomp`), [97](#), [363](#), [460](#)
- `\textlnot` (`textcomp`), [363](#), [461](#)
- `\textlquill` (`textcomp`), [363](#), [461](#)
- `\textmarried` (`textcomp`), [364](#), [384](#), [389](#), [390](#), [461](#)
- `\textmd`, [340](#), [344](#), [346](#)
- `\textmho` (`textcomp`), [363](#), [461](#)
- `\textminus` (`textcomp`), [363](#), [461](#)
- `\textmu` (`textcomp`), [363](#), [461](#)
- `\textmusicalnote` (`textcomp`), [364](#), [461](#)
- `\textnaira` (`textcomp`), [363](#), [461](#)
- `\textnineoldstyle` (`textcomp`), [363](#), [461](#)
- `\textnormal`, [166](#), [167](#), [339](#), [344](#)
- `\textnumero` (`textcomp`), [364](#), [367](#), [461](#)
- `\textogonekcentered`, [461](#)
- `\textohm` (`textcomp`), [363](#), [367](#), [368](#), [461](#)
- `\textol` (`babel`), [568](#)
- `\textonehalf`, [446](#)
  - (`textcomp`), [363](#), [461](#)
- `\textoneoldstyle` (`textcomp`), [363](#), [461](#)
- `\textonequarter` (`textcomp`), [363](#), [461](#)
- `\textonesuperior` (`textcomp`), [363](#), [461](#)
- `\textopenbullet` (`textcomp`), [363](#), [461](#)
- `\textordfeminine` (`textcomp`), [363](#), [461](#)
- `\textordmasculine` (`textcomp`), [363](#), [461](#)
- `\textormath` (`babel`), [446](#), [590](#), [591](#)
- `\textparagraph` (`textcomp`), [363](#), [364](#), [461](#)
- `\textperiodcentered`, [99](#), [128](#), [183](#)
  - (`textcomp`), [363](#), [461](#)
- `\textpertenthousand`
  - problems in T1, [417](#)
  - (`textcomp`), [363](#), [461](#)
- `\textperthousand`
  - problems in T1, [417](#)
  - (`textcomp`), [363](#), [461](#)
- `\textpeso` (`textcomp`), [363](#), [461](#)
- `\textpilcrow` (`textcomp`), [363](#), [367](#), [461](#)
- `\textpm` (`textcomp`), [363](#), [461](#)
- `\textprimstress` (`tipa`), [406](#)
- `\textquestiondown`, [461](#)
- `\textquotedbl`, [461](#)
- `\textquotedblleft`, [461](#)
- `\textquotedblright`, [461](#)
- `\textquoteleft`, [461](#)
- `\textquoteright`, [461](#)
- `\textquotesingle` (`textcomp`), [154](#), [364](#), [461](#)
- `\textquotestraightbase` (`textcomp`), [364](#), [461](#)
- `\textquotestraightdblbase` (`textcomp`), [364](#), [461](#)
- `\texttriangle` (`textcomp`), [363](#), [461](#)
- `\texttrbrackdbl` (`textcomp`), [363](#), [461](#)
- `\textrecipe` (`textcomp`), [364](#), [461](#)
- `\textreferencemark` (`textcomp`), [363](#), [461](#)
- `\textregistered`, [453](#)
  - (`textcomp`), [363](#), [461](#)
- `\textrightarrow` (`textcomp`), [363](#), [462](#)
- `\textrm`, [339](#), [344](#), [346](#), [351](#)
  - used in math, [351](#)
- `\textroundcap` (`tipa`), [406](#)
- `\textrquill` (`textcomp`), [363](#), [462](#)
- `\textsb` (`fourier`), [393](#)
- `\textsc`, [340](#), [341](#), [344](#), [346](#), [858](#)
  - used in math, [351](#)
  - (`fourier`), [393](#)
  - (`relsize`), [84](#)
- `\textscale` (`relsize`), [84](#)
- `\textschwa` (`tipa`), [406](#)
- `\textsection` (`textcomp`), [363](#), [462](#)
- `\textservicemark` (`textcomp`), [363](#), [462](#)
- `\textsevenoldstyle` (`textcomp`), [363](#), [462](#)
- `\textsf`, [339](#), [344](#), [346](#), [370](#), [407](#), [418](#), [850](#)
  - used in math, [351](#)
- `\textsfbf` (`tlc`), [89](#)
- `\textsixoldstyle` (`textcomp`), [363](#), [462](#)
- `\textsl`, [340](#), [344](#), [346](#), [408](#)
  - used in math, [351](#)
  - (`cmbright`), [408](#)
- `\textsmaller` (`relsize`), [84](#)
- `\textsterling`, [98](#), [454](#), [462](#)
  - (`pxfonts`), problems with, [390](#)
  - (`textcomp`), [363](#)
  - (`txfonts`), problems with, [389](#)
- `\textstyle`, [432](#), [494](#), [502](#)
  - (`relsize`), [84](#)
- `\textsuperscript`, [113](#), [126](#), [693](#), [861](#), [873](#)
- `\textsurd` (`textcomp`), [363](#), [462](#)
- `\textswab` (`yfonts`), [394](#)
- `\TextSymbolUnavailable`, [446](#)
- `\textthreeoldstyle` (`textcomp`), [363](#), [462](#)
- `\textthreequarters` (`textcomp`), [363](#), [462](#)
- `\textthreequartersemdash` (`textcomp`), [364](#), [462](#)
- `\textthreesuperior` (`textcomp`), [363](#), [462](#)
- `\texttildelow` (`textcomp`), [364](#), [462](#)
- `\texttimes` (`textcomp`), [363](#), [462](#)
- `\texttrademark` (`textcomp`), [363](#), [462](#)
- `\texttt`, [339](#), [344](#), [346](#), [387](#), [407](#), [874](#)
  - used in math, [351](#)
  - (`cmbright`), [408](#)
- `\texttwelveudash` (`textcomp`), [364](#), [462](#)
- `\texttwooldstyle` (`textcomp`), [363](#), [462](#)
- `\texttwosuperior` (`textcomp`), [363](#), [462](#)
- `\textunderscore`, [462](#)

- `\textup`, [142](#), [143](#), [340](#), [344](#), [346](#)
- `\textuparrow` (textcomp), [363](#), [462](#)
- `\textupsilon` (tipa), [406](#)
- Textures program, [614](#), [615](#)
- textures option
  - (changebar), [189](#)
  - (graphics), [614](#), [615](#)
- `\textvisiblespace`, [96](#), [462](#)
- `\textwidth` rigid length, [181](#), [194](#), [196](#), [197](#), [199](#), [226](#), [871](#), [872](#), [888](#)
  - (fancybox), [597](#)
  - (fancyhdr), [224](#)
  - (longtable), [261](#)
  - (lscap), [212](#)
- textwidth key/option (geometry), [207](#), [211](#)
- `\textwon` (textcomp), [363](#), [462](#)
- `\textyen` (textcomp), [363](#), [462](#)
- `\textzeroldstyle` (textcomp), [363](#), [462](#)
- .tfm file extension, [7](#), [8](#), [327](#), [340](#), [343](#), [413](#), [428](#), [429](#), [900](#)
- `\tfrac` (amsmath), [493](#), [494](#)
- `\tg` (babel), [564](#)
- `\TH`, [457](#)
- `\th`, [462](#)
  - (babel), [564](#)
- `\the`, [131](#), [387](#), [855](#), [856](#), [935](#)
  - error using, [902](#)
- `\the`(*ctr*), [853](#)
- thebibliography env., [22](#), [222](#), [686](#), [687](#), [689](#), [691](#), [692](#), [699](#), [745](#), [809](#)
  - listed in TOC, [47](#)
  - warning using, [921](#)
  - (bibunits), [752](#)
  - (chapterbib), [747](#)
  - (natbib), [707](#), [709](#)
- `\thebtauxfile` (bibtopic), [754](#)
- `\thechapter`, [25](#), [219](#), [854](#)
  - (chappg), [216](#)
  - (chapterbib), [748](#), [749](#)
- `\theCodelineNo` (doc), [824](#)
- `\thecontentslabel` (titletoc), [59](#), [60](#), [61](#), [64](#)
- `\thecontentspage` (titletoc), [59](#), [60](#), [63](#), [64](#)
- `\theendnote` (endnotes), [126](#)
- `\theendnotes` (endnotes), [125](#), [126](#), [728](#)
- `\theenmark` (endnotes), [126](#)
- `\theenumi`, [129](#), [130](#), [854](#)
- `\theenumii`, [129](#), [130](#), [854](#)
- `\theenumiii`, [130](#), [854](#)
- `\theenumiv`, [130](#), [854](#)
- `\theequation`, [14](#), [71](#), [482](#), [854](#)
  - (amsmath), [485](#)
- `\theFancyVerbLine` (fancyvrb), [160](#)
- `\thefigure`, [47](#)
  - (subfloat), [322](#)
- `\thefootnote`, [110](#), [277](#)
- theglossary env., [653](#)
- theindex env., [22](#), [222](#), [649](#), [679](#), [680](#)
  - listed in TOC, [48](#)
- `\thelstlisting` (listings), [174](#)
- `\themainfigure` (subfloat), [322](#)
- `\themaintable` (subfloat), [322](#)
- `\themnote` (tlc), [121](#)
- `\thempfootnote`, [110](#), [277](#)
- theorem package, [140](#)
- theorem-like structures, [138-144](#), [467](#), *see also* headed lists
- `\theoremstyle` (amsthm), [140](#), [142](#), [143](#)
- `\thepage`, [215](#), [216](#), [217](#), [223](#), [228](#), [231-233](#), [876](#)
  - (chappg), [216](#)
- `\theparentequation` (amsmath), [485](#)
- `\thepart`, [853](#)
- `\thepostfig` (endfloat), [290](#)
- `\theposttbl` (endfloat), [290](#)
- `\therefore` (amssymb), [535](#)
- `\Thermo` (ifsym), [404](#), [405](#)
- `\thesection`, [25](#), [26](#), [217](#), [219](#), [853](#)
  - thesis document class, [20](#)
- `\thesub`(*type*) (subfig), [318](#)
- `\thesubfloatfigure` (subfloat), [322](#)
- `\thesubfloattable` (subfloat), [322](#)
- `\thesubsection`, [25](#), [26](#), [853](#)
- `\thesubsubsection`, [853](#)
- `\thesubtable` (subfig), [318](#), [319](#)
- `\Theta`, [496](#), [527](#)
- `\theta`, [475](#), [527](#)
- `\thetable` (subfig), [319](#)
- `\thetitle` (titlesec), [37](#)
- `\theTitleReference` (titleref), [77](#)
- `\thepagerefnum` (varioref), [74](#), [75](#)
- `\thickapprox` (amssymb), [532](#)
- `\Thicklines`
  - (eepicemu), [611](#)
  - (eepic), [609](#), [610](#)
- `\thicklines`, [596](#), [607](#), [611](#)
  - (eepic), [609](#), [610](#)
  - (epic), [602-604](#)
  - (pspicture), [640](#), [641](#)
- `\thickmuskip` length, [507](#), [525](#), [526](#)
- `\thicksim` (amssymb), [532](#)
- `\thickspace` (amsmath), [507](#), [508](#)
- `\thinlines`, [596](#)
  - (epic), [602](#), [604](#)
  - (pspicture), [640](#), [641](#)
- `\thinmuskip` length, [507](#), [525](#), [526](#)
- `\thinspace`, [507](#), [508](#)
- `\thisfancypage` (fancybox), [599](#)
- `\thisfancyput` (fancybox), [599](#)
- `\thisfancyput*` (fancybox), [599](#)
- `\thispagestyle`, [33](#), [222](#), [230](#), [679](#), [680](#)
  - (fancyhdr), [230](#)
  - (nextpage), [236](#)

- thm env. (tlc), [139](#), [140](#)
- \thmname (amsthm), [142](#), [143](#)
- \thmnote (amsthm), [142](#), [143](#)
- \thmnumber (amsthm), [142](#), [143](#)
- threeparttable env. (threeparttable), [278](#), [279](#)
- threeparttable package, xxvii, [278](#), [279](#)
- .tif file extension, [8](#), [626](#)
- tight option
  - (minitoc), [56](#)
  - (shorttoc), [55](#)
- \tilde, [529](#)
- tilde (~)
  - multilingual aspects, [554](#)
  - nonbreaking space, [550](#)
- \time, [871](#), [873](#)
- \times, [392](#), [490](#), [496](#), [530](#)
  - dots with, [496](#)
- times option (quotchap), [35](#)
- times package, [370](#), [371](#)
- Times Roman font
  - alternative support, [388](#), [389](#), [390](#), [516](#)
  - description, [375](#)
  - in math and text, [376](#), [377](#), [389](#), [390](#), [516](#), [517](#)
- \tiny, [172](#), [342](#), [343](#)
  - tiny option (titlesec), [37](#)
- tipa package, xxvii, [405–407](#), [416](#)
- tipaman file (tipa), [407](#)
- \title, [907](#)
- title  $\LaTeX$  field, [690](#), [732](#), [743](#), [763](#), [765](#), [768](#), [772](#), [779](#)
  - (jurabib), [717](#), [718](#), [719](#), [722](#)
- title width, measuring in document headings, [41](#)
- titleaddon  $\LaTeX$  field (jurabib), [743](#)
- \titleclass (titlesec), [44](#), [45](#)
- \titlecontents (titletoc), [59](#), [60](#), [61](#), [62](#), [63](#), [64](#)
- \titlecontents\* (titletoc), [62](#), [63–65](#)
- \titleformat (titlesec), [38](#), [40–45](#), [65](#), [91](#), [92](#)
  - titleformat key/option (jurabib), [716](#), [720](#), [721](#), [734](#), [735](#), [741](#)
- \titleformat\* (titlesec), [37](#)
- \titlelabel (titlesec), [37](#)
- \titleline (titlesec), [42](#)
- \titleline\* (titlesec), [42](#)
  - titlepage env., [858](#)
- \titleref (titleref), [76](#), [77](#)
- titleref package, [76](#), [77](#)
- \titlerule
  - (titlesec), [41](#), [42](#)
  - (titletoc), [59](#), [61](#)
- \titlerule\*
  - (titlesec), [41](#), [42](#)
  - (titletoc), [61](#)
- titles, bibliographies
  - format, [719](#), [720](#)
  - information field, [743](#)
  - mapping short to full, [721](#), [722](#), [723](#)
- titles, bibliography database, [768](#)
- titlesec package, xxvii, [36–45](#), [65](#), [224](#), *see also* document headings; titletoc package
- \titlespacing (titlesec), [38](#), [39](#), [40](#), [41](#), [42](#), [43](#), [44](#), [45](#)
- \titlespacing\* (titlesec), [40](#), [65](#), [91](#), [92](#)
- titletoc package, xxvii, [56](#), [58–66](#), *see also* minitoc package; titlesec package
- \titlewidth rigid length (titlesec), [41](#), [42](#)
- Tk program, [955](#)
- tlc package, [983](#)
- TM Math font, [517](#)
- tmargin key/option (geometry), [206](#), [208](#)
- \tnote (threeparttable), [278](#)
- \to, [491](#), [492](#), [501](#), [534](#)
  - TOC, *see* tables of contents
- .toc file extension, [7](#), [8](#), [23](#), [32](#), [33](#), [46](#), [47](#), [49](#), [54](#), [445](#)
  - (chapterbib), [749](#)
  - (titletoc), [58](#), [60](#)
- tocbibind package, [48](#), [681](#)
- tocdepth counter, [27](#), [49](#), [50](#), [52](#), [55](#), [61](#), [63](#), [64](#), [65](#)
- \tocdesign (layouts), [202](#)
- \tocdiagram (layouts), [202](#)
- \today, [85](#), [837](#), [838](#)
  - (babel), [550](#), [558](#), [559](#), [585](#), [587](#)
  - (rcsinfo), [839](#)
  - today option (rcsinfo), [839](#)
- \todayRoman (babel), [558](#)
- \toEng (tlc), [873](#)
- \tolerance, [102](#), [103](#), [187](#), [941–943](#)
  - (multicol), [186](#)
- \tone (tipa), [406](#), [407](#)
  - tone option (tipa), [406](#), [407](#)
- \top, [524](#), [528](#)
  - top key (titlesec), [44](#), [45](#)
  - top key value
    - (caption), [312](#), [318](#)
    - (subfig), [318](#)
  - top key/option (geometry), [208](#), [209](#)
  - top\$  $\LaTeX$  built-in function, [808](#)
  - topadjust key/option (subfig), [317](#), [318](#)
- \topcaption (supertabular), [257](#)
- \topfigrule, [285](#)
- \topfraction, [284](#), [285](#), [286](#)
- \topleftxmark (extramarks), [221](#)
- topline key value (fancyvrb), [158](#)
- \topmargin rigid length, [194](#), [196](#), [198](#), [872](#), [934](#), [935](#)
- \topmark, [218](#), [221](#)
  - topnumber counter, [284](#)
- \toprightxmark (extramarks), [221](#)
- \toprule (booktabs), [270](#), [272](#)
- \topsep length, [141](#), [145](#), [934](#), [935](#)
- \topskip length, [197](#), [198](#), [936](#), [938](#)
  - (geometry), [207](#)
- total key/option (geometry), [211](#)

- `\totalheight`, 861, 862, 866
  - (graphics), 630
- `totalheight` key (graphicx), 619, 623, 898
- `totalnumber` counter, 284
- `totalpages` `BBTeX` field (jurabib), 743
- trace package, 945, 946, 976
- `tracefnt` package, 368, 369
- `\traceoff` (trace), 946
- `traceoff` option (changebar), 191
- `\traceon` (trace), 946
- `traceon` option (changebar), 191
- `tracestacks` option (changebar), 191
- tracing font selection, 368
- tracing problems, *see* troubleshooting
- tracing, paragraph break algorithm, 940–943
- `\tracingall`, 940, 943, 944, 945, 946
- `\tracingassigns` (trace), available with `eTeX`, 946
- `\tracingcommands`, 945
- `\tracinggroups`, available with `eTeX`, 906, 918
  - (trace), 946
- `\tracingifs`, 921
- `\tracinglostchars`, 945
- `\tracingmacros`, 945
- `tracingmulticol` counter (multicol), 186, 188
- `\tracingonline`, 907, 918, 924, 938, 940, 943
- `\tracingoutput`, 943
- `\tracingpages`, 938
  - output produced from, 938
- `\tracingparagraphs`, 940
  - output produced from, 941, 942
- `\tracingrestores`, 944
- `\tracingstats`, 916
  - output produced from, 916
- `\tracingtabularx` (tabularx), 252, 253
- trailing blanks, indexes, 650, 655, 666, 669
- transcript files
  - extension, 7
  - index generation, 658, 668
  - writing to, 943
- translated works, bibliographies, 742, 743
- translating documents, *see* multilingual documents
- translating language-dependent strings, 586
- translations, language options, 550, 551
- translator `BBTeX` field (jurabib), 743
- tree structures, 612
- `\triangle`, 528
- `\triangledown` (amssymb), 528
- `\triangleleft`, 530
- `\trianglelefteq` (amssymb), 533
- `\trianglelefteqslant` (stmaryrd), 533
- `\triangleleq` (amssymb), 532
- `\triangleright`, 161, 530
- `\trianglerighteq` (amssymb), 533
- `\trianglerighteqslant` (stmaryrd), 533
- `\TriangleUp` (ifsym), 405
- `trim` key (graphicx), 619, 620, 621
- trimming marks, 212, 213, 214
- `troff` program, 608
- troubleshooting
  - boxes, displaying contents, 943
  - `buffer size` errors, 917
  - color, 870
  - command definitions, displaying, 932–934
  - command execution, tracing, 945, 946
  - command names, strange, 933
  - cross-reference errors, 894
  - debugging messages, indexes, 675
  - description, 889, 890
  - error messages
    - asterisk only, 894
    - list of, 894–915
    - source line, finding, 890–894
    - syntax, 890
  - exception dictionary errors, 917
  - font glyphs, 369, 370
  - font memory errors, 917
  - font selection, 368
  - footnotes, 944, 945
  - fragile commands, 892–894
  - grouping levels errors, 917, 918
  - `hash size` errors, 918
  - hyphenation, 940
  - index generation, 665, 666
  - informational messages, 920–931
  - internal tables, overflowing, 917–919
  - list stack, displaying, 944
  - lost characters, tracing, 945
  - macro stack, displaying, 892
  - `makeindex`, 665, 666
  - memory exceeded message, 915–919
  - number of strings errors, 918
  - online tracing, 943
  - page breaks, 935–939
  - page contents, symbolic display, 935–937
  - paragraph breaks, 939–943
  - parameter stack size errors, 918, 919
  - pattern memory errors, 919
  - persistent errors, 892
  - `pool size` errors, 919
  - primitives
    - displaying, 934
    - tracing, 945
  - register values, displaying, 934, 935
  - restore values, displaying, 944
  - `save size` errors, 919
  - semantic nest size errors, 919
  - stepping through documents, 945
  - terminal display, 943
  - `TeX capacity exceeded` errors, 915–919
  - text input levels errors, 919

- troubleshooting (*cont.*)
  - trace package, 945, 946
  - transcript file, writing to, 943
  - vertical space, 935–939
  - warning messages, 920–931
- true key value
  - (caption), 309
  - (fancyvrb), [157](#), [159](#), [160](#), [161](#), 164, [165](#)
  - (geometry), 206
  - (jurabib), [716](#), [735](#)
  - (listings), 171, [173](#), 174, [175](#)
  - (titlesec), 43, [44](#)
- true syntax, 875
- truedimen key/option (geometry), 210
- TrueTeX program, 615
- truetest option (graphics), 615
- \truncate (truncate), [232](#), [233](#)
- truncate package, 232, 233
- \TruncateMarker (truncate), 232
- truncating text, page styles, [232](#), [233](#)
- \try(*param*) (layouts), 200, 202
- \trycolumnsep (layouts), [201](#)
- \trycolumnseprule (layouts), [201](#)
- \tryevensidemargin (layouts), [201](#)
- \tryfootskip (layouts), [201](#)
- \tryheadheight (layouts), [201](#)
- \tryheadsep (layouts), 200, [201](#)
- \trypaperheight (layouts), [201](#)
- \trypaperwidth (layouts), [201](#)
- \trytextheight (layouts), [201](#)
- \trytextwidth (layouts), [201](#)
- TS1 font encoding, 117, 354, 355, 382, [416](#), 417, 420, 453–455
  - list of LICR objects, 455–463
  - (avant), 372
  - (bookman), 372
  - (ccfonts), 383, 384
  - (chancery), 372
  - (charter), 372
  - (cmbright), 385, 386
  - (courier), 372
  - (fourier), 392
  - (helvet), 372
  - (luximono), 387
  - (newcent), 372
  - (palatino), 372
  - (pxfonts), 391
  - (textcomp), 362, [366](#), [367](#)
  - (times), 372
  - (txfonts), 388, 389
  - (utopia), 372
- TS3 font encoding, 416
- \tt, 347
  - used in math, 349, 464
- tt key value
  - (caption), 310
  - (fancyvrb), 155, [156](#)
- tt option (titlesec), 37
- ttctexa document class, 960
- \ttdefault, [154](#), 339, [346](#), [387](#)
- \ttfamily, 93, [339](#), [344](#), [346](#), [409](#), [464](#), [935](#)
  - used in math, 348, 350
- .ttt file extension (endfloat), 291
- TUG (T<sub>E</sub>X Users Group) home page, 948
- turkish option (babel), [543](#), [557](#)
- turn env. (rotating), 297, [634](#)
- \twlrm (tlc), [464](#)
- twlrm option (rawfonts), 464
- two-sided printing
  - page styles, 223, [226](#)
  - turning on, 199
- \twocolumn, 184, [679](#), [680](#)
  - warning using, 926
- twocolumn key/option (geometry), 207
- twocolumn option, [16](#), 114, 176, 184, 232
- \twocolumnlayouttrue (layouts), [200](#), [201](#)
- \twoheadleftarrow (amssymb), 534
- \twoheadrightarrow (amssymb), 534
- twoside key/option (geometry), [207](#), 208, [209](#)
- twoside option, 199, [208](#), 729, [881](#)
  - (biblist), 774
  - (layout), 199
- txfonts package, [388–390](#), 510, 511, 517
  - touching letters with, 390
- \tyformat (tabulary), 254
- \tymax rigid length (tabulary), [253](#), [254](#)
- \tymax rigid length (tabulary), [253](#), [254](#)
- type B<sub>E</sub>T<sub>E</sub>X field, 763, 765
- type key (graphicx), [620](#), 627
  - error using, 896
- type\$ B<sub>E</sub>T<sub>E</sub>X built-in function, 808
- \typearea (typearea), [205](#)
- typearea package, xxvii, [203–206](#), 207, 237
- typearea.cfg file (typearea), 203
- typed text, *see also* typewriter font; verbatim env.
  - background fill, 157, [158](#)
  - blanks, displaying, 160, [161](#)
  - boxing, [164](#)
  - coloring
    - background, 158
    - frame rules, 158
    - text, 156, [157](#)
  - computer code, printing, [168](#), [169](#), [170](#), [175](#)
    - as floats, 174
    - captions, [174](#)
    - code fragments within normal text, [171](#)
    - formatting language keywords, 170, [171](#)
    - frames around listings, [173](#)
    - indentation, [172](#)



typed text (*cont.*)

- input encoding, 174, [175](#)
- languages supported, 169
- line breaks, 172, [173](#)
- numbering lines, [172](#)
- rules around listings, [173](#)
- computer program style quoting, 153, [154](#), 155
- customized variants, 164, [165](#)
- displaying a subset of data, [162](#), [163](#)
- emphasizing, *see* italic; underlining
- escape characters, [161](#)
- executing commands in, [161](#)
- fonts, specifying, 155, [156](#)
- framing, 157, [158](#)
- indentation, removing, [157](#)
- inside arguments, 165, [166](#), [167](#), 168
- inside footnotes, [167](#)
- leading spaces, removing, [157](#)
- monospaced typeface, 153, [154](#), 155
- numbering lines, 159, [160](#)
- reading data verbatim, 163
- spacing, vertical, [159](#)
- special characters, [152](#), [153](#)
- start/stop delimiters, [152](#), [153](#), 167, [168](#)
- tabs, displaying, 160, [161](#)
- top/bottom delimiters, [159](#)
- writing data verbatim, 163

typefaces, *see* fonts

`\typein`, 827

`\typeout`, 432, 827, [893](#)

typesetting

- currencies, [96-99](#)
- directory names, [93-95](#), 96
- e-mail addresses, [93-95](#), 96
- euro currency, [96-99](#)
- paths, [93-95](#), 96
- tables of contents, 49, [50](#), 51, 52
- URLs, [93-95](#), 96

typesetting parameters, list of, 820-824

typewriter font, 339, [386](#), [387](#), [388](#), *see also* verbatim env.; typed text

typographic conventions, this book, 11-13

typographical fonts, *see* proportional fonts

## U

U font encoding, 397, [416](#), 430, 435, [454](#)

- (eurosans), 411

- (eurosym), 409

`\u`, [365](#), [462](#)

ucs package, 361

UK-TUG FAQ, 947

UKenglish option (babel), 543

ukrainian option (babel), 543, 568

`\ul` (soul), [88](#), [90](#), [92](#)

`\ULdepth` rigid length (ulem), 87

ulem package, 87, 88

`\ULforem` (ulem), 87

`\uline` (ulem), 87

`\ULthickness` (ulem), 88

umvs.fd file (marvosym), [403](#)

unbalance counter (multicol), [186](#), [187](#), 188

`\unboldmath`, 352

- (bm), 512

`\UndeclareTextCommand`, [366](#), [454](#)

`\UndefineShortVerb` (fancyvrb), [168](#)

`\underaccent` (accents), [495](#)

`\underleftarrow` (amsmath), [497](#)

`\underleftrightarrow` (amsmath), [497](#)

- underlining text, [87](#), [88](#), [92](#), 342

`\underrightarrow` (amsmath), [497](#)

`\underset` (amsmath), [495](#)

`\undertilde` (accents), [495](#)

- undotted option (minitoc), 56

- Uniform Resource Locators (URLs), *see* URLs

- unifying index entries, 676

- unitcntnreset option (bibtopic), 754

`\unitlength` rigid length (pspicture), 641

- units key (graphicx), 632, 633

- unjustified paragraphs, 103-106

`\unkern`, [81](#)

`\unlhd` (latexsym), [464](#)

- unpack.ins file, 828, 829

- unpublished  $\LaTeX$  entry type, [690](#), [763](#)

`\unrhd` (latexsym), [464](#)

`\unsethebrew` (babel), [568](#)

`\unskip`, [111](#), 146, [325](#)

- unsorted citation style, 697

- unstr  $\LaTeX$  style, 687, 792, 793, [795](#), 806

- (bibtopic), 754

- (notoccite), 697

- unstrnat  $\LaTeX$  style (natbib), [708](#), [710](#), [793](#)

- unzip program, 410

- up key value (caption), 310

- up option (titlesec), 37

`\Uparrow`, 498, 534

`\uparrow`, 498, 534

- updated  $\LaTeX$  field (jurabib), 743

`\updatename` (jurabib), 743

`\updatesep` (jurabib), 743

`\updefault`, 346

`\upDelta`

- (ccfonts), 385

- (cmbright), 386

- (mathpazo), 378

- (mathptmx), 377

`\Updownarrow`, 498, 534

`\updownarrow`, 498, 534

`\upharpoonleft` (amssymb), 534

`\upharpoonright` (amssymb), 534

`\uplus`, 530

- `\upOmega`
    - (ccfonts), 385
    - (cmbright), 386
    - (mathpazo), 378
    - (mathptmx), 377
  - `\uppercase`, problems with, 571, 845
  - `uppersorbian` option (babel), 543
  - `upquote` key (listings), 154
  - `upquote` package, xxvii, 153–155
  - `upref` package, 467
  - `upright` option (fourier), 392
  - `upright` font shape, 333, 340
  - `\uproot` (amsmath), 504, 505
  - `\upshape`, 340, 341, 344, 346
  - `\Upsilon`, 527
  - `\upsilon`, 527
  - `\upuparrows` (amssymb), 534
  - `\url`
    - (custom-bib), 802
    - (natbib), 710
    - (url), 93, 94, 95, 96, 771
      - error in moving argument, 94
      - problems using, 93
  - `url` B<sup>B</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X field
    - (BibTexMng), 789
    - (custom-bib), 800, 802
    - (jurabib), 718, 743
    - (natbib), 710
  - `url` package, xxvi, 93–96, 802
  - `\UrlBigBreaks` (url), 96
  - `\UrlBreaks` (url), 96
  - `urldate` B<sup>B</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X field (jurabib), 743
  - `\urldatecomment` (jurabib), 743
  - `\urldef` (url), 94, 95
  - `\UrlLeft` (url), 95, 96
    - spaces ignored in, 95
  - `\UrlNoBreaks` (url), 96
  - `\urlprefix` (custom-bib), 802
  - `\UrlRight` (url), 95, 96
    - spaces ignored in, 95
  - URLs (Uniform Resource Locators)
    - bibliographies, 710, 742, 743
    - line breaks, 93
    - typesetting, 93–95, 96
  - `\urlstyle` (url), 94, 95, 96
    - URW Antigua font, 393, 394
    - URW Grotesk font, 393, 394
  - `\usage` (doc), 823
  - `\usebox`, 307, 849, 868, 869, 870
    - error using, 905
    - (soul), 90
  - `\usecounter`, 151
  - `\usedir` (docstrip), 830, 831, 832
  - `\usefont`, 371, 373, 408, 417
  - `USenglish` option (babel), 543
  - `\UseOption` (optional), 21
  - `\usepackage`, 14, 16, 17, 18, 878, 881–883, 919
    - error using, 899, 913
    - release information, 878
    - warning using, 931
  - `\usepostamble` (docstrip), 827, 830
  - `\usepreamble` (docstrip), 830
    - user commands, defining for index generation, 653, 654
    - user groups, 956–958, *see also* help resources
    - user messages, generating, 827, 828
  - `\useshortands` (babel), 547, 548
  - `\UseTDS` (docstrip), 832, 914
  - `\UseTextAccent`, 454
    - (textcomp), 366
  - `\UseTextSymbol`, 365, 366, 454
    - usetoc option (titleref), 77
  - `\UseVerb` (fancyvrb), 165, 166, 167
  - `\UseVerb*` (fancyvrb), 166
  - `\UseVerbatim` (fancyvrb), 167
  - `usorbian` option (babel), 559
  - `utf8` option (inputenc), 360, 361, 444, 541, 669
  - UTF8 support, encoding, 360, 361, 447
  - `utf8enc.dfu` file (inputenc), 447
  - `utopia` package, 371
  - `Utopia` font, 375
    - in math and text, 515
  - `\uuline` (ulem), 87
  - `\uwave` (ulem), 87
  - `UWforbfb` option (ulem), 87
- ## V
- `\v`, 462
  - `\val` (euro), 98
  - `\value`, 130, 131, 198, 277, 852, 871, 873, 876, 893, 934
    - error using, 905
  - `\varbigcirc` (stmaryrd), 531
  - `\varbigtriangledown` (stmaryrd), 530
  - `\varbigtriangleup` (stmaryrd), 530
  - `\varcopyright` (stmaryrd), 528
  - `\varcurlyvee` (stmaryrd), 530
  - `\varcurlywedge` (stmaryrd), 530
  - `\varepsilon`, 474, 504, 527
  - `\varhat` (tlc), 399
    - variables, bibliographies, 805
  - `\varinjlim` (amsmath), 500
    - varioref option (ftpage), 326
  - `varioref` package, 68–75, 544, *see also* cross-references
  - `\varkappa` (amssymb), 527
  - `\varliminf` (amsmath), 500
  - `\varlimsup` (amsmath), 500, 501
  - `\varnothing` (amssymb), 528
  - `\varoast` (stmaryrd), 531
  - `\varobar` (stmaryrd), 531
  - `\varobslash` (stmaryrd), 531
  - `\varocircle` (stmaryrd), 531

- `\varodot` (stmaryrd), 529, 531
- `\varogreaterthan` (stmaryrd), 531
- `\varolessthan` (stmaryrd), 531
- `\varominus` (stmaryrd), 531
- `\varoplus` (stmaryrd), 531
- `\varoslash` (stmaryrd), 531
- `\varotimes` (stmaryrd), 531
- `\varovee` (stmaryrd), 531
- `\varowedge` (stmaryrd), 531
- `\varphi`, 474, 504, 527
- `\varpi`, 527
- `\varprojlim` (amsmath), 500
- `\varpropto` (amssymb), 535
- `\varrho`, 527
- `\varsigma`, 527
- `\varsubsetneq` (amssymb), 533
- `\varsubsetneqq` (amssymb), 533
- `\varsupsetneq` (amssymb), 533
- `\varsupsetneqq` (amssymb), 533
- `\vartheta`, 527
  - `varthm` env. (tlc), 143
- `\vartimes` (stmaryrd), 530
- `\vartriangle` (amssymb), 533
- `\vartriangleleft` (amssymb), 533
- `\vartriangleright` (amssymb), 533
  - `varumlaut` option (yfonts), 394, 395, 396
- `\vbadness`, 924, 928, 930
- `\vbox`, 373, 870, 936
  - in T<sub>E</sub>X warning message, 924, 926, 930
- `\vcenter`, 489
- `\Vdash` (amssymb), 535
- `\vDash` (amssymb), 535
- `\vdash`, 535
- `\vdots`, 536
- `\vec`, 529
- `\Vector` (pspicture), 641
- `\vector`
  - error using, 895
  - (pspicture), 639, 640, 641
  - (texpicture), 640
- vector drawings, *see* epic package; eepic package
- `\vee`, 530
- `\veebar` (amssymb), 530
- `\veqns` (tlc), 73
- `\Verb` (fancyvrb), 167
- `\verb`, 93, 152, 165, 167, 168, 171, 845, 857
  - error using, 913
  - rotating output, 634
  - (boxedminipage), 595
  - (doc), 816
  - (ltxdoc), 834
  - (parallel), 182
  - (shortvrb), 152
  - (tabularx), restricted usage, 255
  - (tabulary), restricted usage, 255
- `\verb` (*cont.*)
  - (upquote), 154
- `\verb*`
  - (shortvrb), 152, 153
  - (tabularx), restricted usage, 255
  - (tabulary), restricted usage, 255
- Verbatim env. (fancyvrb), 155, 156-162, 163, 164
- verbatim env., 151, 152, 155, 845, 894, *see also* typed text; typewriter font
  - error using, 913
  - (doc), 816, 822
  - (parallel), 182
  - (upquote), 154
  - (verbatim), 153
- verbatim package, 153, 155
- verbatim delimiters
  - doc package, 815, 816
  - docstrip, 833
- verbatim text, *see* typed text
- Verbatim\* env. (fancyvrb), 160
- `\Verbatim*` (fancyvrb), 164
  - verbatim\* env.
    - (doc), 822
    - (verbatim), 153
- `\verbatimchar` (doc), 823
- `\VerbatimEnvironment` (fancyvrb), 163
- `\VerbatimFootnotes` (fancyvrb), 167
- `\VerbatimInput` (fancyvrb), 163
- `\VerbatimInput*` (fancyvrb), 164
- VerbatimOut env. (fancyvrb), 163
- verbose key/option (geometry), 210
- verbose option
  - (cite), 696
  - (placeins), 289
  - (wrapfig), 301
- verbose mode, index generation, 675
- `\verbx` (tlc), 167
- version control, 21, 22, 836, 837, 838, 839
- versions, selecting for printing, 21, 22
- `\VERT` (fourier), 392
- `\Vert`, 498, 528
- `\vert`, 498, 528
- vertical extensions, math symbols, 498, 499
- vertical rules (graphic lines), 266, 267, 269
- `\vfill`, 188, 189, 857, 858, 866
  - viewport key (graphicx), 619, 621
- `\Village` (ifsym), 405
- `\Virgo` (marvosym), 401
- visual formatting, 234-236
- `\vitem` (tlc), 167
- `\vline`, 243, 265, 266, 267
- `\vmargin` key/option (geometry), 211
- `\vmargin` package, 202, 203
- `\vmarginratio` key/option (geometry), 208, 209, 211
- `\Vmatrix` env. (amsmath), 486, 487

- vmatrix env. (amsmath), [486](#)
  - vmode boolean, [875](#)
  - \voffset rigid length, [196](#), [210](#)
    - (vmargin), [203](#)
  - voffset key/option (geometry), [210](#)
  - volume BibTeX field, [690](#), [763](#), [765](#), [772](#)
  - volume title, bibliographies, [743](#)
  - volumetitle BibTeX field (jurabib), [743](#)
  - \vpageref (varioref), [69](#), [70](#), [71](#), [73](#), [74](#), [75](#)
  - \vpageref\* (varioref), [69](#), [70](#)
  - \vpagerefrange (varioref), [69](#), [71](#)
  - \vpagerefrange\* (varioref), [71](#)
  - \vphantom, [505](#), [506](#)
  - \Vref (varioref), [72](#)
  - \vref
    - (prettyref), [76](#)
    - (varioref), [69](#), [70](#), [72](#), [74](#), [75](#), [916](#)
    - producing error, [75](#)
  - \vref\* (varioref), [69](#)
  - \vrefpagenum (varioref), [72](#), [73](#)
  - \vrefrange (varioref), [69](#), [70](#), [71](#)
  - \vrule, [266](#), [867](#), [868](#)
  - vscale key/option (geometry), [208](#), [211](#)
  - \vspace, [600](#), [857](#), [858](#), [859](#), [864](#), [865](#), [867](#), [868](#), [911](#)
    - error using, [903](#)
    - problems using, [857](#), [859](#)
  - \vspace\*, [43](#), [112](#), [857](#), [858](#), [864](#), [865](#)
  - VTex program, [416](#), [643](#)
  - vtex key/option (geometry), [210](#)
  - vtex option
    - (changebar), [189](#)
    - (crop), [213](#)
  - \Vvdash (amssymb), [535](#)
- ## W
- w. eps file (t1c), [616](#)
  - Waldi's font, [401](#)
  - warn option (textcomp), [366](#), [367](#), [910](#)
  - warning messages, [920](#)–[931](#), *see also* messages;
    - troubleshooting
  - warning\$ BibTeX built-in function, [808](#)
  - warningshow option (tracefmt), [368](#)
  - wasysm package, [401](#)
  - \wd, [307](#)
  - weather option (ifsym), [404](#), [405](#)
  - \wedge, [530](#)
  - weight, fonts, [334](#), [335](#)
  - welsh option (babel), [543](#)
  - welsh.sty file (babel), [583](#)
  - while\$ BibTeX built-in function, [808](#)
  - \whiledo (ifthen), [876](#)
  - white space
    - around text, [198](#)
    - in tables, [279](#), [280](#)
    - italic correction, [340](#), [341](#), [342](#)
  - \whline (t1c), [266](#)
    - wide option (sidecap), [323](#), [324](#)
  - \widehat, [497](#), [512](#), [529](#)
    - (bm), [512](#)
  - \WideMargins (a4), [199](#)
    - widespace key value (t1c), [314](#)
  - \widetilde, [483](#), [497](#), [506](#), [529](#)
    - (fourier), [392](#)
  - \widowpenalty, [936](#), [939](#)
    - width, *see* space parameters
  - \width, [861](#), [862](#)
    - (graphics), [630](#)
    - (wrapfig), [301](#)
  - width key (graphicx), [619](#), [621](#)–[624](#)
  - width key/option
    - (caption), [309](#)
    - (geometry), [207](#), [208](#), [211](#)
  - width option (crop), [213](#)
  - width syntax, [227](#), [867](#), [868](#)
  - width\$ BibTeX built-in function, [808](#)
  - window env. (picinpar), [108](#)
  - Windows database manager, bibliographies, [789](#)
  - Windvi program, [954](#), [956](#)
  - withprosodicmarks attribute (babel), [549](#), [556](#), [557](#)
  - \wlog, [432](#)
  - \wordsep (titlesec), [40](#)
  - \wp, [527](#)
  - \wr, [530](#)
    - wrap key (titlesec), [38](#), [39](#), [41](#)
    - wrapfig package, [176](#), [299](#)–[302](#)
    - wrapfigure env. (wrapfig), [299](#), [300](#), [301](#), [302](#)
    - wrapfloat env. (wrapfig), [302](#)
  - \wrapoverhang rigid length (wrapfig), [301](#), [302](#)
    - wrapping text around images, [108](#), [109](#), [298](#), [299](#), [300](#), [301](#), [302](#)
  - wratable env. (wrapfig), [299](#), [300](#)–[302](#)
  - \write, [131](#)
    - write\$ BibTeX built-in function, [808](#), [810](#)
  - writing data verbatim, [163](#)
  - www BibTeX entry type (jurabib), [742](#), [743](#)
- ## X
- X syntax (tabularx), [251](#), [252](#), [255](#)
  - x key (graphicx), [632](#), [633](#)
  - X2 font encoding, [355](#), [416](#), [569](#)
  - xdoc package, [814](#)
  - xdoc2 package, [814](#)
  - xdvi program, [614](#), [954](#)
  - \Xi, [527](#)
  - \xi, [527](#)
    - xindy program, [7](#), [540](#), [573](#), [648](#), [650](#), [652](#), [666](#)–[679](#), [972](#), *see also* index generation; makeindex program
  - \xleftarrow
    - (amsmath), [490](#)
    - (fourier), [392](#)

xleftmargin key  
    (fancyvrb), 157  
    (listings), 172  
\xmlcode (tlc), 293  
XMLexa env. (tlc), 293, 298  
XMLexa\* env. (tlc), 298  
.xmp file extension (tlc), 55  
\xout (ulem), 87  
Xpdf program, 642  
\xquad (tlc), 63  
xr package, 78  
xr-hyper package, 78  
\xrightarrow (amsmath), 490  
xrightmargin key (fancyvrb), 157  
\XSolid (bbding), 403  
\XSolidBold (bbding), 403  
\XSolidBrush (bbding), 403  
\xspace (xspace), 80, 81  
xspace package, 80, 81  
\xspaceskip length, 428  
\xwordsdown (fourier), 392  
\xwordsup (fourier), 392  
\xvec (tlc), 844, 932, 935  
xy env. (xy), 549  
xypic package, 593, 969

## Y

\y (docstrip), 828  
y key (graphicx), 632, 633  
\Ydown (stmaryrd), 530  
year BibTeX field, 690, 763, 765, 768, 772, 779  
    (jurabib), 717, 718  
year key value (jurabib), 718, 733  
year information missing, bibliographies, 708  
yfonts package, 394–396  
\Yingyang (marvosym), 401  
\yinipar (yfonts), 395, 396  
\Yleft (stmaryrd), 530  
\Yright (stmaryrd), 530  
\Yup (stmaryrd), 530

## Z

Zapf Chancery font, 376  
Zapf Dingbats  
    an alternative, 403, 404  
    encoding, 378–380  
\zero (euro), 99  
zerohyph.tex file (babel), 545  
zeros option (euro), 97  
\zeta, 392, 490, 527  
.zip file extension, 954

# People

- Abbott, Peter, 948  
Achilles, Alf-Christian, 773  
Aguilar-Sierra, Alejandro, 759  
André, Jacques, 964, 978  
Arseneau, Donald, xxvi, 20, 21, 76,  
84, 87, 93, 119, 232,  
269, 278, 288, 299, 693,  
696, 698, 747  
Ashton, James, 681  
  
Böttcher, Stephan, xxvii, 176  
Barr, Michael, 488, 964  
Barroca, Leonor, 296  
Basso, Pierre, 753  
Batada, Nizar, 787  
Beccari, Claudio, 574, 964  
Beebe, Nelson, 615, 773, 774, 777,  
778, 791, 964  
Beeton, Barbara, xxvi, 965  
Benguiaat, Ed, 374  
Bennett, Jr., Frank, xxvi, 743, 965  
Benton, Morris, 375  
Berdnikov, Alexander, 569, 965  
Berger, Jens, xxvi, 715  
Berry, Karl, 371, 410, 420, 965  
  
Beyene, Berhanu, 592  
Bezos, Javier, xxvii, 36, 58, 494,  
965  
Bigelow, Charles, 387, 521  
Bleser, Joachim, 302, 612  
Borceux, Francis, 488, 965, 966  
Bouche, Thierry, 966  
Bovani, Michel, xxvii, 391, 515  
Braams, Johannes, 3, 4, 189, 199,  
202, 256, 542, 814, 825,  
966, 977, 1085  
Bradley, Neil, 966  
Breitenlohner, Peter, 966  
Bringhurst, Robert, 966  
Butcher, Judith, 966  
  
Carlisle, David, 4, 32, 68, 78, 80,  
86, 134, 212, 244, 251,  
253, 259, 265, 266, 274,  
289, 294, 489, 638, 825,  
872, 966, 967, 977,  
1085  
Carlisle, Matthew, 1085  
Carnase, Tom, 374  
Carter, Matthew, 374  
  
Chen, Pehong, 967  
Clark, Adrian, 967  
Clark, James, 615  
Clasen, Matthias, 967  
Clausen, Jörn, 411  
Cochran, Steven, xxvi, 314, 315  
Cohen, Tzafrir, 576  
Corff, Oliver, 592  
Cosell, Bernie, 84  
Covington, Michael, xxvii, 154  
  
Dachian, Serguei, 592  
Dahlgren, Mats, 299  
Dair, Carl, 967  
Dalalyan, Arnak, 592  
Daly, Patrick, xxvii, 700, 701, 710,  
798, 974  
Detig, Christine, xxvi, 1087  
Donin de Rosière, Emmanuel, 760,  
979  
Dorj, Dorjpalam, 592  
Downes, Michael, xxvi, xxvii, 4,  
138, 466, 470, 968  
Drucbert, Jean-Pierre, xxvii, 55,  
56, 78, 242

- Duchier, Denys, 4, 814, 825, 977  
 Duggan, Angus, 153
- Eckermann, Matthias, xxvii, 181  
 Eijkhout, Victor, 968  
 Engebretsen, Lars, 356  
 Esser, Thomas, xxvii, 954, 955  
 Evans, Richard, 682
- Fairbairns, Robin, xxvii, 71, 114,  
 217, 947, 948, 968  
 Fear, Simon, 269  
 Fernandez, Jose Alberto, 749  
 Fine, Michael, 189  
 Finston, Laurence, 968  
 Flipo, Daniel, 5, 99, 589  
 Flynn, Peter, 950  
 Franz, Melchior, xxvi, 88, 96, 212  
 Frischauf, Adrian, 645  
 Fujita, Shinsaku, 613, 968  
 Fukui, Rei, xxvii, 405, 969  
 Fuster, Robert, 356
- Gäßlein, Hubert, xxvii, 323, 638  
 Gaille, Bernard, 591, 969, 978  
 Gelderman, Maarten, 969  
 Gibbons, Jeremy, 524  
 Gildea, Stephen, 197  
 Girou, Denis, 155, 163  
 Glunz, Wolfgang, 646  
 Gobry, Frédéric, 784  
 Goldberg, Jeffrey, xxvii, 216, 289  
 Goldfarb, Charles, 969  
 Goossens, Michel, 969, 1084  
 Gordon, Peter, xxvi  
 Goudy, Frederic, 88  
 Grätzer, George, 465, 970  
 Graham, Ronald, 970  
 Greenwade, George, 948, 970  
 Gross, Sebastian, 325
- Hafner, Thomas, 979  
 Hailperin, Max, 217  
 Hakobian, Vardan, 592  
 Hamilton Kelly, Brian, 615  
 Hansen, Thorsten, xxvii, 749, 755  
 Haralambous, Yannis, 394, 541,  
 592, 637, 970, 978
- Harders, Harald, xxvi, 321, 386,  
 680  
 Harrison, Michael, 967  
 Hart, Horace, 970  
 Hefferon, Jim, 948  
 Heinz, Carsten, xxvi, 169  
 Hellström, Lars, xxvi, 419, 814,  
 971  
 Helminck, Aloysius, 377  
 Henderson, Doug, 400  
 Henlich, Thomas, xxvii, 401  
 Heslin, Peter, xxvii, 82  
 Hoenig, Alan, 108, 970  
 Holmes, Kris, 387, 521  
 Horak, Karel, 403  
 Horn, Berthold, 970  
 Horn, Blenda, xxvii  
 Hufflen, Jean-Michel, 761, 971
- Ion, Patrick, 967  
 Isozaki, Hideki, 612
- Jackowski, Bogusław, 356  
 Janishevsky, Andrew, 965  
 Janishewsky, Andrew, 569  
 Jeffrey, Alan, 4, 5, 376, 419, 517,  
 524, 971  
 Jensen, Frank, 384, 397, 871  
 Jones, David, 681, 709  
 Jurafsky, Dan, 56  
 Jurriens, Theo, 256
- Kastrup, David, xxvi, 117, 120,  
 122, 259  
 Kehr, Roger, 666, 972  
 Keller, Arthur, 400  
 Kempson, Niel, 747, 759  
 Kernighan, Brian, 972  
 Keryell, Ronan, 760  
 Khodulev, Andrey, 570  
 Kielhorn, Axel, 401  
 Kinch, Richard, 615  
 Kirsch, Sebastian, 383  
 Klöckl, Ingo, 403  
 Knappen, Jörg, 354, 362, 407, 972  
 Kneser, Thomas, 299  
 Knuth, Donald, 1, 2, 102, 118,  
 175, 327, 333, 350, 353,
- 369, 381, 383, 399, 406,  
 416, 515, 539, 813, 970,  
 972-974, 982
- Kohm, Markus, xxvii, 203, 236,  
 974  
 Kolodin, Mikhail, 569, 965  
 Kopka, Helmut, 974  
 Kotz, David, 775  
 Kudlek, Manfred, 592  
 Kuhlmann, Volker, 202  
 Kummer, Olaf, 592  
 Kwok, Conrad, 608
- Lagally, Klaus, 592, 975  
 Lamport, Leslie, xxvi, 2, 116, 152,  
 197, 218, 255, 638, 680,  
 684, 872, 975, 979
- Lamy, Jean-François, 202  
 Lang, Edmund, 302, 612  
 Lapko, Olga, 570, 965, 975  
 Lavagnino, John, xxvii, 125, 975  
 Lavva, Boris, 576, 591  
 Lawrence, Steve, 774  
 Leichter, Jerry, 273  
 Lemberg, Werner, 569, 592, 976  
 Lesenko, Sergey, 615  
 Levy, Silvio, 574, 976  
 Liang, Franklin, 976  
 Lindgren, Ulf, 34  
 Lingnau, Anselm, 291  
 Louarn, Philippe, 964  
 Lubalin, Herb, 374  
 Luecking, Dan, 20
- Møller Neergaard, Peter, 403  
 MacKay, Pierre, 974  
 MacLaine-cross, I. L., 611  
 Makhovaya, Irina, 975  
 Matiaske, Wenzel, 20  
 Mattes, Eberhard, 615  
 McCauley, James Darrell, 289  
 McDonnell, Rowland, 971  
 McLean, Ruari, 976  
 McPherson, Kent, 199  
 Mehlich, Michael, 96  
 Metzinger, Jochen, 592  
 Miedinger, Max, 375, 523  
 Miner, Robert, 967

- Mittelbach, Frank, 3, 4, 69, 114,  
140, 184, 243, 286, 328,  
329, 383, 466, 814, 825,  
946, 967, 969, 976-978,  
980, 982, 1083
- Morawski, Jens-Uwe, 974
- Morison, Stanley, 375
- Nakashima, Hiroshi, 267
- Neugebauer, Gerd, xxvi, 778, 978
- Neukam, Frank, 203, 236
- Nicole, Olivier, 978
- Niepraschk, Rolf, xxvii, 323, 638,  
979
- Nowacki, Janusz, 356
- Oberdiek, Heiko, 643
- Orlandini, Mauro, 595
- Pakin, Scott, 399, 400, 524, 814,  
978
- Panday, Anshuman, 592
- Patashnik, Oren, 758, 771, 805,  
806, 970, 978
- Phemister, Alexander, 374
- Plaice, John, 592, 637, 978
- Plass, Michael, 102, 974
- Podar, Sunil, 601, 978
- Popineau, Fabrice, xxvi
- Poppelier, Nico, 202, 967
- Porrat, Rama, 576, 979
- Puga, Diego, 377, 519
- Purtill, Mark, 4, 329
- Rahtz, Sebastian, 78, 155, 296,  
329, 362, 370, 376, 378,  
633, 643, 969, 971
- Raichle, Bernd, 947, 979
- Raymond, Eric, 948
- Reichert, Axel, 76
- Reid, Brian, 2, 979
- Rhead, David, xxvi, 700
- Rokicki, Tom, 614, 615, 637, 979
- Rose, Kristoffer, 488, 593
- Rowley, Chris, xxvii, 4, 118, 967,  
977-980, 1086
- Rozhenko, Alexander, xxvi, 122
- Rubinstein, Richard, 980
- Ruedas, Thomas, 955
- Ruland, Kevin, 75
- Ryan, Elizabeth, xxvi
- Ryu, Young, 388, 390, 517, 519
- Samarin, Alexander, 969
- Schöpf, Rainer, 3-5, 153, 197, 328,  
466, 948, 977, 978
- Schandl, Bernd, xxvi, 132
- Schmidt, Walter, xxvi, xxvii, 356,  
370, 377, 383-387, 394,  
397, 399, 410, 438, 523
- Schnier, Thorsten, 700
- Schröder, Martin, xxvii, 105, 323
- Schrod, Joachim, xxvi, 6, 116, 666,  
774, 837, 980, 1087
- Schwarz, Norbert, 354
- Sendoukas, Hippocrates, 615
- Sgouros, Tom, 127
- Shell, Michael, 643
- Sivunen, Vesa, 969
- Slimbach, Robert, 375
- Sommerfeldt, Axel, xxvi, 298, 308,  
315
- Sowa, Friedhelm, 108
- Spit, Werenfried, 811
- Spivak, Michael, 377, 517
- Stiff, Paul, 103, 980
- Straub, Pablo, 19
- Svensson, Anders, 488, 980
- Swanson, Ellen, 980
- Swift, Matt, 82, 84
- Syropoulos, Apostolos, 574, 964
- Tanaka, Nobuya, 968
- Thánh, Hán Thế, 615, 643, 981
- Theiling, Henrik, 408, 409
- Thimbleby, Harold, 981
- Thorup, Kresten, 871
- Tinnefeld, Karsten, 35
- Tobin, Geoffrey, 107
- Trevorrow, Andrew, 615
- Ulrich, Stefan, 127, 753
- Umeki, Hideo, xxvi, 206
- Unruh, Dominique, 361
- Vabishchevich, Nikolay, 789
- Vabishchevich, Petr, 789
- Valiente Feruglio, Gabriel, 981,  
982
- van Oostrum, Piet, xxvii, 220, 224
- Van Zandt, Timothy, 152, 155,  
596
- Velthuis, Frans, 592
- Vieth, Ulrik, 376, 383, 515, 967,  
971
- Vogel, Martin, 401
- Vollmer, Jürgen, 838
- Volovich, Vladimir, 355, 569
- Vulis, Michael, xxvii, 982
- Waldi, Roland, 401
- Ward, Nigel, 56
- Wetmore, Alan, xxvii
- Wicks, Mark, 643
- Widmann, Thomas, 760
- Williams, Graham, 299, 950, 982
- Williams, Peter, 700
- Williamson, Hugh, 982
- Wilson, Peter, xxvii, 48, 117, 199,  
236, 237, 681, 982
- Wing, Wai, xxvii
- Winton, Neil, 189
- Wolczko, Mario, 202, 595
- Woliński, Marcin, 814, 825, 977
- Wonneberger, Reinhard, 982
- Wooding, Mark, 814, 825, 977
- Wujastyk, Dominik, 118, 975
- Zapf, Hermann, 375, 376, 383,  
396, 403, 438, 515, 519,  
974, 982
- Ziegler, Justin, 382, 982
- Zierke, Reinhard, 948
- Ziv, Alon, 576